This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

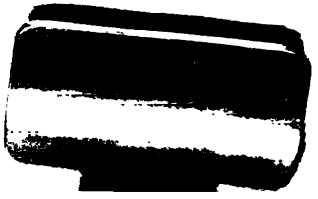
CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN

ARNOLD AND WILSON

UL 8 1911
GIFT

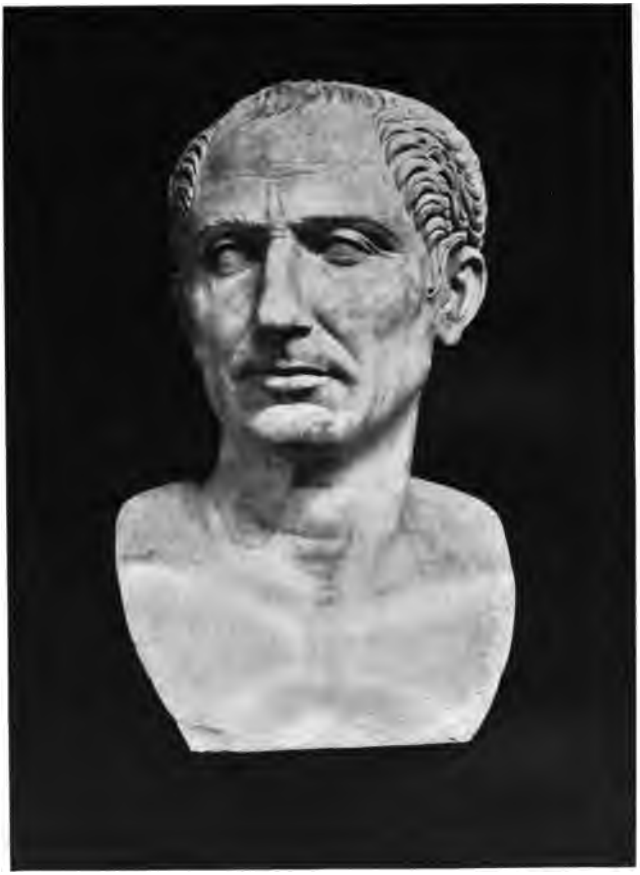
LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.
GIFT OF
Pres. Office 760
Class J54

x 768



CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF



CAESAR.

Bust in the museum at Naples.

CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN

A BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK

BY

WILLIAM A. JENNER

AND

HENRY E. WILSON

OF THE BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN, NEW YORK

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF
CALIFORNIA

ILLUSTRATED

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

NEW YORK CHICAGO

JUL 8 1911
GIFT Prof. C.

COPYRIGHT, 1910, BY
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY.

PA 2087
J4u
1910
M6N

PREFACE.

THE rejuvenation of Latin must begin with the beginning. A first-year book, written a quarter of a century ago, revisions and imitations of the same and so-called Caesar books written on this antiquated plan, depend for interest as well as for apperception on English Grammar, about which the beginner knows little and cares less. After a year of remorseless grinding of forms and rules set in no relations of recognized utility and possessing no human interest, the survivor of this grilling process enters upon the second year's work not only "emptied of all desire to learn," but endowed with a mental attitude of hostility towards Latin. Unaccustomed to finding any vital significance in what he has been doing in the first year, he fails to respond to belated efforts to interest him in really attractive editions of Caesar, for the enjoyment of which his preparation has not only been utterly incompetent but positively prejudicial.

The authors of "Caesar's First Campaign" have earnestly endeavored to make first-year work interesting and valuable in itself, with a view to lessening the "mortality" in the first year as well as to giving the beginner such a mental attitude and equipment as shall make his subsequent Latin course pleasant and profitable. The beginner's natural love of a story, his elementary knowledge of geography and history, have been from the earliest pages depended upon for the promotion of interest and apperception. Through the use of illustrations and suggestive introductory lines a sustained effort has been made to keep the story idea before the pupil. Those who disapprove of the use of such devices in connection with the work of memorizing forms and

217303

principles may profitably recall how powerful an educative force in economics was the political campaign of '96, how stimulative of geographical knowledge has been the recent polar controversy.

The special features that it is believed will make for the success of this book may be briefly summarized as follows:

Interest is awakened and maintained by the development of a story illuminated by appropriate illustrations.

Apperception as well as interest are promoted through geographical and historical rather than grammatical notions.

Development Exercises are provided, breaking up the Caesar text to follow in the next lesson into short and easy sentences, with whose forms and constructions the pupil is already familiar.

The Vocabulary is scientifically selected and is limited, not "principally," but exclusively, to Caesarean words.

A select list of 500 words used six or more times in Caesar is designated in heavy type as words to be memorized.

The Exercises for Practice and other reading Exercises are carefully calculated to utilize each word of the list of 500 six or more times.

Daily assignments of Written Work are given, inflecting in various ways this list of 500, furnishing drills of exceptional merit and saving the teacher the burden of written assignments.

As far as is practicable, the pupil is required to construct his own paradigms after having been given the necessary principles rather than to memorize quantities of printed forms.

Reviews occur recalling the frequently recurring words through derivatives and affording further drill upon these words through ingenious mechanical devices of demonstrated worth.

Rules and principles are taught inductively and concretely without presuming upon more than the most elementary knowledge of English Grammar on the part of the pupil.

The most elementary notions of English Grammar, such as the distinction of voice, are taught as new material as they occur in the lessons. No attempt is made in a "Grammatical Intro-

duction" to teach in a day what was once taught through years of toilsome drill in formal English Grammar.

The vocabularies are arranged, not in the conventional alphabetical order, but with regard to pedagogical principles — nouns together, then verbs, etc.

Pointed questions in the Latin-English exercises call for answers in Latin and serve a threefold purpose: (1) to punctuate the essential nature of the construction newly taught, (2) to recall the facts of the story already studied, and (3) to force the pupil not merely to translate English into Latin, but to compose a Latin expression of his own ideas.

The authors desire to acknowledge a large measure of indebtedness to Professor Gonzales Lodge of Teachers College, Columbia University, for his generous permission to make free use of his invaluable Vocabulary of High School Latin as well as for numerous suggestions of value in the compilation of the book; also to Principal George Swain, of Bay City, Michigan, for the permission to use his excellent photographs of the scenes of the campaign. Many suggestions of value are due to William T. McCoy, of the Wendell Phillips High School, Chicago, and to Miss Ella G. Marthens, of the Shortridge High School, Indianapolis; to Dr. A. F. Nightingale, Superintendent of the Cook County (Illinois) Schools; to Francis H. Lee, of the Central High School, Philadelphia; and to Mrs. C. P. Olmstead, of the Lake View High School, Chicago.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

		PAGE
SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS		xi
INTRODUCTION		xv
LESSON		
I.	First Declension of Nouns	1
II.	Present Indicative of **Sum**	4
III.	Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation. — Accusative of Direct Object	6
IV.	Present Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation. — The Genitive Case	8
V.	Second Declension of Nouns. — The Dative Case	11
VI.	Present Indicative Active and Passive of the Second Conjugation	14
VII.	Neuter Nouns of the Second Declension. — Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions	17
VIII.	Third Declension of Nouns: Consonant Stems	20
IX.	Present Indicative Active and Passive of the Third Conjugation	22
X.	Third Declension. I Stems (Nouns and Adjectives)	25
	First Review	27
XI.	Declension of the Demonstrative **Hic**. — Ablative of Separation	29
XII.	Declension of the Demonstrative **Is**. — The Possessive Genitive	31
XIII.	The Relative Pronoun	34
XIV.	Second Declension Nouns in **ius** and **ium**. — Ablative of Accompaniment	36
XV.	Verbs of the Third Conjugation in **io**. — Ablative of Means	39
XVI.	Perfect Indicative of **Sum**. Comparison of Adjectives	42
XVII.	Perfect Indicative Active of the First Three Conjugations: Principal Parts	45
XVIII.	Imperfect and Future of **Sum**. — Ablative of Specification	48

LESSON		PAGE
XIX.	Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active of Three Conjugations	50
XX.	Imperfect Active and Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. — Ablative of Cause	53
	Second Review	56
XXI.	Imperfect Active and Passive of the Third Conjugation. — Irregular Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions	57
XXII.	The Fourth Declension of Nouns	60
XXIII.	Future Indicative Active and Passive of the First and Second Conjugations	63
XXIV.	Future Indicative Active and Passive of the Third Conjugation. — The Genitive of the Whole	65
XXV.	Imperfect Indicative Active and Passive of the Third Conjugation in **io**. — Accusative of Extent	68
XXVI.	Fifth Declension of Nouns. — Declension of the Reflexive and Intensive Pronouns	71
	Third Review: Rules for the Gender of Third Declension Nouns	74
XXVII.	Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of Three Conjugations. — Ablative of Agency	76
XXVIII.	Declension of **Īdem**. — Synopsis of Verbs. — Ablative of Time	79
XXIX.	Present Subjunctive Active and Passive. — Declension of **Ille**	82
XXX.	Imperfect Subjunctive Active and Passive. — Clauses of Purpose	85
XXXI.	Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Active and Passive. — Result Clauses	88
XXXII.	Place to Which; Place from Which. — Declension of **Domus**	92
XXXIII.	Fourth Conjugation of Verbs. — Ablative of Place in Which	95
XXXIV.	Participles. — The Dative with Special Verbs	98
	Fourth Review	101
XXXV.	The Use of Participles in the Ablative Absolute	102

LESSON		PAGE
XXXVI.	Formation and Uses of Infinitives	105
XXXVII.	Declension of **Duo**. — Conjugation of **Possum**. — Dative with Adjectives	109
XXXVIII.	Infinitive in Indirect Discourse	111
XXXIX.	Deponent Verbs. — The Ablative with **Ūtor**, etc.	115
XL.	Ablative and Genitive of Quality. — Declension of **Vīs**	118
XLI.	Comparison of Irregular Adjectives, **Facilis**, **Līber**, etc. — Conjugation of **Eō**	122
XLII.	Ablative of Manner. — **Cum** Temporal	125
	Fifth Review	128
XLIII.	Comparison of Irregular Adjectives (*continued*). — Declension of **Plūs**	129
XLIV.	Comparison of Irregular Adjectives (*continued*). — Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	132
XLV.	Conjugation of **Volō**, **Nōlō**, **Mālō**	135
XLVI.	Comparison of Irregular Adverbs. — Ablative of Comparison	137
XLVII.	Relative Clauses of Purpose	140
XLVIII.	Ablative of Degree of Difference	143
XLIX.	**Cum** Causal and Concessive	145
	Sixth Review	148
L.	Conjugation of **Ferō** and its Compounds	150
LI.	Dative of the Possessor	152
LII.	Compounds of **Sum**. — Dative with Compound Verbs	155
LIII.	Gerunds and Gerundives	157
LIV.	Formation and Uses of Supines. — Various Ways of Expressing Purpose	160
	Seventh Review	163
LV.	Conjugation of **Fīō**. — Compounds of **Faciō**	164
LVI.	The Periphrastic Conjugations. — Dative of Agent	168
LVII.	Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns. — Interrogative Particles. — Direct Questions	170
LVIII.	Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive. — Verbs of Fearing with the Subjunctive	174

LESSON		PAGE
LIX.	Subjective and Objective Genitives	177
LX.	Dative of Purpose. — Accusative with Compound Verbs	179
LXI.	The Imperative Mood. — Commands and Exhortations	182
	Eighth Review	184
LXII.	Personal Pronouns. – Possessive Adjectives	185
LXIII.	Conditional Sentences	188
LXIV.	Indirect Questions. — Sequence of Tenses	191
LXV.	Defective and Impersonal Verbs	195
LXVI.	Verbs with Two Accusatives	198
	Ninth Review	201
LXVII.	The Optative Subjunctive	202
LXVIII.	Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse. — **Quod** Causal	204
LXIX.	Numeral Adjectives	207
LXX.	Temporal Clauses with **Postquam, Ubi, Priusquam.** — Review of Subjunctives	210
	Tenth Review	213
	CHAPTERS XVIII–XXIX OF CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR	215–243
	APPENDIX	
	Tables of Declensions, Conjugations, Comparisons, and Numerals	247
	Models of Original Schemes for Form Drill	274
	List of Five Hundred Words	275
	Syntactical Syllabus	279
	LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	283
	ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	301
	INDEX	309

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

In presenting to the educational public a text-book of an unconventional type, containing many novel devices for the promotion of interest and apperception, for the acquisition of vocabulary and forms, and for the formation of proper methods of attack in translation, the authors desire at the outset to make an appeal for the sympathetic coöperation of the teacher, and to beg the indulgence of discussing in some detail those features of the work requiring attention in order to get the best results from its pursuit. The teacher who looks upon devices calculated to add attractiveness to his subject as a waste of time is comparable to the teamster who lacks the time to oil his wagon axles. Insistence upon the constant use of maps and of all legitimate helps to the understanding of the story, will surely be repaid in a greatly increased capacity for progress on the part of the class.

The same may be said of the time spent with the class in giving helpful hints as to the preparation of the next day's lesson. All model sentences and observations in the first half of a lesson should be read over with the pupil in advance. Attention should be repeatedly called to the importance of memorizing the words in heavy type in the vocabularies, to any peculiarities in their inflection and in the next day's Written Work to keep the pupil from falling into pitfalls of error. In the second half of a lesson, the benefit to be derived from English-Latin exercises may be greatly increased by preparatory work that will rivet the pupil's attention upon those points requiring emphasis or caution. In this way the teacher makes his requirements so definite as to leave little latitude for excusable error.

The seventy lessons are intended to occupy one hundred forty teaching days. The first ten lessons are somewhat shortened, allow-

ing for abundant oral drill on forms and for emphasis on the sketches of Caesar's life, which the pupil should be required to relate in substance, as essential to interest in the narrative to follow. Beginning with Lesson XIV, the lessons admit of a natural division into two days' work, the first to comprise the reading of the text, the memorizing of the heavy type words in the vocabularies, of the paradigms, and rules, the performance of the Written Work and the translation of the Latin-English division of the Exercises for Practice. The second day's work will then comprise the writing out as a preparation for oral translation of the English-Latin division of the Exercises for Practice, the translation of the Development Exercise with review of the paradigms and rules taught in the first half of the lesson.

Especial attention is requested to the schemes for the acquisition of a vocabulary. To require the pupil to memorize and inflect all words can result only in failure. The words printed in heavy type are those occurring six or more times in Caesar, as shown by the Lodge Vocabulary of High School Latin, and should be thoroughly memorized. In the Word List (pp. 275–278), the most important of these heavy type words are assembled, while they are made to occur six or more times in the various exercises for reading. The aim perfectly to familiarize the pupil with this select vocabulary is still further attained through the Written Work, which as far as is practicable is limited to the inflection in various ways of these frequently used words. The authors have found it helpful in class to assign the Written Work in segments for board work. This board work, when corrected and rated by the teacher, encourages the diligent and enables all pupils to correct their written exercises, relieving the teacher of the burden of revising the same.

The Reviews also can be made most effective through board assignments, which like the daily Written Work when corrected and rated by the teacher will enable the pupil to correct his own home work. The authors have found it possible to devote two days to these Reviews and still have left twenty-five out of one hundred eighty-five teaching days for the reading of the text beyond the

seventy lessons. Such written tests as they have given, the authors have found it practicable to give on the second day of review work.

The original devices such as consecutive declensions, conjugations, synopses, and consecutive infinitives and participles have been thoroughly tested out and found practicable by the authors. While they may require a little time and patience on the part of the instructor to render intelligible to the pupil, they will be found to repay the effort, as even the dullest pupil will take an active interest in this mechanical form of drill and will acquire a considerable proficiency in forms.

It should be borne in mind that it is of vastly more importance to complete the seventy lessons and the ten Reviews in a thorough manner than to complete the reading of the twenty-nine chapters. The authors believe that the teacher who covers with his class only the seventy lessons — and the weakest teacher will hardly fail to do more than this — will have given his pupils a better preparation to read Caesar than can be obtained by the use of any beginning book heretofore published. At the worst, the class will have only to complete the story of the Helvetian War in the second year in a Caesar text without the help of the Development Exercises.

In conclusion, the authors wish to state that the directions contained in the latter Reviews as to the use of the Word List and Syntactical Syllabus (pp. 275–281) are intended to convey nothing more than hints as to the possibilities of their use in preparation for final examinations. These compilations will be found to afford large opportunities for the exercise of ingenuity in working out final reviews.

INTRODUCTION.

The sections of this chapter are intended only for reference. Pronunciation can be best acquired through imitation. Rules are valuable only as checks and correctives.

1. The Latin Language is so named because it was first spoken by the **Latīnī**, or Latins, an ancient tribe which lived in the vicinity of Rome. Spreading gradually as the conquests of the Latins increased, it finally became the official language of the Roman Empire, which included at one time the whole western civilized world.

During the long centuries of Roman supremacy in Europe, Latin came to have a peculiar preëminence, which no other language has ever enjoyed. French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese are merely the modern representatives of Latin as it was spoken in various parts of the Roman Empire. Through the Middle Ages and down to modern times, Latin was the language of learning and diplomacy. It is estimated that about forty per cent of all English words are derived from Latin.

THE ALPHABET.

2. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no *j* or *w*. The letter *i* does duty for both *i* and *j*.

3. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y.** The other letters are consonants. The diphthongs are **ae, oe, au, eu, ui.**

PRONUNCIATION (Roman Method).

4. **Vowels.**

The mark ⏑ over a vowel means that it is short, the mark — that it is long. An unmarked vowel is presumed to be short.

ă is pronounced as the first *a* in *aha;* ā as the last *a* in *aha.*
ĕ is pronounced as *e* in *met;* ē as the *e* in *they.*
ĭ is pronounced as *i* in *pin;* ī as the *i* in *machine.*
ŏ is pronounced as the first *o* in *oho;* ō as the last *o* in *oho.*
ŭ is pronounced as *u* in *pull;* ū as the *oo* in *pool.*

Comparison of the long and short sounds shows no essential difference in quality, but a difference only in the time taken to pronounce them. Hence the quantity of Latin vowels becomes important.

5. Consonants.

c and **g** are always hard, as *c* in *come* and *g* in *go.*
i consonant as *y* in *yet.*
s always sharp, as in *sun, sea.*
t always as *t* in *time,* never as in *nation.*
v always as *w* in *wine.*
x like *ks.*
bs like *ps.*
bt like *pt.*
ch like *ch* in *chasm.*

6. Diphthongs

ae as *ai* in *aisles.*
oe as *oi* in *oil.*
au as *ow* in *owl.*
eu as *eu* in *feud.*
ei as *ei* in *eight.*
ui as *we.*

7. SYLLABLES.

(1) A Latin word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels or diphthongs; as, **mī-les, fī-ne, mō-re, fu-rō-re, re-sī-de.**

(2) In dividing words into syllables, note that: —

(*a*) A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the following vowel; as, **ha-bē-mus.**

(*b*) When two or more consonants stand together, as many are joined with the following as can be pronounced with it; as, **frā-trem, cō-gnō-scō, for-tis.**

(*c*) Compound words are divided into their component parts; as, **ab-sum.**

(*d*) Doubled consonants are separated; as, **fos-sa.**

8. QUANTITY OF VOWELS AND SYLLABLES.

(1) Vowels are long or short. The long vowels in this book are marked long. All others must be considered short.

(2) A syllable is long or short according to the time it takes to pronounce it.

(3) A syllable is long by nature if it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as, **dīcō**.

(4) A syllable is long by position if it contains a short vowel followed by the double consonants **x** and **z**, as in **sex**, or followed by two consonants, as in **pars**, except a mute and liquid. The mutes are **b, c, d, g, k, p, q, t**, and the liquids are **l, m, n, r**. The vowel in a syllable long by position is given the short sound in pronunciation; as, **sĕx, părs**.

9. RULES FOR QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

(1) A vowel followed by another vowel or **h** is short; as, **Gallĭ-a, prŏ-hi-bĕ-ō**.

(2) Vowels resulting from contraction are long; as, **cŏ-ă-gō** gives **cō-gō**.

(3) Vowels are long before **nf, ns, nct, ncs**; as, **cōnferō, cōnsilium, iūnctus**.

(4) Diphthongs are long; as, **cāūsa**.

10. ACCENT.

(1) Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as, **bĕllum, pāter**.

(2) Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (next to the last syllable) if that is long; as, **Rōmānus**; otherwise they are accented on the antepenult (the syllable before the penult); as, **prōvĭncia**.

(3) A few short words called enclitics are added to the end of other words. The accent then falls on the syllable before the enclitic; as, **Belgáque, ībíque**.

11. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

(1) Masculine gender.

(*a*) Names of males are masculine gender; as, **Caesar**, *Caesar*; **rēx**, *king*.

(*b*) Names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine; as, **Rhēnus**, *the Rhine*.

(2) Feminine gender.

(*a*) Names of females are feminine; as, **Cornēlia**, *Cornelia*; **rēgīna**, *queen*.

(*b*) Names of countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine; as, **Dēlos**, *the island of Delos*; **Rōma**, *Rome*.

(3) Neuter gender.

Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, and clauses used as nouns are neuter; as, **nihil**, *nothing*; **fās**, *right*.

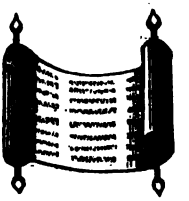
LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF
CALIFORNIA

CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN.

LESSON I.

FIRST DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

A FOREWORD. We are about to begin reading a story of the ancient Swiss, just as it was written in the Latin tongue nearly 2000 years ago. The author of this story, Julius Caesar, was one of the most remarkable men that ever lived. He was born in the city of Rome one hundred years before Christ. Most of the prominent Romans of the time came from rural districts, but Caesar, though city-bred, was too great to lead a life of idle pleasure, as did most of his fellows.



ROMAN BOOKS WERE SCROLLS WHICH WERE WRITTEN WITH AN IRON STYLUS.

1. In English there are three cases: nominative, possessive, and objective. In Latin there are six: nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, and ablative. The **nominative** is the case of the subject; the **genitive** generally denotes possession and is rendered either by the English possessive or by the objective case with *of*. The **dative** is usually the case of the indirect object; and the **accusative**, of the direct object. The **vocative**, the case of direct address, occurs very infrequently in Latin, and as it is ordinarily the same as the nominative in form, it is omitted in the paradigms to follow. The use of the **ablative** may be best learned from the observation of the paradigms.

2. Latin nouns are divided into five **declensions**, or classes, which are distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular. In the First Declension, this distinguishing

ending is **-ae**. By dropping this ending from the genitive singular, we find the **base**, the part of the noun which remains unchanged throughout the declension, as in the paradigm below.

3. Latin nouns of the First Declension end in the nominative in **ă**. All are feminine, except names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months, which are masculine.

4. PARADIGM.

fossa, *ditch*; BASE, **foss-**.

	SINGULAR.	CASE ENDINGS.
Nominative	fossa, a ditch (as subject)	**-a**
Genitive	fossae, of a ditch	**-ae**
Dative	fossae, to or for a ditch	**-ae**
Accusative	fossam, a ditch (as object)	**-am**
Ablative	fossā, by, from, in, or with a ditch	**-ā**
	PLURAL.	
Nominative	fossae, ditches (as subject)	**-ae**
Genitive	fossārum, of ditches	**-ārum**
Dative	fossīs, to or for ditches	**-īs**
Accusative	fossās, ditches (as object)	**-ās**
Ablative	fossīs, by, from, in, or with ditches	**-īs**

Observe: —

(1) that the ablative singular ending **-ā** is long.

(2) that there are no articles, definite or indefinite, in Latin. Therefore **fossa** may mean *a ditch, the ditch,* or simply *ditch.*

5. VOCABULARY.

Memorize all words in heavy type. Use other words for reference in written work and exercises.

Belga, **-ae**, m., *Belgian.*
causa, **-ae**, f., *reason.*
fossa, **-ae**, f., *ditch* or *trench.*
fuga, **-ae**, f., *flight.*
Hispānia, **-ae**, f., *Spain.*
lingua, **-ae**, f., *language.*
prōvincia, **-ae**, f., *province.*
Sēquana, -ae, m., *the Seine.*
Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*, the Roman name for a country comprising France, Belgium, Switzerland, and northern Italy.

Note: —

(1) that two of the above nouns are masculine. Why?

(2) that **Sēquana** has no plural. Why not?

(3) that four of the nouns have bases ending in a vowel. Give these bases.

6. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline with full names of cases, and with meanings, as in § 4, the words: **fuga, lingua, prōvincia.**[1]

(2) Translate into Latin § 7–II, as a preparation for reciting it orally.

(3) Mark all long vowels, noting how a long penult must be accented as directed in the Introduction, § 10.

7. EXERCISES.

(Pronounce, give G. N. C.,[2] and then translate, noting that several of the forms may be in more than one case and must be translated accordingly.)

I. (1) Belgās. (2) Linguae. (3) Sēquanam. (4) Fugā. (5) Belgīs. (6) Lingua Galliae. (7) Fugam Belgārum. (8) Prōvinciae Hispāniae. (9) Linguā prōvinciae. (10) Causās Belgārum. (11) Fossā. (12) Causa fugae.

II. (1) Of Gaul. (2) With the Belgians. (3) The Seine (used as object). (4) For the language. (5) To the provinces. (6) By the Seine. (7) To the Belgians. (8) Of the provinces. (9) In the language of Spain. (10) To the province of the Belgians.

[1] Observe that these words appear in the vocabulary in heavy type, signifying that they occur six or more times in Caesar according to the Lodge Vocabulary of High School Latin. There are over 600 of these words in Caesar's First Campaign. Five hundred that occur most frequently have been assembled in the Word List on pages 275–278.

[2] Throughout this book, the abbreviation G. N. C. will be used for gender, number, case, and is recommended for use in recitation.

LESSON II.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *SUM*.

A Flogging Roman Schoolmaster.

Caesar's Boyhood. The fact that Julius Caesar was not like other city boys may have been due in part to his mother, who was a very upright and cultivated woman. She took charge of his early education and never sent him to the Roman schools, whose flogging masters were often very cruel to the pupils. She later placed him under a tutor, a learned Gaul, to whom Caesar doubtless owed his lively interest in the people of that country. As was the fashion in that day, the young Roman took a course in oratory, in which he made so marked progress that he became one of the ablest public speakers of his time.

8. PARADIGM.

Conjugation of Present Indicative of **Sum**.

Prin. Parts: pres. ind. **sum**, *I am;* pres. inf. **esse**, *to be.*

	Singular.	Plural.
1*st Person*	**sum**, I am.	**sumus**, we are.
2*d Person*	es, you are.	**estis**, you are.
3*d Person*	est, he (she or it) is.	**sunt**, they are.

9. Adjectives of the First Declension are declined exactly like nouns of the same declension. All adjectives given in the vocabulary below are feminine adjectives of the First Declension. Observe the combination **fossa māgna**, *a great ditch;* bases **foss-** **māgn-**.

Note that in Latin the adjective may follow the noun.

10. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Nostra causa est bona. — *Our reason is good.* (2) Nostrae causae sunt bonae. — *Our reasons are good.*

Observe:—

(1) that in the above sentences the subjects **causa** and **causae** are in the nominative case.

(2) that **nostra** and **nostrae**, attributive adjectives and **bona** and **bonae**, predicate adjectives, agree in G. N. C. with these nouns.

(3) that the verb in sentence 1 is 3d singular because the subject is 3d singular, and the verb in sentence 2 is 3d plural because the subject is 3d plural.

11. *RULES.* — 1. *The subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative case.*

2. *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

12. **VOCABULARY.**

Memorize all words in heavy type. Use other words for reference.

Celta, -ae, m., *a Celt.*	nostra, *our.*
bona, *good.*	**proxima**, *nearest.*
dīvīsa, *divided.*	**reliqua**, *remaining, the-rest-of.*
māgna, *great.*	**tertia**, *third.*

in, preposition, with ablative, *in* or *on;* with accusative, *into, to,* or *upon.*

13. **WRITTEN WORK.**

Decline together, writing in full, names of cases and meanings:— **Gallia dīvīsa** (singular only), **nostra causa, prōvincia proxima.**

14. **EXERCISES.**

I. (1) Māgnae causae (translate in three ways); proxima prōvincia; nostrārum causārum. (2) Gallia est proxima. (3) Belgae sumus. (4) Prōvincia est dīvīsa. (5) Hispānia est proxima. (6) Nostrae linguae sunt bonae. (7) Sum in Galliā. (8) Nostrae prōvinciae sunt māgnae. (9) Es in prōvinciā.

II. (1) Of our reasons; in our trenches; to the great provinces. (2) Gaul is divided. (3) The trenches are nearest. (4) The provinces are large. (5) The third trench is nearest. (6) The Celts are in the great province. (7) You (plu.) are in Gaul.

LESSON III.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.— ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT.

THE TEMPLE IN WHICH CAESAR SERVED AS PRIEST.

A YOUTHFUL OFFICIAL. Roman boys became voters at seventeen, but even before that age, Caesar was appointed through influential relatives to a priestly office in the temple of Jupiter, the principal god of the Romans. This gave him an honorable social position and a fixed income. Many of his young friends, finding themselves in such comfortable positions, were so well satisfied that they made no efforts to improve themselves, but Caesar could never rest contented so long as there was any higher honor to be won.

15. Latin verbs are divided into four **conjugations**, which are distinguished from one another by the vowel preceding **-re**, the ending of the present infinitive. In the First Conjugation, this characteristic vowel is **ā**, as may be seen from the principal parts and stem of **līberō** in the following paradigm.

16. PARADIGM.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE VERB **Līberō**.

PRIN. PARTS: pres. ind. **līberō**, *I liberate;* pres. inf. **līberāre**, *to liberate.*
PRES. STEM: **līberā-**.

	SINGULAR.	PERSONAL ENDINGS.
1st Person	līberō, I liberate.	**-ō** (or **-m** as in **sum**), I.
2d Person	līberās, you liberate.	**-s**, you (or thou).
3d Person	līberat, he liberates.	**-t**, he (or she or it).

	Plural.	Personal Endings.
1st Person	**līberāmus**, we liberate.	**-mus**, we.
2d Person	**līberātis**, you liberate.	**-tis**, you.
3d Person	**līberant**, they liberate.	**-nt**, they.

Observe: —

(1) that the **personal endings** are so called because they take the place of personal pronouns, which are rarely expressed as subjects. The above endings are used with all tenses of the active voice except the perfect indicative.

(2) that these personal endings are added to the present stem **līberā-** except in the first person singular, where **ā** of the stem is lost.

(3) that the present stem is found by dropping **-re**, the last two letters of the present infinitive.

(4) that **a** is short before **-t** and **-nt** of the third person.

17. MODEL SENTENCE.

Belgae Galliam occupant. — *The Belgians seize Gaul.*

Observe: —

(1) that **occupō** is a transitive verb.

(2) that **Galliam**, its direct object, is put in the accusative case.

18. *RULE. — The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative case.*

19. VOCABULARY.

appellō, appellāre, *call, name.*
importō, importāre, *import, carry in.*
incitō, incitāre, *incite, arouse.*
līberō, līberāre, *liberate, free.*
occupō, occupāre, *seize.*
superō, superāre, *conquer, overcome.*
vāstō, vāstāre, *lay waste, ravage.*

20. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write the present stem of each verb in the above vocabulary.

(2) Write the present indicative active of **appellō** and **occupō** with meaning of each form.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) Appellāmus; occupātis; vāstant; incitās; superant. (2) Belgae superant. (3) Celtae Belgās superant. (4) Prōvinciam vāstātis. (5) Fossam occupāmus. (6) Galliam superās. (7) Nostra fuga Belgās incitat. (8) Belgae prōvinciam vāstant. (9) Celtae māgnam fossam occupant. (10) Hispānia est māgna prōvincia.

II. (1) You (sing.) call; they are liberating[1]; we lay waste; you[2] are importing; he does arouse Spain. (2) The Belgians are arousing Gaul. (3) The flight arouses the Celts. (4) We are conquering the provinces. (5) You seize the nearest trenches. (6) The Celts are laying waste our provinces.

[1] The Latin verb **liberō** may mean *I am liberating* or *I do liberate* as well as *I liberate*. In other words, the progressive and emphatic forms of the English verb may be translated into Latin by the same word as is used to express the ordinary declarative sense.

[2] Unless otherwise directed, the pronoun *you* should be regarded as plural.

LESSON IV.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION. — THE GENITIVE CASE.

THE GREAT HALL OF A ROMAN HOUSE.

CAESAR'S WIFE. When Caesar was about twenty years old, he lost his political office and all his property and had to flee from Rome for his life, because he firmly refused to obey the orders of a tyrannical ruler and give up his girl-wife Cornelia. Such loyalty to those he loved characterized Caesar throughout his life.

22. When the subject of a verb does something, we say the verb is in the **active voice**, as *he liberates, he is liberating,* or *he does liberate.* When something is done to the subject, we say the verb is in the **passive voice**, as *he is liberated,* or *he is being liberated.*

23. PARADIGM.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE VERB **Līberō.**

	SINGULAR.	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1*st Person*	**līberor**, I am liberated	**-r**
2*d Person*	**līberāris** (**līberāre**), you are liberated	**-ris** (or **-re**)
3*d Person*	**līberātur**, he is liberated	**-tur**
	PLURAL.	PERSONAL ENDINGS.
1*st Person*	**līberāmur**, we are liberated	**-mur**
2*d Person*	**līberāminī**, you are liberated	**-minī**
3*d Person*	**līberantur**, they are liberated	**-ntur**

Observe: —

(1) that the passive forms differ from the corresponding active forms only in the personal endings.

(2) that as in the active voice, the personal endings, which take the place of personal pronouns, are added to the present stem **līberā-** except in the first singular, where **ā** of the stem is lost.

(3) that the **a** is short only before **-nt** of the plural.

24. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Belgae Galliam prōvinciam appellant. — *The Belgians call Gaul a province.* (2) Gallia prōvincia appellātur. — *Gaul is called a province.* (3) Fossa Belgārum est lāta. — *The Belgians' trench is wide.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 **prōvinciam**, a predicate noun, describes **Galliam**, means the same thing, and agrees with it in the accusative. This construction is known as the **predicate accusative.**

(2) that in sentence 2 **prōvincia**, a predicate noun, describes

Gallia, means the same thing, and agrees with it in the nominative. This construction is known as the **predicate nominative.**

(3) that in sentence 1 the verb is in the active voice, because the subject, **Belgae**, does something, while in sentence 2 the verb is in the passive voice, because something is done to the subject.

(4) that in sentence 3 **Belgārum** is used to limit or define **fossa** and does not mean the same person or thing, and is put in the genitive.

25. *RULES.* — 1. *A noun used to describe another noun, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in case.*

2. *A noun used to define or limit another noun, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the genitive.*

26. VOCABULARY.

accūsō, accusāre, *accuse, blame.*
armō, armāre, *arm, equip.*
commeō, commeāre, *go often, resort.*
lāta, *wide, broad.*
longa, *long.*

27. WRITTEN WORK.

Write out with meanings the present indicative, active and passive, of **accūsō** and **armō**, underlining the personal endings.

28. EXERCISES.

(Note carefully the voice as well as person and number of all verb forms.)

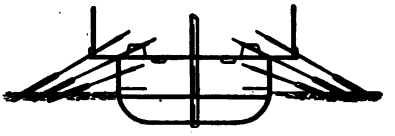
I. (1) Accūsās; accūsāris; accūsāmus; accūsāmur; superātis; superāminī; appellātur. (2) Belgae superantur. (3) Prōvincia Celtārum est māgna. (4) Celtae accūsantur. (5) Fossae Belgārum occupantur. (6) Reliquae prōvinciae vāstantur. (7) Proxima prōvincia Hispānia appellātur. (8) Belgae nostrā linguā Celtae appellantur. (9) Belgās nostrā linguā Celtās appellāmus.

II. (1) We arm, we are armed; you call, you are called (sing.); he conquers, he is conquered; you are accused; they are liberated. (2) The Belgians are liberated. (3) The province is aroused. (4) Spain is called a large province. (5) We call Spain a large province.

LESSON V.

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS. — THE DATIVE CASE

THE PIRATES. — At one time Caesar went on a sea voyage and was captured by some pirates who were cruising about in an old trireme, or war galley. He took his capture very coolly and charmed the rascals by wit and good humor till his friends could collect money for his ransom. As soon as he was free, he made good a promise, which his captors had taken as a joke; and getting together some ships, he captured and hanged the whole band.



SECTION OF A TRIREME. NOTE HOW THE GALLEY SLAVES ROWED IN THREE ROWS.

29. Nouns of the Second Declension end in **-us**, **-er**, **-ir**, **-um**. Those ending in **-um** are neuter; most others are masculine.

30. PARADIGM.

Gallus, *a Gaul;* BASE, **Gall-**.

	SINGULAR.	CASE ENDINGS.
Nominative	**Gallus**, the Gaul (as subject)	**-us**
Genitive	**Gallī**, of the Gaul	**-ī**
Dative	**Gallō**, to or for the Gaul	**-ō**
Accusative	**Gallum**, the Gaul (as object)	**-um**
Ablative	**Gallō**, by, from, in, or with the Gaul	**-ō**
	PLURAL.	
Nominative	**Gallī**, the Gauls (as subject)	**-ī**
Genitive	**Gallōrum**, of the Gauls	**-ōrum**
Dative	**Gallīs**, to or for the Gauls	**-īs**
Accusative	**Gallōs**, the Gauls (as object)	**-ōs**
Ablative	**Gallīs**, by, from, in, or with the Gauls	**-īs**

Observe: —

(1) that the ending of the genitive singular is **-ī**, which is the distinguishing ending of this declension.

(2) that by dropping this ending from the genitive singular, we obtain the base, **Gall-**.

The vocative singular of Second Declension nouns in **-us** ends in **-e**, *i.e.* **Galle**, *O Gaul.* In all other nouns of all declensions, the vocative of each number is the same as the nominative of the same number.

31. Masculine adjectives ending in **-us** are declined exactly like **Gallus**. All the adjectives already studied, except **nostra**, have this ending in the masculine, as **māgnus Gallus**, *the large Gaul.*

32. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Carrōs Gallīs damus. — *We give carts to the Gauls.* (2) Gallī ad Hispāniam commeant. — *Gauls go often to Spain.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 **carrōs**, the direct object, is in the accusative, and that **Gallīs**, the indirect object, is in the dative.

(2) that in sentence 2 the prepositional phrase, *to Spain*, is used with a verb denoting motion or direction and is expressed in Latin by **ad** with the accusative. On the other hand, in sentence 1 the phrase, *to the Gauls*, is used with the verb *give*, conveying no idea of motion or direction, and is put in the dative.

33. *RULE. — The indirect object of a transitive verb is put in the dative case.*

34. VOCABULARY.

amīcus, -ī, m., *friend.*
Aquītānus, -ī, m., *Aquitanian*, a native of the southwestern part of France.
carrus, -ī, m., *cart.*
dō, dare, *give.*
ad, prep., *to* or *towards*, governing acc.
Gallus, -ī, m., *Gaul*, a native of Gallia.
Germānus, -ī, m., *German.*
numerus, -ī, m., *number.*
Ōceanus, -ī, m., *ocean.*
vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

35. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline in full with meanings **bonus amīcus** and **proximus numerus**, including the vocative.

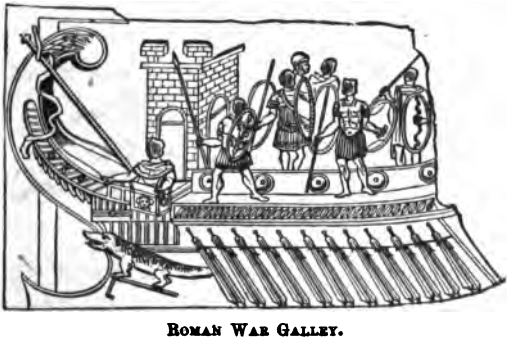
(2) Conjugate with meanings in the present indicative, active and passive, the verb **dō**.[1]

36. EXERCISES.

I. (1) Belgās Gallōs appellant; Belgae Gallī appellantur. (2) Proximī vīcī sunt in prōvinciā. (3) Ad prōvinciam commeāmus. (4) Carrōs Gallīs datis. (5) Aquītānī ad proximum Ōceanum commeant. (6) Gallī proximōs amīcōs armant. (7) Reliquī vīcī Gallīs dantur. (8) Germānī māgnōs vīcōs Gallīs dant. (9) Germānī ad māgnōs vīcōs Gallōrum commeant. (10) Nostrā linguā Aquītānī Gallī appellantur.

II. (1) The villages are large. (2) They ravage the large villages. (3) We give the villages to the Gauls. (4) The Gauls often-go-to the villages of the Germans. (5) The Gauls give the trenches to the Germans. (6) We import the rest-of-the carts to our provinces.

[1] Note that **a** of the stem of the verb **dō** is short, but is lengthened in the 2d singular. So we have **dō, dās, dat, damus, datis, dant,** in the present indicative active.



ROMAN WAR GALLEY.

LESSON VI.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

ROMAN CONSUL WITH IVORY SCEPTRE. BEHIND HIM STANDS ONE OF HIS TWELVE ATTENDANTS OR LICTORS WITH THE BUNDLE OF RODS OR FASCES OVER HIS LEFT SHOULDER.

POLITICAL HONORS. When Caesar was only forty-one years old, he had held the highest offices in the Roman government, ending with the consulship. Had he not been a very great man, he would have been satisfied with these honors, and we would then have heard not even his name. However, Caesar realized that great renown in his age could come only through a brilliant military career, and so he scorned an appointment as governor of a rich and tranquil province, where he might have become very wealthy but not at all famous.

37. The present infinitive of the Second Conjugation ends in **-ēre**, therefore the characteristic vowel (the vowel before **-re** of the present infinitive) is long **ē**.

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB **Moveō**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moveō, movēre.**

PRES. STEM: **movē-.**

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SINGULAR.	ENDINGS.	SINGULAR.	ENDINGS.
1. moveō, I move	-ō	1. moveor, I am moved	-r
2. movēs, you move	-s	2. movēris (movēre), you are moved	-ris or -re
3. movet, he moves	-t	3. movētur, he is moved	-tur

PLURAL.	ENDINGS.	PLURAL.	ENDINGS.
1. movēmus, we move	-mus	1. movēmur, we are moved	-mur
2. movētis, you move	-tis	2. movēminī, you are moved	-minī
3. movent, they move	-nt	3. moventur, they are moved	-ntur

Observe: —

(1) that the personal endings, both active and passive, are exactly the same as those of the First Conjugation verb **līberō**, and are added to the present stem **movē-** in the same manner.

(2) that this stem is found by dropping **-re** of the present infinitive.

(3) that **ē** of the stem is not lost before **-ō** of the first person, but is shortened, as **moveō**.

(4) that **e** is short in the same persons and numbers as **a** in **līberō**; § **16** (4), § **23** (3).

(5) that the active may also be translated *I am moving, you are moving*, etc., and the passive, *I am being moved*, etc.

38. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Gallī, amīcī Belgārum, sunt in prōvinciā. — *The Gauls, friends of the Belgians, are in the province.* (2) Hispānia, māgna prōvincia, occupātur. — *Spain, a large province, is being seized.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 **amīcī**, an appositive noun, describes **Gallī**, denotes the same persons, and agrees with it in case according to rule in § **25**–1.

(2) that in sentence 2 the same is true of **prōvincia**, denoting the same thing as **Hispānia**.

39. VOCABULARY.

habeō, habēre, *have, hold.*
moveō, movēre, *move, disturb.*
obtineō, obtinēre, *hold.*
pertineō, pertinēre, *pertain, extend.*
prohibeō, prohibēre, *prevent, keep away.*

ā (**ab** before vowels or *h*), prep. governing abl., *from, away from.*
ē (**ex** before vowels or *h*), prep. governing abl., *from, out of.*

40. WRITTEN WORK.

Conjugate as in § 37 the present indicative, active and passive, of habeō, obtineō, prohibeō, writing meanings and tabulating the personal endings.

41. EXERCISES.

I. (1) Habēmus; movētis; prohibēs; pertinet; habēmur; movēminī; prohibēris. (2) Līberāminī; habēminī; accūsāmur; movēmur; superantur; prohibentur. (3) Gallī amīcī Germānōrum appellantur. (4) Germānōs, amīcōs Belgārum, superāmus. (5) Celtae Belgās[1] amīcōs habent. (6) Reliquōs vīcōs Celtārum obtinētis. (7) Proximī vīcī ā Sēquanā ad Ōceanum pertinent. (8) Gallī carrōs ē proximīs vīcīs movent. (9) Fuga Germānōrum Gallōs, nostrōs[2] amīcōs, movet. (10) Gallī Hispāniam, māgnam prōvinciam, obtinent.

II. (1) We hold, you are held; we move, we are moved; they are kept away; they are held; we are accused; you are being moved (sing.); you are being liberated. (2) The Germans are kept away from Gaul. (3) The Germans have the Gauls (as)[3] friends. (4) Spain, a great province, extends to Gaul. (5) The carts are held in Spain. (6) The Belgians move a great number of carts from (out of)[3] Gaul. (7) The Gauls give the villages of (their)[3] friends to the Germans. (8) You are kept away (from)[3] the province.

[1] Supply *as*.
[2] Masc. plu. acc. of **nostra**.
[3] Words enclosed in parentheses are not to be translated.

A Silver Denarius, a Common Roman Coin, worth 17 Cents.

LESSON VII.

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION. — ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

CAESAR IN GAUL. As already stated, Caesar's determination to carve out for himself a great career led him to accept the governorship of Gaul, where by eight years of the hardest sort of campaigning, he greatly extended the boundaries of Gaul and proved himself not only a very clever politician, but also a peerless military captain. As the law did not allow a general to enter Rome while commanding an army, Caesar, during all this time, did not visit that city and was deprived of all the social pleasures and exciting open-air spectacles that made a Roman's life worth living.

ROMAN IMPERATOR.

42. PARADIGM.

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

oppidum, *town*; BASE, **oppid-**.

	SINGULAR.	CASE ENDINGS.	PLURAL.	CASE ENDINGS.
Nominative	oppid**um**	**-um**	oppid**a**	**-a**
Genitive	oppid**ī**	**-ī**	oppid**ōrum**	**-ōrum**
Dative	oppid**ō**	**-ō**	oppid**īs**	**-īs**
Accusative	oppid**um**	**-um**	oppid**a**	**-a**
Ablative	oppid**ō**	**-ō**	oppid**īs**	**-īs**

Observe: —

(1) that the ending **-um** is the ending of all neuter nouns of the Second Declension according to the gender rule of § **29**.

(2) that the nominative and accusative plural end in short **-a**, and that the accusative singular has the same ending as the nominative singular. This is true of neuter nouns of all declensions.

(3) that all other case endings are the same as those of masculine nouns of the Second Declension, § **30**.

Neuter adjectives of the Second Declension are declined exactly like neuter nouns of the same declension. Observe the combination **māgnum oppidum**, *a great town;* bases **māgn- oppid-**.

43. All the adjectives given in the preceding lessons belong to the First and Second Declensions; the masculine and neuter adjectives belonging to the Second and the feminine to the First. These forms are summarized in the paradigm below.

PARADIGM.

THE ADJECTIVE **Lātus**, *wide.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	lātus	lāta	lātum	lātī	lātae	lāta
Gen.	lātī	lātae	lātī	lātōrum	lātārum	lātōrum
Dat.	lātō	lātae	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs
Acc.	lātum	lātam	lātum	lātōs	lātās	lāta
Ab.	lātō	lātā	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs

44. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Prōvinciam māgnam vāstāmus. — *We are laying waste a great province.* (2) Reliquōs Belgās incitātis. — *You arouse the rest-of-the Belgians.* (3) Proxima oppida sunt dīvīsa. — *The nearest towns are divided.*

Observe: —

(1) that the adjective **māgnam** is in feminine singular accusative to agree with **prōvinciam** in G. N. C.

(2) that the adjective **reliquōs** is masculine plural accusative to agree with **Belgās** in G. N. C.

(3) that the adjective **proxima** is neuter plural nominative to agree with **oppida** in G. N. C.

(4) that all adjectives in these sentences are attributive except **dīvīsa**. Explain its agreement, § **10** (2).

45. *RULE. — Adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in G. N. C.*

46. **VOCABULARY.**

Nouns.	Adjectives.
bellum, -ī, n., *war.*	**bonus**, -a, -um, *good.*
institūtum, -ī, n., *custom.*	**māgnus**, -a, -um, *great, large.*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*	**multī**, -ae, -a (plu.), *many.*
perīculum, -ī, n., *peril, danger.*	**proximus**, -a, -um, *nearest.*
rēgnum, -ī, n., *royal power.*	**reliquus**, -a, -um, *remaining, the-rest-of.*
respōnsum, -ī, n., *response.*	

47. **WRITTEN WORK.**

Decline together, naming cases: **māgnum bellum, perīculum proximum, bonum respōnsum.**

48. **EXERCISES.**

I. (1) In nostrā prōvinciā sunt māgna oppida. (2) Bella Gallōrum multa perīcula habent. (3) Īnstitūta Germānōrum Galliā[1] prohibentur. (4) Celtae rēgnum obtinent. (5) Germānī multa respōnsa Belgīs dant. (6) Germānī reliquōs Belgās multīs vīcīs prohibent. (7) Germānī reliquī Belgās in multīs vīcīs habent. (8) Multa bella proximās prōvinciās vāstant. (9) Proxima bella multās prōvinciās incitant. (10) Reliquae prōvinciae multa oppida habent.

II. (1) The Gauls keep away danger (from) the towns. (2) The Germans have many friends in the villages. (3) The Germans have friends in many villages. (4) Many carts are imported into Gaul. (5) The Belgians import many carts into Gaul. (6) The Gauls hold the royal power in the nearest provinces. (7) The nearest towns are divided.

[1] **Prohibeō** in Caesar is regularly followed by the ablative without a preposition.

LESSON VIII.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS: CONSONANT STEMS.

CAESAR, DICTATOR. Controlled by Caesar's enemies, the Roman senate not only refused him a hard-earned triumphal celebration, but voted to deprive him of the office in which he had so well served his country. With his loyal army of Gallic veterans, Caesar marched to Rome, where he was elected dictator. No massacres marred Caesar's triumph, which resulted in the best government Rome ever had. His plans for the happiness of his country were cut off by his assassination at the hands of men who owed to their noble victim their honors and lives.

ROMAN TRIUMPHAL CAR.

49. In the Third Declension there are two classes of nouns: (1) those whose **stems**[1] end in a **consonant,** and (2) those whose **stems** end in the **vowel i.**

50. PARADIGMS.

FIRST CLASS. — CONSONANT STEMS.

	lēx, f., *law*	**virtūs**, f., *bravery*	**mercātor**, m., *trader*	**flūmen**, n., *river*		
STEM OR BASE:	**lēg-**	**virtūt-**	**mercātor-**	**flūmin-**		
		SINGULAR.			CASE ENDINGS.	
					M. F.	N.
Nom.	lēx (=lēgs)	virtūs (=virtūts)	mercātor	flūmen	—	—
Gen.	lēgis	virtūtis	mercātōris	flūminis	-is	-is
Dat.	lēgī	virtūtī	mercātōrī	flūminī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	lēgem	virtūtem	mercātōrem	flūmen	-em	—
Abl.	lēge	virtūte	mercātōre	flūmine	-e	-e

[1] The stem of a noun may differ from the base in the addition of a vowel, which is often dropped before the case ending; *e.g.* **Gallus**, base **Gall-**, stem **Gallo**, genitive singular **Galli**.

PLURAL.

Nom.	lēgēs	virtūtēs	mercātōrēs	flūmina	-ēs -a
Gen.	lēgum	virtūtum	mercātōrum	flūminum	-um -um
Dat.	lēgibus	virtūtibus	mercātōribus	flūminibus	ibus -ibus
Acc.	lēgēs	virtūtēs	mercātōrēs	flūmina	-ēs -a
Abl.	lēgibus	virtūtibus	mercātōribus	flūminibus	-ibus -ibus

Observe: —

(1) that the genitive singular of all these nouns ends in **-is**, the distinguishing ending of this declension.

(2) that the base (in nouns of this class the same as the stem) is found by dropping this ending **-is** from the genitive singular.

(3) that as the nominative singular is often unlike the stem, it is necessary in nouns of this declension to memorize the genitive singular as well as the nominative singular.

(4) that the nominative and accusative plural of the neuter noun **flūmen** ends in **-a**, while the accusative singular is the same as the nominative singular like neuter nouns of the Second Declension. Compare **oppidum**, § 42.

51. VOCABULARY.

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., *consul*, one of the two chief magistrates of Rome.
flūmen, flūminis, n., *river*.
hūmānitās, hūmānitātis, f., *refinement*.
cum, prep. governing abl., *with, in company with*.
lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.
mercātor, mercātōris, m., *trader*.
nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f., *nobility*.
virtūs, virtūtis, f., *bravery, virtue*.

52. WRITTEN WORK.

Decline together, underscoring endings: **māgnus Belga**, **cōnsul bonus**, **reliqua nōbilitās** (sing. only), **proximum flūmen** (plu. only).

53. EXERCISES.

I. (1) Mercātōrēs ad Gallōs commeant. (2) Nōbilitās Galliae Institūta bona habet. (3) Hūmānitās et virtūs cōnsulum māgnae appellantur. (4) Cōnsulēs Hispāniā prohibentur. (5) Belgae ad Sēquanam, māgnum flūmen, pertinent. (6) Mercātōrēs mul-

tōs carrōs ad Belgās important. (7) Cōnsulēs bonās lēgēs Belgīs dant. (8) Celtae sunt cum mercātōribus in vīcīs.

II. (1) The consuls give many laws to the Germans. (2) The traders go-often with the-rest-of the Gauls to the great rivers. (3) The river Seine extends to the nearest province. (4) Many carts are imported to the large villages. (5) The bravery of the consuls keeps the Germans away (from) the nearest towns.

LESSON IX.

PRESENT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

A Bit of Swiss Scenery.

The Ancient Swiss. Caesar's first campaign was against the Swiss, whom the Romans called Helvētiī. We all know the sort of country Switzerland is — three-fourths of its surface mountains and glaciers, not one acre in six fit for ploughing and planting. Small wonder that these brave Swiss determined to take away from their weaker neighbors, the Gauls, the green and fertile fields of "the pleasant land of France."

54. The present infinitive of the Third Conjugation ends in **-ere**; therefore the characteristic vowel (vowel before **-re** of the present infinitive) is short **e**.

The verbs studied may be grouped as follows:—

Conj.	Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Pres. Stem.	Char. Vowel.
I.	līberō	līberāre	līberā	ā
II.	moveō	movēre	movē	ē
III.	dīvidō	dīvidere	dīvide	e (variable)

55. PARADIGMS.

Present Indicative of the Verb **Dīvidō**.

Prin. Parts: **dīvidō, dīvidere.**

Stem: **dīvide-.**

Active.		Passive.	
singular.	endings.		endings.
1. dīvidō, I divide.	-ō	1. dīvidor, I am divided.	-r
2. dīvidis, you divide.	-s	2. dīvideris (re), you are divided.	-ris (-re)
3. dīvidit, he divides.	-t	3. dīviditur, he is divided.	-tur
plural.			
1. dīvidimus, we divide.	-mus	1. dīvidimur, we are divided.	-mur
2. dīviditis, you divide.	-tis	2. dīvidiminī, you are divided.	-minī
3. dīvidunt, they divide.	-nt	3. dīviduntur, they are divided.	-ntur

Observe:—

(1) that the personal endings, both active and passive, are the same as in the First and Second Conjugations.

(2) that the short **e** of the stem appears only in the second singular passive.

(3) that in the first singular, active and passive, the characteristic vowel of the stem is lost before **-ō** and **-or** as in the First Conjugation.

(4) that in other forms it becomes **i** or **u**.

56. The adjective **noster, nostra, nostrum,** *our*, differs from other adjectives of the First and Second Declensions only in the nominative singular masculine. It accordingly has as genitive singular forms **nostrī, nostrae, nostrī,** having as its base **nostr-**.

57. VOCABULARY.

contendō, contendere, *contend, fight, hasten.*
dīvidō, dīvidere, *divide, separate.*
dūcō, dūcere, *lead, draw.*
gerō, gerere, *carry on* or *wage.*
incolō, incolere, *inhabit, dwell in.*
inter, prep. governing acc., *between, among.*

58. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Present indicative, active and passive, of **dūcō** and **gerō**.
(2) Decline **noster** in full in all genders.

59. EXERCISES.

I. (1) Dūcitis, dūciminī; dīvidimus, dīvidimur; incolunt, incoluntur; dūcis, dūceris; līberāmur; habēmur; dūcimur; dant; prohibent; gerunt. (2) Belgae nostra oppida incolunt. (3) Celtae ab Aquītānīs flūmine dīviduntur. (4) Cōnsulēs multa bella cum Gallīs gerunt. (5) Mercātōrēs ad Sēquanam flūmen dūcitis. (6) Virtūs Germānōrum nostrōs cōnsulēs movet. (7) Bellum cum māgnō numerō Gallōrum geritur.

II. (1) We lead, we are being led; you divide, you are divided; they inhabit; you (sing.) fight; it is inhabited; they are being divided. (2) A large river divides our provinces from the Gauls. (3) Our consuls carry on many wars with the nobility of the divided Belgians. (4) The nearest towns extend to the large rivers. (5) The traders are led to the nearest rivers. (6) The Germans fight with the Gauls between the rivers and the villages.

LESSON X.

THIRD DECLENSION *I*-STEMS, NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

A GREAT EMIGRATION. In search of other and better homes, the Swiss started westward, 368,000 strong, driving before them their cattle and carrying with them their wives and children loaded in big wagons, which must have looked something like the "prairie schooners" once to be seen on our Western plains. The story of this great emigration and of the plucky fight put up by these ancient Swiss in their effort to escape from the rough, icebound fastnesses of Switzerland, we shall be prepared to begin in Lesson XI.

60. The **stems**[1] of the second class of the Third Declension nouns end in **-i**. Such nouns have (1) nominatives ending in **-is** and **-es**, as **fīnis**, *end*, and no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative; (2) nominatives ending in **-ns** and **-rs**, as **clīēns**, *dependent;* (3) neuter nominatives ending in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**, as **vectīgal**, *tax;* (4) nominatives that are monosyllables ending in an **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant, as **pars**, *part.*

PARADIGMS.

	pars, f., *part*	**fīnis**, m., *end*, *territories* (in plu.).	
BASE:	**part-**	**fīn-**	
STEM:	**parti-**	**fīni-**	
	SINGULAR.		CASE ENDINGS.
Nominative	pars	fīnis	—
Genitive	partis	fīnis	-is
Dative	partī	fīnī	-ī
Accusative	partem	fīnem	-em
Ablative	parte	fīne or fīnī	-e (-ī)
	PLURAL.		
Nominative	partēs	fīnēs	-ēs
Genitive	partium	fīnium	-ium
Dative	partibus	fīnibus	-ibus
Accusative	partēs (-īs)	fīnēs (-īs)	-ēs (-īs)
Ablative	partibus	fīnibus	-ibus

[1] See footnote, page 20.

Observe: —

(1) that, unlike consonant stems, nouns of this second class do not have the base and stem the same.

(2) that the genitive plural ends in **-ium** and accusative plural in **-īs** as well as in **-ēs**.

(3) that the ablative singular sometimes ends in **-ī**.

61. Most adjectives of the Third Declension have the masculine and feminine alike, but have distinct forms in the neuter nominative and accusative, as may be observed in the paradigms below. Such adjectives are known as Adjectives of Two Terminations, and have ī-stems.

PARADIGM.

M. and f. omnis, n. omne, *all.*

BASE: **omn-**
STEM: **omni-**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nominative	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
Genitive	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
Dative	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Accusative	omnem	omne	omnēs, omnīs	omnia
Ablative	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

Note the ablative singular ending in **-ī** and neuter nominative and accusative plural ending in **-ia**.

62. VOCABULARY.

animus, -ī, m., *mind, spirit.*
fīnis, fīnis, m., *end* (in sing.), *territories* (in plu.).
mōns, montis, m., *mountain, hill.*
pars, partis, f., *part.*
effēminō, effēminārе, *weaken.*
et, coördinate conj., *and.*
alius, alia, aliud, other.
fortis, -e, *brave.*
nōbilis, -e, *noble, well-known.*
omnis, -e, *all.*
trēs, tria, *three.*
ūnus, -a, -um, *one.*
dē, prep. governing abl., *from, down from, about, concerning.*

The adjectives **alius** and **ūnus** are somewhat irregular in declension, but the forms occurring in the exercises present no difficulties.

63. **WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Decline together: **fīnis nōbilis, fortis animus.**
(2) Decline **trēs** in full like the plural of **omnis.**

64. **EXERCISES.**

I. (1) Gallī trēs vīcōs et omnia oppida obtinent. (2) Mercātōrēs animōs omnis nōbilitātis effēminant. (3) Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs. (4) Belgae ūnam partem incolunt. (5) Aquītānī aliam partem Galliae incolunt. (6) Flūmen dē montibus ad Ōceanum pertinet. (7) Celtae tertiam partem fīnium incolunt. (8) Multa bella in omnibus nostrīs fīnibus geruntur.

II. (1) Our territories extend between the mountains and the rivers. (2) The town is divided into many parts. (3) We inhabit three parts of Gaul. (4) (In) our language the river is called the Seine. (5) All the traders weaken the spirits of the brave Belgians.

FIRST REVIEW.

WRITTEN WORK.

I. (*a*) List in a column on the left margin of a sheet of paper the Latin nouns from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: amicable, belligerent, cause, consular, finish, flume, fossil, fugitive, institution, legal, linguist, magnanimous, mercatorial, mountain, nobility, numerical, partial, perilous, provincial, reign, response, virtue.

(*b*) Index the Latin nouns thus obtained in seven vertical columns as follows, indicating the stem of the Third Declension nouns by *c* or *i* (see § **49**) above the number 3: —

Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gender	Dec.	Nom. Plu.	Gen. Plu.	Meaning.
carrus	carrī	M.	2	carrī	carrōrum	cart
oppidum	oppidī	N.	2	oppida	oppidōrum	town
virtūs	virtūtis	F.	3c	virtūtēs	virtūtum	bravery (plu. acts of bravery)

II. (*a*) List in a column the Latin adjectives from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: bonus, fortitude, latitude, longitude, magnitude, nobility, nostrum, omnibus, proximity, relic.

(*b*) Index the Latin adjectives thus obtained in the following manner:

NOM. SING.	GEN. SING.	NOM. PLU.	GEN. PLU.	MEANING.
māgnus, -a, um	māgnī, -ae, -ī	māgnī, -ae, -a	māgnōrum, -ārum, -ōrum	great, large.
fortis, -e	fortis, -is	fortēs, -ia	fortium, -ium	brave, strong.
tertius, -a, -um	tertiī, -ae, -ī	not found in plural. Why?		third.

III. (*a*) List in a column the Latin verbs from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: accusation, appellation, army, belligerent, contention, devastation, division, effeminacy, essence, habit, incitement, inducement, spectator, (in)superable, liberty, movable, obtain, occupation, pertinacious, prohibition.

(*b*) Index the verbs thus obtained as follows:

PRES. INDICATIVE.	PRES. INFINITIVE.	STEM.	CONJ.	MEANING.
incolō	incolere	incole-	3	inhabit

RAPID ORAL DRILL.

IV. Make any intelligible combination of Latin adjectives obtained in the second list with Latin nouns in the first list, taking care to make a proper G. N. C. agreement and to use the same noun but once. If time permits, this drill may be profitably extended by giving the genitive singular and the nominative plural of each of these combinations.

V. Translate into Latin, using appropriate prepositions: away from the town, out of the town, down from the town, in the town, to the town, into the town; among the Celts, with the Celts.

VI. Give short original English sentences to illustrate each of the following constructions: predicate noun, predicate adjective, direct object, indirect object, genitive case, appositive (1) of subject, (2) of direct object, (3) of indirect object.

MEMORY WORK.

VII. Review all verb paradigms by giving the corresponding active and passive together, as **līberō, līberor, līberās, līberāris.**

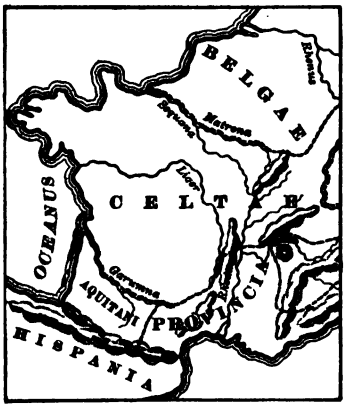
VIII. Review the gender rules of the First and Second Declensions.

LESSON XI.

DECLENSION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE *HĪC*. — ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

65. *The divisions of Gaul.*

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum[1] ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī[1] ipsōrum[2] linguā Celtae, nostrā[3] Gallī appellantur.



THE THREE PARTS OF GAUL.

[1] **quārum**, fem. plu. gen. of the relative pronoun, *of which*. **quī**, masc. plu. nom. of same, *who*; supply antecedent *those*.

[2] **ipsōrum**, masc. plu. gen. of pronoun **ipse**, *of themselves, their own*.

[3] **nostrā** agrees in G. N. C. with what word understood?

66. PARADIGM.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE **Hīc**, *this*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

67. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Hī omnēs oppidō mercātōrēs prohibent. — *All these keep the traders away from the town.* (2) Haec flūmina Gallōs ā prōvinciā dīvidunt. — *These rivers separate the Gauls from the province.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 **Hī** is used as a demonstrative pronoun and is the subject of **prohibent**.

(2) that in sentence 2 **haec** is used as a demonstrative adjective, agreeing in G. N. C. with **flūmina** according to the rule already given: adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in G. N. C.

(3) that the verbs in these sentences denote separation, and that **oppidō** and **prōvinciā**, the things from which there is separation, are put in the ablative, the latter with and the former without a preposition.

68. *RULE.* — *Words signifying separation or privation are followed by the ablative with or without the prepositions* **ab, dē,** *or* **ex.**

69. VOCABULARY.

Garumna, -ae, m., *the Garonne*,
Matrona, -ae, m., *the Marne*,
} rivers in Gaul.

sē, acc. plu. of the reflexive pronoun, meaning *themselves*.
differō, differre, *differ*.

70. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Put **hīc** in agreement with each of the following nouns: **virtūs, oppidum, cōnsul.**

(2) Decline together each combination thus formed.

71. EXERCISES.

I. (1) Haec flūmina Aquītānōs ā montibus dīvidunt. (2) Hī Belgae lēgibus inter sē differunt. (3) Garumna flūmen Gallōs ab Aquītānīs dīvidit. (4) Nostrī fīnēs hīs montibus ab Ōceanō dīviduntur. (5) Reliquī Gallī huius prōvinciae īnstitūtīs inter sē differunt. (6) Trēs partēs nostrōrum fīnium incoluntur. (7) Nostrī cōnsulēs hōs mercātōrēs prōvinciīs prohibent. (8) Linguā Germānī inter sē differunt.

II. (1) Many rivers separate the Germans from all these territories. (2) These mountains are between the river and the town. (3) The brave nobility of the Gauls fights with these Germans. (4) The spirits of all the Gauls are weakened (by) these laws. (5) The brave Celts are being led to these large towns. (6) The consuls are giving three parts of these territories to the Gauls.

LESSON XII.

DECLENSION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*. — THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE.

72. *The nations of Gaul.*

(1) Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt.

73. Like the demonstrative **hīc, is** may be used both as a demonstrative *adjective* and as a demonstrative *pronoun*, meaning *this* or *that* in the singular, and *these* or *those* in the plural. As the Latin language has no third personal pronoun, **is** supplies this want, meaning *he, she, it,* or *they,* according to its form.

74. PARADIGM.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE **Is.**

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

Compare the endings of **is** with those of **māgnus** and **hīc**.

75. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Mercātōrēs ea in oppida Belgārum important. — *The traders import these things to the towns of the Belgians.* (2) Id flūmen fīnēs Gallōrum dīvidit. — *That river separates the territories of the Gauls.* (3) Cōnsul eam līberat. — *The consul frees her.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 **ea** is used as a demonstrative pronoun and is the direct object of **important**.

(2) that in sentence 2 **id** is used as a demonstrative adjective, agreeing in G. N. C. with **flūmen**.

(3) that in sentence 3 **eam** is used as a personal pronoun and is the direct object of the verb **līberat**.

(4) that in sentences 1 and 2 the nouns **Belgārum** and **Gallōrum** are in the genitive case and denote the persons to whom **oppida** and **fīnēs** belong.

76. *RULE. — The possessive genitive denotes the person to whom or thing to which something belongs.*

77. VOCABULARY.

cultus, m. (a noun of the fourth declension), *civilization*, abl. cultū.

absum, abesse (compound of prep. ab and verb sum), *to be away, to be distant.*

fortis, -e, *brave;* superlative fortissimus, -a, -um, *bravest* (declined like lātus).

longē, adv. (from adj. longus), *far;* superlative longissimē, *farthest, very far.*

minimē, adv., superlative degree, *least;* minimē saepe, *very seldom.*
saepe, adv., *often.*
atque, coördinate conjunction, *and, and also.*
-que,[1] a coördinate conjunction, *and.*

78. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Put the demonstrative pronoun **is** in agreement with each of the following nouns: **lēx, flūmen, mercātor.**

(2) Decline together each combination thus formed, giving double forms of the demonstrative when such occur.

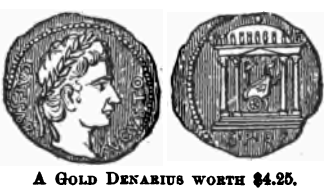
(3) Decline **fortissimus, -a, -um**, by endings only, writing out the entire nominative singular.

79. EXERCISES.

I. (1) Fortissimī Belgārum ā fīnibus eōrum Aquītānōrum longissimē absunt. (2) Mercātōrēs ad ea oppida Gallōrum saepe commeant. (3) Carrī in eās prōvinciās minimē saepe importantur. (4) Aquītānī Germānīque sunt fortissimī hōrum omnium minimēque saepe ad flūmina commeant. (5) Eī Germānī ā cultū atque hūmānitāte eōrum oppidōrum longissimē absunt. (6) Cōnsulēs cum eīs Germānīs saepe contendunt. (7) Oppida eōrum mercātōribus dantur. (8) Cōnsul eōs accūsat. (9) Lēgēs eīs damus. (10) Mercātōrēs ad eōs dūcuntur.

II. (1) All the consuls often give laws to those villages of the Celts. (2) These rivers divide the bravest (masc. plu.) of them from the Germans. (3) The trader's friend arms him. (4) You give him a brave spirit. (5) We lead her to that town. (6) He divides it among the traders.

[1] **Que** is called an enclitic because it never stands alone, but is used as a suffix of the word before which it is translated, *e.g.*, **minimēque**, *and least.*



A GOLD DENARIUS WORTH $4.25.

LESSON XIII.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

80. *The Belgians characterized.*

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod[1] ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs[2] saepe commeant.

81. PARADIGMS.

THE RELATIVE **Quī**.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

MEANINGS OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

Nominative	who, which, that.
Genitive	whose, of whom, of which.
Dative	to or for whom, which.
Accusative	whom, which, that.
Ablative	by, from, in, with whom, which.

Quī, though masculine, may be translated by either *who* or *which*, *e.g.* **cōnsul quī**, *the consul who;* **mōns quī**, *the mountain which.* The same is true of the feminine **quae**.

82. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Gallia quam incolimus in partēs trēs dīvīsa est. — *Gaul which we inhabit is divided into three parts.* (2) Celtae quōs accūsāmus Galliam incolunt. — *The Celts whom we blame inhabit Gaul.*

[1] **Propterea quod**, a combination usually translated *because*, formed of **propterea**, adv., *on this account*, and **quod**, subordinate conj., *because*.

[2] **Mercātōrēs** is nominative.

(3) Germānī, quibuscum[1] Belgae bellum gerunt, sunt fortēs. — *The Germans, with whom the Belgians carry on war, are brave.* (4) Is quī est cōnsul accūsātur. — *He* (i.e. *any one*) *who is consul is blamed.*

Observe: —

(1) that in each sentence the relative pronoun is in the same gender and number as its antecedent.

(2) that in each sentence the case of the relative pronoun differs from that of the antecedent, if the construction of the subordinate clause requires it.

(3) that in sentence 4 **Is**, the antecedent of the relative pronoun, does not refer to any particular person, but means *the man, he,* or *one,* a usage of very common occurrence in Latin.

83. *RULE. — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon its construction in the clause in which it stands.*

84. VOCABULARY.

Helvētius, -ī, m., *Swiss, Helvetian.*
Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine.*
Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone.*
Sēquanus, -ī, m., *Sequanian, one of the Sequani.*
continenter, adv., *continually, constantly.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
quoque, conj., *also* (placed after emphatic word).
trāns, prep. governing the accusative, *across.*

85. EXERCISES.

I. (1) Mercātōrēs ad eōs Belgās ea, quae animōs effēminant, important. (2) Germānī, quibuscum bellum continenter geritur, sunt proximī eīs Belgīs. (3) Hī Germānī, quibuscum Belgae multa bella gerunt, trāns Rhēnum incolunt. (4) Animī reliquōrum Gallōrum, ad quōs mercātōrēs ea important, effēminantur. (5) Germānī Belgaeque hōs mercātōrēs prohibent, quī ea impor-

[1] The preposition **cum** is enclitic with the relative, reflexive, interrogative, and personal pronouns.

tant. (6) Helvētiī quoque ā cultū et hūmānitāte longē absunt. (7) Rhodanus, trāns quem Helvētiī incolunt, longē pertinet. (8) Id flūmen ad vīcōs pertinet, quōs fortissimī Germānī incolunt. (9) Germānī ea prohibent, quibus animī effēminantur.

(In sentences 5, 8, and 9, the antecedents are separated by one or more words from the relative pronouns, an arrangement not permitted in English, which lacks distinct G. N. C. forms of the relative.)

(In the sentences below place each verb, except **sum**, at the end of its own clause and determine the G. N. C. of each relative before translating.)

II. (1) The Gauls, whose towns the Germans hold, are nearest to the Belgians. (2) The Helvetians hold these large towns, which are across the Rhone. (3) (From) all these towns are kept away all those (things) that the trader imports from (*i.e.* out of) Gaul. (4) The Sequanians, to whom the Helvetians give customs and laws, are far away from the Aquitanians. (5) The wars, which we carry on, are waged with these Gauls.

LESSON XIV.

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN *IUS* AND *IUM*.—ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

86. *Hostile peoples.*

A GAUL.

Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs[1] pertinent, important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

[1] **Ad effēminandōs animōs** (known as a gerundive construction) is best translated *to weaken their spirits* or *courage*.

87. PARADIGMS.

Helvētius, *a Swiss;* BASE, **Helveti-**. **proelium**, *battle;* BASE, **proeli-**.

	SINGULAR.	
Nominative	Helvētius	proelium
Genitive	Helvē'tī (Helvētiī)	proelī (proeliī)
Dative	Helvētiō	proeliō
Accusative	Helvētium	proelium
Ablative	Helvētiō	proeliō
	PLURAL.	
Nominative	Helvētiī	proelia
Genitive	Helvētiōrum	proeliōrum
Dative	Helvētiīs	proeliīs
Accusative	Helvētiōs	proelia
Ablative	Helvētiīs	proeliīs

Observe: —

(1) that these nouns differ from the nouns of the Second Declension formerly declined only in the genitive singular, where **iī** is usually contracted to a single **ī**.

(2) that the accent of this form is on the same syllable as in the nominative, cf. **cōnsi'lī** and **impe'rī** in the vocabulary § **90**.

88 MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Gallī cum mercātōribus ad prōvinciam commeant. — *The Gauls go often with the traders to the province.* (2) Bellum cum Germānīs gerimus. — *We carry on war with the Germans.*

Observe: —

(1) that in these sentences **mercātōribus** and **Germānīs** are ablatives governed by the preposition **cum** and denote the persons in company with whom the action of the verb takes place.

(2) that this ablative, known as the Ablative of Accompaniment, answers the question "With whom?"

89. *RULE.* — *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative regularly with* **cum**.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

90. VOCABULARY.

cōnsilium, cōnsi'lī, n., *plan, design.*
imperium, impe'rī, n., *command, control.*
proelium, proelī, n., *battle.*
cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *daily.*
suus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *his, her, its, their*, according to the subject.
praecēdō, praecēdere, *precede, surpass.*
ferē, adv., *almost, nearly.*
aut, coördinate conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or.*
cum, subordinate conj., *when, while.*
quibuscum, abl. of interrogative pronoun and prep. cum (§ 82, note), *with whom?*

91. WRITTEN WORK.

Put into agreement and decline together **cotīdiānus** and **cōnsilium** hīc and **imperium**.

92. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Hī Gallī proximōs Belgās hūmānitāte praecēdunt. (2) Helvētiī, quōrum cōnsilia et īnstitūta differunt, cum eīs Belgīs contendunt. (3) Nostrī amīcī, Gallī, in suīs fīnibus cum Sēquanīs aut cum Belgīs cotīdiāna proelia gerunt. (4) Bellum māgnum cum eīs Germānīs geritur. (5) Multī Germānī cum Belgīs ad eōs fīnēs commeant. (6) Hōs mercātōrēs cum suīs amīcīs ad oppida Helvētiōrum dūxērunt. (7) Quibuscum Gallī bellum continenter gerunt?

II. (1) The Germans contend (in) daily battles with the Gauls. (2) War is waged with these Germans in the territories of the Belgians or of their[1] friends. (3) We often resort to the towns of the Swiss with our[1] friends. (4) The Belgians carry on wars with the rest of the Gauls. (5) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 7, part I.]

[1] The Romans rarely used a possessive adjective when the possessor was clearly indicated without it. The possessive adjectives should therefore be frequently supplied in translating from Latin into English and omitted in translating from English into Latin.

93. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Quā[1] dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt. Reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt quod cum Germānīs contendunt. Ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt. Aut suīs fīnibus Helvētiī eōs prohibent, aut ipsī[2] in fīnibus eōrum (Germānōrum) bellum gerunt. Helvētiī cum Germānīs contendunt, cum eōs suīs fīnibus prohibent.

[1] **Quā**, rel. adj. **quā dē causā**, *for which reason*, or better, *for this reason*. At the beginning of a sentence, the relative is usually translated by a demonstrative.
[2] **ipsī**, intensive pronoun, nom. plu., *themselves*.

LESSON XV.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IO*.—ABLATIVE OF MEANS.

94. *The warlike Swiss.*

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

95. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation end in **-io** in the first singular, and are conjugated in the present indicative according to the following paradigms.

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB **Capiō**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere**.

PRES. STEM: **cape-**.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
SINGULAR.	
1. capiō, I take.	1. capior, I am taken.
2. capis, you take.	2. caperis (-ere), you are taken.
3. capit, he takes.	3. capitur, he is taken.

PLURAL.

1. capimus, we take.	1. capimur, we are taken.
2. capitis, you take.	2. capiminī, you are taken.
3. capiunt, they take.	3. capiuntur, they are taken.

Observe: —

That the present indicative of **capiō** differs from that of **dīvidō** only in the first singular and the third plural.

96. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Nostrī fīnēs flūminibus continentur. — *Our territories are bounded by rivers.* (2) Ea carrīs importāmus. — *We import these things in carts.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 the ablative **flūminibus** denotes the means by which our territory is bounded.

(2) that in sentence 2 the ablative **carrīs** denotes the instrument or means by or in which we carry these things. This construction, known as the Ablative of Means, answers the question "By what means?"

97. *RULE. — The means or instrument of an action is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.*

98. VOCABULARY.

initium, ini'tĭ, n., *beginning.*
septentriō, septentriōnis, m. (usually plu.), literally the Seven Plough Oxen, the constellation known as the Great Bear or Dipper, hence the *North.*
tēlum, -ī, n., *missile, spear.*
quō, abl. sing. of interrogative, *by what?*
attingō, attingere, *touch upon.*
capiō, capere, *take.*
contineō, continēre, *bound, hem in.*
dīcō, dīcere, *say, appoint.*
iaciō, iacere, *throw, hurl.*
vergō, vergere, *incline, slope.*
etiam, adv., *also, even.*

99. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate **iaciō** in the present indicative, active and passive; **attingō** in the present indicative, active, and **dīcō** in the passive.

(2) Decline **septentriō** in the plural only.

100. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Capimus, capimur; iaciunt, iaciuntur; capitis, capiminī; iacis, iaceris; capit, capitur. (2) Capiunt, dūcunt; caperis, dūceris, movēris; iaciuntur, dīviduntur, continentur. (3) Celtae nostrā linguā[1] Gallī appellantur. (4) Multōs vīcōs Gallōrum nostrīs longīs tēlīs vāstāmus. (5) Nostrī fīnēs, quī ad septentriōnēs vergunt, montibus continentur. (6) Belgae, quī cum Germānīs continenter contendunt, tēlīs Sēquanōrum superantur. (7) Quō flūmine Gallī ab Aquītānīs dīvīsī sunt?

II. (1) We take, we are taken; you (sing.) hurl, you (sing.) are hurled, they hurl, they are hurled. (2) You are thrown; you are divided; you are held; they are being taken; they are being led; they are being held; he is led; he is taken; he is aroused. (3) With our spears we keep away the Germans from the towns. (4) Our friends, the Germans, are hemmed in by many mountains and rivers. (5) Our province is separated from the Germans by three rivers. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 7, part I.]

101. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Eōrum fīnium pars initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō. Eam partem Gallōs obtinēre dictum est.[2] Pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā Rhodanō. Ea pars continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum. Attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs[3] et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum. Ea pars vergit ad septentriōnēs.

[1] **What ablative is linguā?**

[2] **dictum est**, passive ind. perf., 3d sing. of **dīcō**, *it has been said*. **Eam partem . . . dictum est**, *it has been said the Gauls hold this part* (literally, *to hold*).

[3] **ab Sēquanīs**, etc., *on the side occupied by the Sequani*, etc., *i.e.* on the east.

LESSON XVI.

PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*. — COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

102. *The third part of Gaul.*

SEPTENTRIONES.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs.

103. The **perfect** in Latin is the past time tense of greatest importance and of most frequent occurrence.

PARADIGM.

PERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB **Sum**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī.**

PERFECT STEM: **fu-.**

SINGULAR.	PERSONAL ENDINGS.
1. **fuī**, I was, I have been.	**-ī**
2. **fuistī**, you were, you have been.	**-istī**
3. **fuit**, he was, he has been.	**-it**
PLURAL.	
1. **fuimus**, we were, we have been.	**-imus**
2. **fuistis**, you were, you have been.	**-istis**
3. **fuērunt** (or **fuēre**), they were, they have been.	**-ērunt** (or **-ēre**).

Observe: —

(1) that the perfect stem **fu-**, to which the personal endings are attached, is found by striking off the ending **-ī** from the third principal part.

(2) that the perfect tense has a different set of personal endings. These personal endings are the same for the perfect indicative tenses of all conjugations in the active voice.

(3) that the perfect tense has two meanings, corresponding to the English past and to the present perfect respectively.

104. As in English, adjectives in Latin have three degrees of comparison, — positive, comparative, and superlative, — and are regularly compared as follows:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
M. F. N.	M. F. N.	M. F. N.
fortis, -e (base **fort-**); *brave*	fortior, -ius; *braver*	fortissimus, -a, -um *bravest* or *very brave*
M. F. N.	M. F. N.	M. F. N.
longus, -a, -um, (base **long-**); *long*	longior, -ius; *longer*	longissimus, -a, -um *longest* or *very long*

Observe: —

(1) that the comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter.

(2) that the superlative is formed by adding to the base of the positive **-issimus, -a, -um.**

105. The masculine and feminine of comparatives are declined exactly like the noun **mercātor** in § **50**, while the neuter conforms to the principles governing the declension of neuter nouns § **42**, (2).

PARADIGM.

THE COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVE **Inferior.**

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nominative	īnferior	īnferius	īnferiōrēs	īnferiōra
Genitive	īnferiōris	īnferiōris	īnferiōrum	īnferiōrum
Dative	īnferiōrī	īnferiōrī	īnferiōribus	īnferiōribus
Accusative	īnferiōrem	īnferius	īnferiōrēs	īnferiōra
Ablative	īnferiōre	īnferiōre	īnferiōribus	īnferiōribus

106. Superlatives as **fortissimus, -a, -um**, are, as already stated, declined exactly like **lātus, -a, -um**, in § **43.**

107. VOCABULARY.

sōl, sōlis, m. (no gen. plu.), *sun*.
extrēmus, -a -um, sup. adj., *farthest, most distant*.
Inferior, inferius, comp. adj., *lower*.
oriēns, m., f., n. (orientis, genitive), adj., *rising*.
orior (what is known as a deponent verb, passive in form but active in meaning; conjugated in the present like the passive of **capiō**), *begin, arise*.
spectō, spectāre, *face, look*.

108. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Compare **lātus** (lāt-) and **nōbilis** (nōbil-).

(2) Decline in full: the comparative **fortior**; **oriēns** as **liberāns** in App. § 10. Why is **oriēns** called an adjective of One Termination?

(3) Conjugate the verb **absum, abesse, āfuī**, § 77, in the perfect indicative, and **orior** with meanings in the present indicative.

109. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Fuimus, fuistis, āfuērunt, āfuistī, fuit, āfuī. (2) Longius flūmen in fīnibus Belgārum fuit. (3) Nostrī fīnēs fuērunt longissimī. (4) Fortissimōs Gallōrum longiōribus tēlīs superāmus. (5) In vīcīs fortiōrum Aquītānōrum fuistis. (6) Longē āfuimus ab oppidīs Germānōrum, quī fuērunt nōbilissimī. (7) In lātiōribus partibus nostrōrum fīnium fuimus.

II. (1) We were in the widest parts of the territory. (2) He was far away from the three longer rivers. (3) You were between the rivers and the mountains. (4) We lead the traders to the farthest villages. (5) You have been in the territories, which the consuls are laying waste. (6) The consuls were with the braver Gauls in the lower parts of this territory.

110. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Fīnēs Belgārum initium ab extrēmā parte Galliae capiunt. Id est: Belgae oriuntur ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus. Fīnēs Belgārum pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī. Belgae spectant in septentriōnem et eam partem quā ex parte sōl oritur.

LESSON XVII.

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST THREE CONJUGATIONS: PRINCIPAL PARTS.

111. *The Belgians.*

Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem.

112. The principal parts of a Latin verb consist of: (1) pres. ind. act. 1st sing. (2) pres. inf. act. (3) perf. ind. act. 1st sing. (4) perf. pass. participle.

The principal parts of a verb must be thoroughly memorized, because from them are formed all other parts of the verb. The Latin verb has three stems found in the last three principal parts: the present stem, the perfect stem, and the participial stem. The method of finding these stems from the principal parts is indicated in the following table:

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

CONJ.	PRES. IND. ACT.	PRES. INF. ACT.	PERF. IND. ACT.	PERF. PASS. PART.
I.	līberō	līberāre	līberāvī	līberātus
	I liberate	*to liberate*	*I liberated*	*having been liberated*
	STEMS:	PRES. **līberā-**	PERF. **līberāv-**	PART. **līberāt-**
II.	moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtus
	I move	*to move*	*I moved*	*having been moved*
	STEMS:	PRES. **movē-**	PERF. **mōv-**	PART. **mōt-**
III.	dīvidō	dīvidere	dīvīsī	dīvīsus
	I divide	*to divide*	*I divided*	*having been divided*
	STEMS:	PRES. **dīvide-**	PERF. **dīvīs-**	PART. **dīvīs-**
	capiō	capere	cēpī	captus
	I take	*to take*	*I took*	*having been taken*
	STEMS:	PRES. **cape-**	PERF. **cēp-**	PART. **capt-**

113. PARADIGM.

Perfect Indicative Active of Līberō.

Perfect Stem: līberāv-.

	Singular.	Personal Endings.
1.	līberāvī, I liberated, I have liberated, I did liberate	-ī
2.	līberāvistī, you liberated, you have liberated, etc.	-istī
3.	līberāvit, he liberated, he has liberated, etc.	-it
	Plural.	
1.	līberāvimus, we liberated, we have liberated, etc.	-imus
2.	līberāvistis, you liberated, you have liberated, etc.	-istis
3.	līberavērunt or līberāvēre, they liberated, they have liberated, etc.	-ērunt or -ēre

Observe: —

That the personal endings are the same as those of **fuī** in § **103** and are added to the perfect stem.

114. Table of the Perfect Indicative Active of the Second and Third Conjugations.

Singular.		Plural.
mōv- dīvīs- cēp-	-ī -istī -it	-imus -istis -ērunt (or -ēre)

Observe: —

That the forms **mōv-**, **dīvīs-**, **cēp-** are perfect stems, to each of which are added the personal endings.

115. VOCABULARY.

Aquītānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania*, one of the three parts of Gaul.

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, *Pyrenean* (mountains).

appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus, *call, name.*
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, draw.*
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *have, hold.*
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl.*

116. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate with meanings the perfect indicative active of the verbs of the vocabulary.

(2) Tabulate as in § 112 the several stems of these verbs.

117. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Appellāvimus; dūxistis; habuimus. (2) Appellāvistis; dūximus; habuistis. (3) Appellāvērunt; dūxī; iēcistī. (4) Iēcērunt; līberāvimus; mōvī. (5) Mōvit; dīvīsistis; cēpērunt. (6) Habuimus; dūxistī; appellāvī. (7) Cēpit; līberāvistis; dīvīsimus. (8) Mōvērunt; iēcimus; appellāvistis. (9) Multa tēla in oppida iēcistī. (10) Nostrōs fīnēs dīvīsimus. (11) Vīcōs Gallōrum cēpērunt. (12) Belgās amīcōs appellāvistis. (13) Gallōs in Aquītāniam dūximus. (14) Aquītānōs līberāvit. (15) Multa oppida cēpistis. (16) Carrōs dūximus.

II. (1) We led; you have had, they have had. (2) You (sing.) have called; he led; you had. (3) They led; we have had; they hurled. (4) We divided; you took; he has moved. (5) They have moved; they have divided; they have taken. (6) We took; I liberated; you (sing.) have hurled. (7) I have divided; they took; we moved. (8) You divide, you divided; he moves, he has moved. (9) You have divided the territories. (10) You have the noblest friends.

118. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Aquītānia est ūna trium partium Galliae. Ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs pertinet. Aquītānia pertinet ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et partem Ōceanī. Ea pars Ōceanī est ad[1] Hispāniam. Fīnēs Aquītānōrum spectant inter occāsum sōlis[2] et septentriōnēs.

[1] **ad**, *towards, near, off.*

[2] **occāsum sōlis**, *setting of the sun*, i.e. *the west.*

LESSON XVIII.

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF *SUM*. — ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

119. *The Aquitanians.*

Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs. [Cap. I. Fīnis.][1]

120. PARADIGMS.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE VERB **Sum**.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRESENT.	
1. **sum**, I am.	**sumus**, we are.
2. **es**, you are.	**estis**, you are.
3. **est**, he is.	**sunt**, they are.
IMPERFECT.	
1. **eram**, I was.	**erāmus**, we were.
2. **erās**, you were.	**erātis**, you were.
3. **erat**, he was.	**erant**, they were.
FUTURE.	
1. **erō**, I shall be.	**erimus**, we shall be.
2. **eris**, you will be.	**eritis**, you will be.
3. **erit**, he will be.	**erunt**, they will be.

Observe: —

That the first personal ending of the first two tenses is **-m** in stead of **-ō**.

121. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Hī omnēs linguā inter sē differunt. — *All these differ from one another in language.* (2) Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt. — *The Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls in bravery.*

[1] Capitis prīmī fīnis, *i.e.*, end of Chapter I of Caesar's story.

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 the ablative **linguā** denotes that in respect to which all these differ from one another.

(2) that in sentence 2 the ablative **virtūte** denotes that in respect to which the Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls.

(3) that with this ablative no preposition is used.

This construction is called the Ablative of Specification.

122. *RULE. — Specification is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.*

123. **VOCABULARY.**

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus, *fight*, *hasten*.
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *carry on*, *wage*.
incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātus, *incite*, *arouse*.
obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, *hold*, *obtain*.
superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus, *overcome*, *surpass*.
quā, abl. fem. sing. of interrogative,
in what? in what respect?

124. **WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) The imperfect and future indicative of **absum** with meanings.

(2) The principal parts of **pertineō**, *extend* (like **obtineō**), with the meanings of each part as in table, § **112**.

(3) The perfect indicative active of **gerō** with meanings.

125. **EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) Erimus, erāmus, fuimus. (2) Erunt, fuērunt, erant. (3) Erō, erat, eris. (4) Fuistis, estis, eritis, erātis. (5) Erat, erit, fuit, fuī, eram, sum. (6) Oppida, quae cēpimus, sunt tria numerō. (7) Gallī, quōs virtūte praecēditis, erant nōbilissimī. (8) Gallī, quōrum vīcōs Germānī superāvērunt, lēgibus inter sē differunt. (9) Belgae, quibuscum multa bella gessistis, erant dīvīsī cōnsiliīs. (10) Quā Gallī Germānōs superāvērunt?

II. (1) You (sing.) were, you will be, you are, you have been. (2) We shall be, we were, we have been. (3) He is, he was, he will be, he has been, they have been, you were, I shall be. (4) We led our friends to the towns, which are many in number. (5) You fought in the lower province with the consuls, who are far different in customs and bravery. (6) We, who surpass many in bravery and refinement, have aroused the braver Germans. (7) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 10, part I.]

LESSON XIX.

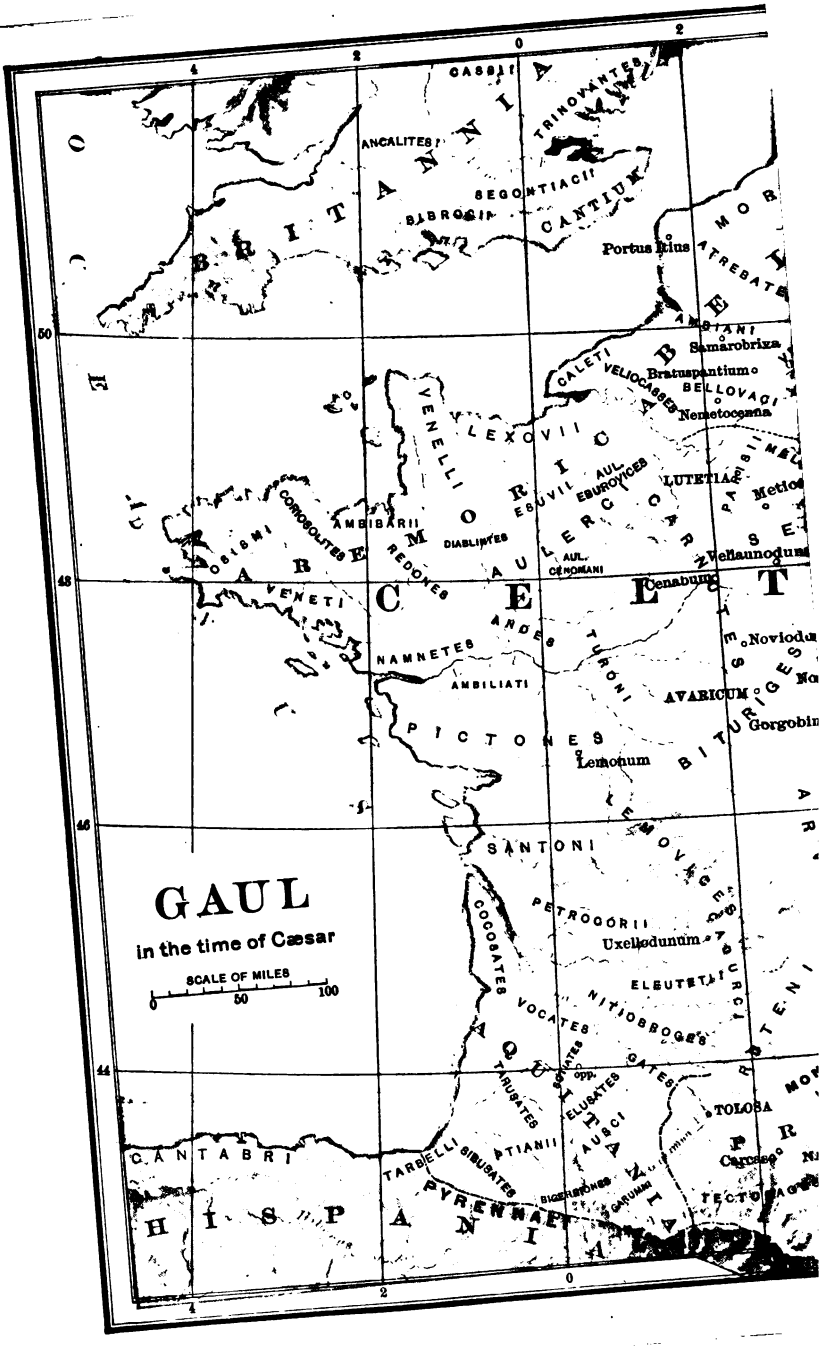
THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THREE CONJUGATIONS.

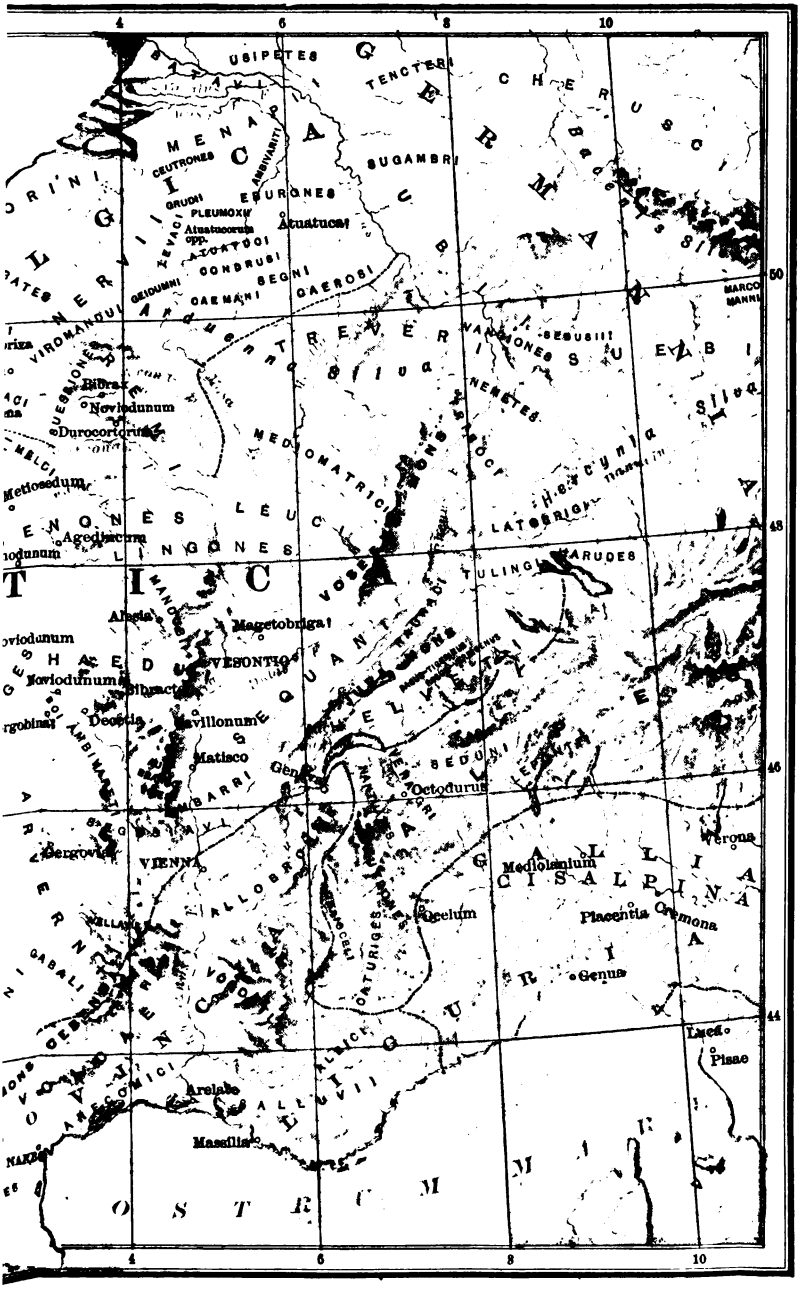
126. *The nations of Gaul and their characteristics.*

(In reading this description of Gaul, the student should verify on the map the several divisions and boundaries. Remember that Caesar is writing a history, which will be unintelligible without a geographical foundation.)

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Quote verbatim the case rules applying to the words underscored in the above passage and show how these rules apply.


GAUL
in the time of Cæsar
SCALE OF MILES
0 50 100
BRITANNIA
OCEANUS BRITANNICUS
ANCALITES
BIBROCI
SEGONTIACI
CANTIUM
TRINOVANTES
Portus Itius
ATREBATES
AMBIANI
Samarobriva
CALETI
VELIOCASSES
Bratuspantium
BELLOVACI
Nemetocenna
VENELLI
LEXOVII
AULERCI EBUROVICES
LUTETIA
Metio
CORIOSOLITES
AMBIBARII
ESUVII
DIABLINTES
AUL. CENOMANI
Vellaunodun
Cenabum
ARMORICA
CELTICA
VENETI
REDONES
ANDES
TURONI
NAMNETES
AMBILIATI
Noviodu
AVARICUM
Gorgobin
PICTONES
Lemonum
BITURIGES
SANTONI
PETROCORII
Uxellodunum
COCOSATES
VOCATES
ELEUTETI
NITIOBROGES
AQUITANIA
SOTIATES
TARUSATES
ELUSATES
GATES
TOLOSA
CANTABRI
TARBELLI
SIBUSATES
PYRENNAEI MONTES
HISPANIA
TECTOSAGES


4
6
8
10
50
48
46
44
USIPETES
TENCTERI
CHERUSCI
SUGAMBRI
CHATTI
CATTI
CHERUSCI
CEUTRONES
GRUDII
LEVACI
PLEUMOXII
Atuatuca
ATUATUCI
CONDRUSI
SEGNI
EBURONES
CAEROESI
CAEMANI
GERMANIA
GALLIA
BELGICA
Silva Arduenna
Silva Hercynia
Noviodunum
Durocortorum
Metiosedum
Agedincum
LINGONES
LATOBRIGI
HELVETII
HELVETII
Aventicum
Genua
Octodurus
Vienna
Vienna
Alesia
Magetobriga
VESONTIO
Noviodunum
Bibracte
Decetia
Avaricum
Matisco
Cenabum
BARRI
SEQUANI
SEGUSIANI
Mediolanium
CISALPINA
Ocelum
Placentia
Cremona
Verona
Genua
Luca
Pisae
Arelate
Massilia
MARE
OSTRUM

127. PARADIGMS.

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE OF **Līberō**.

PERFECT STEM : **līberāv-**.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. **līberāveram**, I had liberated.	**līberāverāmus**, we had liberated.
2. **līberāverās**, you had liberated.	**līberāverātis**, you had liberated.
3. **līberāverat**, he had liberated.	**līberāverant**, they had liberated.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

1. **līberāverō**, I shall have liberated.	**līberāverimus**, we shall have liberated.
2. **līberāveris**, you will have liberated.	**līberāveritis**, you will have liberated.
3. **līberāverit**, he will have liberated.	**līberāverint**, they will have liberated.

Observe : —

(1) that the pluperfect tense is formed by adding to the perfect stem the various forms of the imperfect of the verb **sum**.

(2) that the future perfect tense is formed by adding to the perfect stem the various forms of the future of the verb **sum** with the exception of the third plural, where **erunt** is changed to **erint**.

128. TABLE OF THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE SECOND AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS.

PERFECT STEMS.	SINGULAR TENSE ENDINGS.	PLURAL TENSE ENDINGS.
	PLUPERFECT.	
mōv- **dīvīs-** **cēp-**	**-eram** **-erās** **-erat**	**-erāmus** **-erātis** **-erant**
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
mōv- **dīvīs-** **cēp-**	**-erō** **-eris** **-erit**	**-erimus** **-eritis** **-erint**

By adding the above tense endings to **fu-**, the perfect stem of the verb **sum**, we obtain the pluperfect and future perfect of this verb. In precisely the same way are formed the same tenses of all verbs.

129. VOCABULARY.

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, f., *conspiracy, plot.*

cupiditās, cupiditātis, f., *ambition, desire.*

accūsō, accūsāre, accūsāvī, accūsātus, *accuse, blame.*
contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, *bound, hem in.*
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *make, do, form.*
indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, *lead in* or *on, induce, influence.*
occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātus, *seize.*
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus, *keep away, prevent.*
vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus, *lay waste, destroy, devastate.*

130. WRITTEN WORK.

Conjugate fully the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of **sum**, **vāstō**, **indūcō**, and **faciō**, underscoring the perfect stems of each form, and writing the meaning of the third plural of each tense.

131. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Accūsāvimus, accūsāverimus, accūsāverāmus. (2) Prohibuerās, prohibueris; fuistī. (3) Fēcērunt, fēcerint, fēcerant; fuerant. (4) Indūcuntur, indūxeris, indūxerant; fuerit. (5) Vāstās, vāstāveris, vāstāverant; fuerant. (6) Erās, eris, erunt, fuērunt, fuerint. (7) Bella gessistī et superāris. (8) Fuga eōrum Gallōrum Belgās mōvit. (9) Cupiditās rēgnī eum Helvētium indūxit. (10) Coniūrātiō eius nōbilissimī Helvētī hōs omnēs incitāverat.

II. (1) They seize, they have seized, they had seized, they will have seized. (2) You lay waste, you laid waste, you had laid waste, you will have laid waste. (3) We hem in, we are hemmed in, we shall have hemmed in, we had hemmed in. (4) You (sing.) are being led, you have led, you had led, you will have led. (5) He has made, he makes, he had made, he will have made. (6) I am kept away, I have kept away, I had kept away, I shall have kept away. (7) The Germans had seized many towns of the Belgians, who were across the river Rhine. (8) The nobility of the Helvetians formed a conspiracy. (9) A

desire of royal power had influenced the noblest of the Helvetians. (10) We threw our missiles down from a great mountain.

LESSON XX.

THE IMPERFECT, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.—ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

132. *Boundaries of these nations.*

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

State the reasons for the cases of all words underscored in the above passage, quoting rules whenever possible.

133. Those forms of the English verb which denote the action as continuous or progressive in past time, as, *I was liberating*, are represented in Latin by the imperfect tense.

134. PARADIGMS.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE VERB **Līberō**.

PRESENT STEM: **līberā-**.

ACTIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. **līberābam**, I was liberating, I liberated.	**līberābāmus**, we were liberating, etc.
2. **līberābās**, you were liberating, etc.	**līberābātis**, you were liberating, etc.
3. **līberābat**, he was liberating, etc.	**līberābant**, they were liberating, etc.

PASSIVE VOICE.

1. **līberābar**, I was being liberated, I was liberated.	**līberābāmur**, we were being liberated, etc.
2. **līberābāris**, you were being liberated, etc.	**līberābāminī**, you were being liberated, etc.
3. **līberābātur**, he was being liberated, etc.	**līberābantur**, they were being liberated, etc.

135. TABLE OF THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.

PRESENT STEMS.	TENSE SIGN.	PERSONAL ENDINGS.	
	ACTIVE.	SING.	PLU.
occupā- movē- prohibē-	-bā̆-	-m -s -t	-mus -tis -nt
	PASSIVE.		
occupā- monē- prohibē	-bā̆-	-r -ris -tur	-mur -minī -ntur

Observe: —

(1) that the imperfect tense of these conjugations is formed by adding to the present stem the sign of the imperfect tense, **-bā**, and the personal endings, both active and passive.

(2) that the tense sign, **-bā**, naturally long is shortened before final **-m**, **-r**, **-t**, and before **-nt**.

136. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Nōbilēs virtūte appellantur. — *They are called noble because of their bravery.* (2) Cupiditāte rēgnī id fēcit. — *He did this on account of his desire for royal power.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 the ablative **virtūte** expresses the cause or reason why they are called noble.

(2) That in sentence 2 the phrase **cupiditāte rēgnī** expresses the reason why he did this. This ablative is called the Ablative of Cause and answers the question "Why?"

137. *RULE. — Cause is expressed by the ablative (usually without a preposition).*

138. VOCABULARY.

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., *state.*
cōpia, -ae, f., *plenty*, in sing.; *forces*, in plu.
Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgis, m., *Orgetorix*, a leader of the Swiss.
dīves, m., f., n. (dīvitis, genitive), *rich;* superlative dītissimus, -a, -um, *richest.*
quā rē, *on account of what thing, why?*
apud, prep. governing acc., *among, with.*

armō, armāre, armāvī, armātus, *arm, equip.*
effēminō, effēmināre, effēmināvī, effēminātus, *weaken.*
importō, importāre, importāvī, importātus, *import, carry in.*
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus, *persuade* (followed by dative translated as direct object).
spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātus, *look, face.*

139. WRITTEN WORK.

Conjugate with meanings **armō** and **contineō** in the imperfect, active and passive, also **persuādeō** in the perfect active.

140. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Effēminant, effēminantur, effēminābantur. (2) Armat, armābat, armātur, armābātur. (3) Spectātis, spectābātis, spectāvistis, spectāverātis, spectāveritis. (4) Persuādet, persuādēbat, persuāsērunt, persuādēbant. (5) Prohibēbant, prohibuērunt, prohibēbāmus, prohibēbāmur. (6) Orgetorīx rēgnī cupiditāte indūcitur. (7) Eā coniūrātiōne nōbilitātis Orgetorīx Helvētiīs persuāserat. (8) Quā rē Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem fēcit?

II. (1) We are armed, we were armed, you had armed, you were arming. (2) They were importing, they were being imported, we were importing, we have imported. (3) I was persuading; you (sing.) were facing; he was keeping away; we were accusing; you were moving; they were liberating. (4) On ac-

count of his bravery, he persuaded the Swiss. (5) On account of this conspiracy, the consuls waged these wars. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 8, part I.]

141. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Orgetorīx fuit nōbilis et dīves. Apud Helvētiōs fuit longē nōbilissimus et dītissimus. Cum (when) Marcus Messāla et Marcus Pīsō erant cōnsulēs, Orgetorīx cupiditāte rēgnī indūcēbātur. Marcō Messālā et Marcō Pīsōne cōnsulibus,[1] inductus[2] cupiditāte rēgnī, Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. Cīvitātī Helvētiōrum persuāsit ut (that) dē suīs fīnibus exīrent (they should emigrate). Helvētiīs persuāsit ut cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.

[1] **Marcō Messālā . . . cōnsulibus**, *M. Messāla*, etc., *being consuls*, a construction known as the ablative absolute, best translated by the cum clause in the previous sentence.

[2] **inductus**, a perf. pass. participle. The perfect passive participle, the fourth principal part of a transitive verb, is declined exactly like the adjective **lātus, -a, -um**, agreeing in G. N. C. with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

SECOND REVIEW.

I. List in a column and index as taught in the First Review the Latin nouns from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: copious, counsel, flume, imperial, initial, mountainous, solar. Add to this list in the index the following: cīvitās, proelium, tēlum.

II. List in a column and compare as in **§ 104** the Latin adjectives from which the following English words are derived: fortitude, latitude, longitude, nobility.

III. List in a column the Latin verbs from which the following English nouns are wholly or partly derived and give the conjugation, principal parts, and meaning of each, distinguishing as in **§ 112** the various stems of each: absence, accusation, appellation, armament, capture, content, contention, (con)tingency,* (de)vastation,

*Only the first two principal parts are required of verbs found from nouns marked with an asterisk.

duct, (e)jection, fact, habit, incitement, inducement, (in)spection, obtaining, occupation, persuasion, prohibition, (in)superable, verge.* Add to this list the verb **gerō**.

IV. List the following English adverbs in a column, placing opposite each in a second column their Latin equivalents: almost, continually, even, far, least, not, often.

V. Decline consecutively the list of ten nouns formed in I., by giving the nominative singular of the first noun, the genitive singular of the second, etc., the nominative plural of the sixth, the genitive plural of the seventh, etc., and finally the ablative plural of the tenth noun, thus giving one form of each noun, and place the demonstrative **hīc** in G. N. C. agreement with each form.† In a second column decline consecutively the same list, starting with the nominative singular of the fourth and ending with the ablative plural of the third, placing the demonstrative **is** in G. N. C. agreement with each form. Continue the same exercise, starting with the sixth noun and placing the relative **quī** in G. N. C. agreement with each form.

VI. Conjugate in full in the active voice the present indicative of **iaciō**, imperfect of **habeō**, future of **absum**, perfect of **persuādeō**, pluperfect of **faciō**, future perfect of **indūcō**. In the passive voice present indicative of **obtineō**, imperfect of **obtineō**.

* Only two principal parts are required.

† A model of this scheme will be found in the Appendix, § 30.

LESSON XXI.

IMPERFECT ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.—IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

142. *A powerful noble plots to make himself king of the Swiss.*

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.

143. Memorize the imperfect indicative, active and passive, of **dīvidō**, App. § **21**, noting that **ĕ** of the present stem, **dīvide-**, is lengthened before **-bā**, the tense sign of the imperfect.

144. PARADIGM.

DECLENSION OF **Tōtus**, *whole*, AN IRREGULAR ADJECTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	M.	F.	N.	
Nominative	tōtus	tōta	tōtum	The plural of this adjective is declined like that of the adjective **lātus**, § **43**.
Genitive	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius	
Dative	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	
Accusative	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	
Ablative	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	

Observe: —

(1) that the singular of **tōtus** is declined exactly like **lātus** in all cases except the genitive and dative.

(2) that the genitive singular ends in **-ius** and the dative singular in **-ī** in all genders like the same cases of **ille**.

145. The following nine adjectives have the genitive in **-ius** and the dative in **-ī**:

alius, alia, aliud, *another.*
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, *no.*
sōlus, sōla, sōlum, *alone.*
tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole, entire.*
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, *any.*
ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one.*
alter, altera, alterum,[1] *the other, the second.*
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither.*
uter, utra, utrum, *which* (of two).

[1] **Alter** usually has short **-ius** in the genitive singular, **alterius**.

146. VOCABULARY.

locus, -ī, m., *place;* plu. (neuter), loca, locōrum.
natūra, -ae, f., *nature, character.*
perfacilis, -e, adj., *very easy.*
facile, adv., from facilis, *easily;* comparative degree, facilius.
undique, adv., *on all sides, from all sides.*
cum, conj., with subj., *since.*
quod, conj., *because*, with indicative and subjunctive.

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *say, speak, appoint.*

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *get control of.* (This verb governs the ablative translated as direct object. Potior is passive in form, but active in meaning. Such verbs are called deponents.)

praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestātus, *stand before, surpass.* (Like **persuādeō** this verb governs a dative translated as a direct object.)

147. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate with meanings the imperfect indicative active and passive of **dūcō** and the perfect indicative active of **dīcō**.

(2) Decline in singular and plural **alius**; also **alter** and **locus** in G. N. C. agreement.

148. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Incolēbat, incolēbātur; gerēbat, gerēbātur; dūcēbat, dūcēbātur; dīcēbat, dīcēbātur. (2) Gerēbāmus; incolēbāmus; dūcēbāmus, dūcēbāmur; dīcēbāmus, dīcēbāmur; dīvidēbāmus, dīvidēbāmur. (3) Dīcēbant, dīcēbāris; dūcēbar, dūcēbāminī; gerēbātis; dīvidēbāminī. (4) Helvētiī indūcēbantur; flūmina vergēbant; bella gerēbantur; aliōs praecēdēbātis. (5) Aliī cōnsulēs cupiditāte rēgnī indūcēbantur. (6) Orgetorīx sōlus omnēs nōbilissimōs et dītissimōs virtūte praecēdēbat. (7) Quod undique flūminibus lātissimīs continēbāmur, eōs facilius prohibēbāmus. (8) Aliud flūmen Rhēnus appellābātur.

II. (1) We were leading, we were being led; we were dividing, we were being divided; we were inhabiting. (2) You were dividing, you were being divided. You (sing.) were leading, you (sing.) were being led; you were hastening. (3) We were carrying on war; they were touching upon another river; you were surpassing the whole state. (4) The rivers of the whole of Gaul are very wide and deep. (5) The noblest Helvetians were led by Orgetorix, the richest (man) of the whole state.

149. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Imperium tōtīus Galliae erat perfacile. Tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī erat perfacile. Id erat perfacile cum (since) Helvētiī vir-

tūte omnibus praestārent.[1] Orgetorīx dīxit id esse perfacile cum Helvētiī virtūte omnibus praestārent.[1] Orgetorīx dīxit potīrī imperiō tōtīus Galliae esse perfacile cum Helvētiī virtūte omnibus praestārent. Helvētiī undique locī natūrā continentur. Hōc[2] id[3] eīs facilius persuāsit, quod Helvētiī undique locī natūrā continentur.

[1] **praestārent**, imperfect subjunctive; translate here as imperfect indicative.
[2] An ablative of cause, translated *on this account, for this reason.*
[3] **Id** is the direct object of **persuāsit**. Since the indirect object, **eīs**, is translated after this verb as direct object, supply "to do" before id.

LESSON XXII.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

150. *The bravery and restlessness of the Swiss favor the plans of Orgetorix.*

Dīxit perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī natūrā Helvētiī continentur.

151. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in **-us** and **-u**. Those ending in **-us** are usually masculine; those in **-u** are always neuter.

152. PARADIGMS.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS: STEMS ENDING IN **U**.

passus, m., *pace*.
STEM: **passu-**.
BASE: **pass-**.

cornū, n., *horn, wing* (of an army).
STEM: **cornu-**.
BASE: **corn-**.

	SINGULAR.		CASE ENDINGS. M.	N.
Nominative	passus	cornū	-us	-ū
Genitive	passūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
Dative	passuī	cornū	-uī	-ū
Accusative	passum	cornū	-um	-ū
Ablative	passū	cornū	-ū	-ū

	Plural.		Case Endings.	
			M.	N.
Nominative	passūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Genitive	passuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
Dative	passibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
Accusative	passūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Ablative	passibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

Observe: —

That the quantity of the **-u** in **passus** serves to distinguish cases otherwise alike in form.

Lacus, m., *lake*, is declined exactly like **passus** with the exception of the dative and ablative plural, which end in **-ubus** instead of **-ibus**.

153. VOCABULARY.

ager, agrī, m., *field*, *territory* (declined like the masculine of the adjective **noster** in § 56).

cornū, cornūs, n., *horn*, *wing* (of an army).

exercitus, -ūs, m., *trained army*.

Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura mountains, a range extending from the Rhone to the Rhine.

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake*.

Lemannus, -ī, m., the ancient name for Lake Geneva.

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting*.

passus, -ūs, m., *pace* (the distance covered in two steps, about five feet).

alter, **-a**, **-um**, *the other*, the second of a series.

altus, **-a**, **-um**, *high*, *deep*.

tōtus, **-a**, **-um**, *whole*, *entire*.

154. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline in full **lacus**, **exercitus**; **occāsus** in sing. only.

(2) Decline **ager**; also **altera pars**.

(3) Compare with meanings **altus** (**alt-**).

155. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

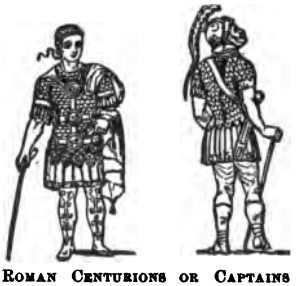
I. (1) Passū, passuum; lacubus; cornua; passibus; lacuī. (2) Inter lacūs et montēs sunt lātissima flūmina. (3) Ūnā ex parte (on one side) nostrī fīnēs ad īnferiōrem partem Rhēnī pertinēbant. (4) Tertiā ex parte nostra prōvincia ab Helvētiīs lacū Lemannō dīviditur. (5) Cōnsulēs ad agrōs Helvētiōs[1] cum ūnō cornū exercitūs contendēbant. (6) Omnēs aliōs virtūte facile

praecēdēbāmus quod cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum exercitū Germānōrum contendēbāmus. (7) Nōbilissimī erāmus, quod īnstitūtīs et lēgibus differēbāmus. (8) Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem fēcit et tōtī nōbilitātī persuāsit. (9) Tōtum exercitum ex agrīs dūxerat et imperium alterius partis Galliae occupābat. (10) Lacus Lemannus altissimus agrum Helvētium[1] ā nostrā prōvinciā dīvidēbat.

II. (1) Of many paces; of one lake; in the other lakes; by the wings of the other army. (2) On one side our fields are separated from the Germans by the highest mountains. (3) Those places were hemmed in by other rivers. (4) One Gaul was leading a wing of the army, a second held the control of the fields, a third was hastening to the lake. (5) This river, which was called the Rhine, was very far away from our fields. (6) Many paces were between our armies and the army of the whole of Gaul. (7) We were separated from these traders by wider rivers and deeper lakes.

156. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISES.

Ūnā ex parte fīnēs Helvētiōrum flūmine Rhēnō continentur. Rhēnus est flūmen altissimum et lātissimum, quod flūmen agrum Helvētium[1] ā Germānīs dīvidit. Eī fīnēs alterā ex parte monte Iūrā continentur. Is mōns altissimus est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs. Tertiā ex parte fīnēs Helvētiōrum lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō continentur. Id flūmen nostram prōvinciam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.



ROMAN CENTURIONS OR CAPTAINS CARRYING THEIR STAFF OF OFFICE.

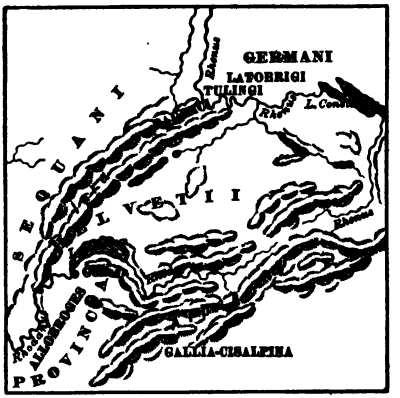
[1] This word, usually used substantively, is here an adjective.

LESSON XXIII.

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.

157. *The ancient Swiss were hemmed in by mountains and rivers.*

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.



ANCIENT SWITZERLAND.

158. PARADIGMS.

FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE VERB **līberō**.

PRESENT STEM: **līberā-**.

ACTIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. **līberābō**, I shall liberate.	**līberābimus**, we shall liberate.
2. **līberābis**, you will liberate.	**līberābitis**, you will liberate.
3. **līberābit**, he will liberate.	**līberābunt**, they will liberate.

PASSIVE VOICE.

1. **līberābor**, I shall be liberated.	**līberābimur**, we shall be liberated.
2. **līberāberis**, you will be liberated.	**līberābiminī**, you will be liberated.
3. **līberābitur**, he will be liberated.	**līberābuntur**, they will be liberated.

Observe: —

That the future tense of this verb is formed by adding to the present stem the sign of the future tense -**bi**, and the personal

endings, both active and passive. In the first singular active, the **i** of the **-bi** is lost before **ō**, while in the third plural, active and passive, the **i** becomes **u**. In the second singular passive, the **i** becomes **e**.

All verbs of the First and Second Conjugations form their futures in the same way, as may be seen by the following: present **occupō**, future **occupābō**, present **moveō**, future **movēbō**.

159. VOCABULARY.

dolor, dolōris, m., *grief.*
homō, hominis, m. or f., *man, human being.*
iūmentum, -ī, n., *beast of burden.*
cupidus, **-a**, **-um**, *fond, desirous, eager for* (followed by genitive).
finitimus, -a, -um, *near, neighboring;* when used substantively, *neighbor.*
lātē, adv., from lātus, *widely.*
minus, adv., in comparative degree, *less.*

afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectus, *affect, afflict.*
bellō, 1,[1] *wage war*, bellandī, gen. of what is known as the gerund, translated, *of warring.*
fīō, fierī, factus sum (used as the passive of **faciō**), *be made, become, happen.*
inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus, *wage* (*war*) *upon;* bellum finitimīs inferre, *wage war upon neighbors.*
possum, posse, potuī, *be able;* possent, imperfect subjunctive.
vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum (deponent verb), *wander about, roam.*

160. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate with meanings **armō**, **moveō**, and **contineō** in the future indicative, active and passive.

(2) Compare **cupidus** (**cupid-**).

161. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Appellābit, appellābitur; habēbit, habēbitur; prohibēbit, prohibēbitur. (2) Superābimus, superābimur; prohibēbimus, prohibēbimur; accūsābimus, accūsābimur. (3) Obtinēbunt, obtinēbuntur; dabunt, dabuntur; incitābunt, incitābuntur.

[1] A numeral to the right of a verb indicates that its principal parts are regular; that is, like those of the model verb of the conjugation indicated.

(4) Effēminābitis; importābuntur; commeābis; prohibēberis; habēbiminī. (5) Haec iūmenta māgna cornua habēbant et lātē vagābantur. (6) Māgnō dolōre afficiēbāmur quod montibus et flūminibus ā Gallīs dīvidēbāmur. (7) Fortissimī Gallōrum suīs fīnibus (see § **68**), Germānōs cotīdiānīs proeliīs prohibēbunt. (8) Germānī agrōs Gallōrum obtinēbunt quod eīs virtūte praestābunt. (9) Haec oppida quae sunt inter montēs et lacūs, multīs bellīs vāstābuntur. (10) In nostrīs fīnibus ad vīcōs Gallōrum vagābimur.

II. (1) He will move, he will be moved; he will conquer, he will be conquered; he will hold, he will be held. (2) We shall call, we shall be called; we shall give, we shall be given; we shall move, we shall be moved. (3) They will accuse, they will be accused; they will prevent, they will be prevented; they will free, they will be freed. (4) You will wander; we shall be weakened; I shall hold; they will resort. (5) The Gauls will resort with all their forces to these lakes and rivers.

162. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Hīs rēbus (abl. of cause, on account of these facts) minus lātē vagābantur. Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur (imperf. subj., trans. as if vagābantur). Fīēbat ut bellum fīnitimīs minus facile īnferre possent (trans. last word as if imp. ind.). Quā ex parte (abl. of cause, trans. *on this account*) māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur.

LESSON XXIV.

FUTURE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION. — THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE.

163. *The Swiss long for opportunities of war and conquest.*

Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur.

164. PARADIGM.

FUTURE INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE VERB **Dīvidō**.

PRESENT STEM: **dīvide-**.

ACTIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. **dīvidam**, I shall divide.	**dīvidēmus**, we shall divide.
2. **dīvidēs**, you will divide.	**dīvidētis**, you will divide.
3. **dīvidet**, he will divide.	**dīvident**, they will divide.

PASSIVE VOICE.

1. **dīvidar**, I shall be divided.	**dīvidēmur**, we shall be divided.
2. **dīvidēris**, you will be divided.	**dīvidēminī**, you will be divided.
3. **dīvidētur**, he will be divided.	**dīvidentur**, they will be divided.

Observe: —

(1) that in the future of the Third Conjugation the final **e** of the stem is lengthened, and to this modified form are added the personal endings.

(2) that this final **e** of the stem is lost in the first singular and is short before final **-t** and before **-nt**.

165. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) **Ūnam** partem Galliae Belgae incolunt. — *The Belgians inhabit one part of Gaul.* (2) Fīnēs multa mīlia passuum patēbant. — *The territories extended many thousands of paces;* i.e. *many miles.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 **ūnam partem** denotes a part, while the genitive **Galliae** denotes the whole to which the part belongs.

(2) that the same will be seen to be true of **mīlia** and **passuum** in sentence 2. This construction is known as the Genitive of the Whole.

166. *RULE. — The whole, depending upon a word denoting a part, is expressed by the genitive.*

167. VOCABULARY.

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f., *bravery*.

glōria, -ae, f., *glory*; glōria bellī atque fortitūdinis, *reputation for bravery in war*.

lātitūdō, lātitūdinis, f., *width*.

longitūdō, longitūdinis, f., *length*.

mīlle, n., *thousand*. In singular indeclinable and usually an adjective. The plural, **mīlia**, **mīlium**, a noun, is declined like the neuter plural of **omnis**, § 61.

multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., *multitude, a large number*; multitūdō hominum, *population*.

sē, reflexive pronoun, acc. or abl. case, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*, according to the meaning of the subject.

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.

autem, conj., *moreover, however*.

prō, prep. governing abl. case, *for, in view of*.

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum (deponent verb), *think*.

pateō, patēre, patuī, —, *extend*.

168. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate with meanings the future indicative, active and passive, of **dūcō** and the future indicative active of **gerō**.

(2) Put **omnis** in agreement with **mīlle** in the plural and decline them together.

(3) Compare **angustus** (**angust-**) showing all gender endings.

(4) Decline **lātitūdō** in the singular only.

169. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Dūcēmus, dūcēmur; dīvidēmus, dīvidēmur; incolet, incolētur. (2) Dīvidet, dīvidētur; bellum geret, bellum gerētur; dūcet, dūcētur. (3) Prohibēbiminī; indūcēminī, indūcētis; dīcent, dīcēmur. (4) Agrī eius Helvētī tria mīlia passuum patēbant. (5) Haec flūmina Germānōs ā fīnibus Gallōrum dīvidēbant. (6) Cum tribus mīlibus Germānōrum bellum gerēmus. (7) Helvētiī multa mīlia passuum ad fīnēs Gallōrum vagābantur. (8) Haec oppida Gallōrum omnibus nostrīs cōpiīs occupābimus. (9) Omnēs fīnitimōs glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis praecēdēmus. (10) Hī hominēs erant bellandī cupidī et ad nostram prōvinciam vagābantur.

II. (1) You will lead, you will be led; you will divide, you will be divided; you will inhabit; you will wage. (2) We shall influence, we shall be influenced; we shall say; we shall prevent, we shall be prevented. (3) He will lead, he will be led; it will be inhabited; he will hasten; it will be waged. (4) The consuls with a large part of their forces will hasten into the territories of the Swiss. (5) In the number of large towns, the Gauls surpassed the Swiss. (6) The Swiss will lead a great number of troops into the territories of their neighbors and will fight (in) many battles.

170. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Helvētiī angustōs fīnēs habēbant. Helvētiī arbitrābantur sē habēre angustōs fīnēs. Eī fīnēs erant angustī prō multitūdine hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis. Fīnēs Helvētiōrum multa mīlia passuum in lātitūdinem et longitūdinem patēbant.

LESSON XXV.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IO*. — ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

171. *Their bravery and population entitle them to larger territories.*

Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant. [Cap. II. Fīnis.]

172. The imperfect and future of **capiō** differ from the same tenses of other verbs of the Third Conjugation only in the insertion of **i** before **e** of the present stem.

Review the present and memorize the imperfect and future of **capiō**, App., § **22**.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

173. (1) Rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat. — *He had held the royal power for many years.* (2) Agrī tria mīlia passuum patēbant. — *The fields extended three miles.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 the accusative **multōs annōs** denotes the time during which he had held the royal power.

(2) that in sentence 2 the accusative **mīlia** denotes the extent of space over which the fields extended. This accusative, known as the Accusative of Extent, answers the question "How far?" "How long?"

174. *RULE. — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative without a preposition.*

175. VOCABULARY.

amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendship, alliance.*
annus, -ī, m., *year.*
auctōritās, auctōritātis, f., *authority, influence.*
frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain;* in plu., *standing grain.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
sēmentis, sēmentis, f., *planting, sowing.*
māximus, -a, -um, *greatest*, superlative of adj. māgnus.
quot, interrogative, *how many?*

iter, itineris, n. *road, march, route;* iter facere, *to march.*
addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, influence.*
coëmō, coëmere, coēmī, coēmptus, *buy up, purchase.*
comparō, 1, *prepare.*
cōnfirmō, 1, *confirm, establish.*
cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *decide.*
permoveō, 2, *move thoroughly, arouse, alarm.*
suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, *be available, hold out.*

176. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate with meanings **afficiō**, **iaciō**, and **dīcō** in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

(2) Decline **iter** and **proximus** in agreement.

177. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Iacis, iaceris; afficis, afficeris; capiēbās, capiēbāris. (2) Afficiunt, afficiuntur; iaciēbat, iaciēbātur; capient, capientur. (3) Iaceris, iaciēris, iaciēbāris; capiētis, capiēbant. (4) Afficimus, afficiēmus; iaciēbantur, iaciuntur, iacientur, iaciētis. (5) Auctōritāte Orgetorīgis adductī, bellum multōs annōs gerēbāmus. (6) Agrī, quī flūmine Rhēnō continēbantur, multa mīlia passuum patēbant. (7) Helvētiī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur et ad fīnēs Gallōrum vagābantur. (8) Quot mīlia passuum fīnēs Helvētiōrum patēbant?

II. (1) They hurl, they are hurled, they will be hurled; they will take, they were being taken. (2) You were being affected, you will be affected; you will be alarmed; you will be hurled. (3) We were making, we shall make; we shall establish, we shall be established; we shall be affected. (4) We shall have narrow territories, which will extend many miles in (in with acc.) length. (5) They will make a march three miles with all their forces. (6) Because of their bravery the Helvetians waged war for many years. (7) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 8, part I.]

178. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Hīs rēbus (by these things) Helvētiī addūcēbantur. Auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permovēbantur. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, Helvētiī cōnstituērunt ea comparāre. Ea ad proficīscendum (to starting out) pertinēbant. Cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent (imp. subj., transl. as if pertinēbant) comparāre. Cōnstituērunt iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum (transl. greatest possible) numerum coëmere. Cōnstituērunt quoque sēmentēs quam māximās facere ut (that) in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret (imp. subj., transl. might be available). Cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmābant. Ea omnia Helvētiī cōnstituērunt facere.

LESSON XXVI.

FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS. — DECLENSION OF REFLEXIVE AND INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

179. *The Swiss make elaborate preparations for their great trek.*

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre.

Ancient Ploughboy.

180. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine except **diēs**, which is usually masculine, though often feminine in the singular.

181. PARADIGM.

Fifth Declension of Nouns.

	diēs, m., f., *day.*		**rēs**, f., *thing.*			
	Stem : **die-**.		Stem : **re-**.			
	Base : **di-**.		Base : **r-**.			
					Case Endings.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.	Sing.	Plu.
Nominative	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
Genitive	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	-ēī	-ērum
Dative	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ēī	-ēbus
Accusative	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
Ablative	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

Observe: —

That in **diēs** e is long except in the accusative singular, although according to the general law of quantity one would expect to find a short vowel before another vowel.

Diēs and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension which are fully declined in the plural.

182. **Suī** is a reflexive pronoun, reflecting back to the subject for its meaning, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves.* Memorize its declension in the App., § **15**. It will be found to have no nominative. Why?

183. **Ipse, -a, -um** is an intensive pronoun, ordinarily an appositive, *himself, herself, itself.* Memorize its declension in the App., § **16**.

184. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Sē amīcōs Belgārum appellant. — *They call themselves friends of the Belgians.* (2) Helvētiī ipsī eōs suīs fīnibus prohibent. — *The Helvetians themselves keep them away from their (the Helvetians') territories.* (3) In eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. — *They wage war in the territories of these* (i.e. *their enemies*). (4) Cōpiās sēcum dūxit. — *He led his forces with him.* (5) Suās cōpiās cum eō mīsērunt. — *They sent their forces with him.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 *themselves* is a reflexive pronoun referring to the subject of the verb and is translated by **sē**, while in sentence 2 *themselves* is in apposition with *Helvetians*, intensifies its meaning, and is translated by **ipsī**.

(2) that in sentence 4 *him* refers to the subject *he* and is translated by **sē**, while in sentence 5 *him* does not refer to the subject and is translated by **eō**, the ablative of **is**.

(3) that in sentence 4 the preposition **cum** becomes enclitic with **sē**.

(4) that in sentence 2 *their* denotes the same person as the subject and is translated by the possessive adjective **suus, -a, -um**, while in sentence 3 *their* does not refer to the subject and is translated by **eōrum**, the genitive plural of **is, ea, id**.

(5) that in sentence 4 the possessive is omitted because not required for clearness or emphasis.

SUMMARY.

A third personal pronoun is translated by the reflexive when referring to the subject; otherwise by a demonstrative. Similarly, possession in the third person is translated by **suus, -a, -um,** when referring to the subject, otherwise by the genitive, singular or plural, of a demonstrative. When merely intensive and not reflexive, the compound personal pronouns, *himself*, etc. are translated by **ipse, -a, -um.**

185. VOCABULARY.

biennium, -ī, n., *a period of two years.*
diēs, diēī, m., *day.*
lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, f., *embassy, mission.*
profectiō, profectiōnis, f., *departure.*
rēs, reī, f., *thing.*
ipse, -a, -um, intensive pronoun, *himself, herself, itself.*
suī, genitive of the reflexive pronoun, meaning *of himself, themselves,* etc., according to the subject.
satis, adv., *enough.*

cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, *accomplish, complete, exhaust.*
dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus, *choose, select.*
suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus (sub, *under;* capiō, *take*), *undertake;* **sibi suscipere,** *to take upon one's self.*

186. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write out the imperfect and future indicative, active and passive, of **dēligō** and **suscipiō.**

(2) Decline **annus** and **lēgātiō.**

187. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Belgae ipsī sē et eōs accūsant. (2) Orgetorīx ipse hās rēs fēcit; Orgetorīx hās rēs ipsās fēcit. (3) Gallī suās cōpiās in eōrum fīnēs multōs diēs dūcent. (4) Mercātōrēs ipsī eōs fortēs appellant. (5) Helvētiī eās rēs sibi suscēpērunt. (6) Ipsī sua oppida occupant; ipsī eōrum oppida occupant. (7) Gallī ipsī lēgibus et īnstitūtīs inter sē differunt. (8) Arbitrābantur sē[1] angustōs fīnēs habēre. (9) Sunt inter eōs montēs et flūmina. (10) Suās cōpiās sēcum dūxērunt.

[1] Masculine plural accusative. Accusative because subject of the infinitive **habēre.** Why masculine plural?

II. (1) The Belgians are liberating themselves. (2) The Belgians themselves liberated them. (3) The town itself was near to them. (4) Orgetorix arouses him. (5) Orgetorix arouses himself. (6) Orgetorix himself arouses the Gauls. (7) They will complete these things for themselves. (8) They will march with him into his territories. (9) He will give his territories to them.

188. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISES.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās (for completing these things) biennium est satis. Biennium esse sibi satis dūxērunt.[1] In (for) tertium annum profectiō lēge cōnfīrmātur. Lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs Orgetorīx sibi suscēpit.

[1] With the accusative and infinitive dūcō means, *consider*.

THIRD REVIEW.

I. List in a column with meanings the Latin nouns from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: authoritative, locality, itinerary, lake, pacify, agrarian, real, human, pace, multitudinous, natural, million, latitude, legation, annual. Add to this list the Latin nouns for friendship, grain, departure.

II. List in a column and index as in the First Review the Latin adjectives meaning: easy, neighboring, great, desirous, comparing the last named.

III. List in a column and give the principal parts and meanings of each Latin verb from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: vagrant, potent, patent, adduce, constitution, confirmation, confection, delegation. Add to this list the Latin verbs meaning: prepare, alarm, get possession, undertake.

IV. Write in a column the following English words, placing opposite each its Latin equivalent: from all sides, moreover, than, enough.

V. Decline consecutively as in the Second Review the first ten nouns in I., starting (*a*) with the third noun and putting **tōtus** in G. N. C. agreement with each form; (*b*) with the sixth noun, putting **alius** in agreement with each form; (*c*) with the eighth, putting **alter** in agreement with each form. Index as in the previous review lessons the remaining nouns in I, noting that one of these nouns varies in the meaning of the plural.

VI. Conjugate in full the imperfect and future indicative, active and passive, of **permoveō**, **dēligō**, and **suscipiō**, marking all long vowels with care.

VII. Review the translation of the text at the head of Lessons XXI–XXV, inclusive. Select in this text all examples of the Genitive of the Whole and of the Accusative of Extent, illustrating these constructions by short original Latin sentences translated into English.

RULES FOR THE GENDER OF THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS.

VIII. (1) Most nouns in **-ĕs**, which increase (have more syllables) in the genitive, nouns in **-er**, **-or**, and **-ōs** are masculine.

(2) Most nouns in **-ēs**, which do not increase in the genitive, nouns in **-ō**, **-ās**, **-is**, **-ūs** (genitive **-ūtis** or **-ūdis**), **-x**, and in **-s** preceded by a consonant are feminine.

(3) Nouns in **-c**, **-i**, **-t**, **-y**, **-l**, **-a**, **-n**, **-e**, **-ar**, **-ŭs** (genitive **-oris** or **-eris**), are neuter.

Many exceptions to these rules will be found, but these are best learned from practice. Remember that, whatever their endings, nouns denoting males are masculine and those denoting females are feminine.

Apply these rules to the following third declension nouns, giving the gender only of each: **pater**, **tempus**, **ōrātiō**, **iūs**, **frāter**, **mōs**, **mors**, **reditiō**, **facultās**, **urbs**, **altitūdō**, **ratis**, **nox**, **servitūs**, **nōmen**, **animal**.

LESSON XXVII.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THREE CONJUGATIONS. — ABLATIVE OF AGENCY.

189. *Orgetorix secretly develops his ambitious schemes to make himself king.*

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit.

190. PARADIGMS.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE VERB **Līberō**.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PERFECT.	
1. līberātus, -a, -um **sum**, I was (or have been) liberated.	1. līberātī, -ae, -a **sumus**, we were (or have been) liberated.
2. līberātus, -a, -um **es**.	2. līberātī, -ae, -a **estis**.
3. līberātus, -a, -um **est**.	3. līberātī, -ae, -a **sunt**.
PLUPERFECT.	
1. līberātus, -a, -um **eram**, I had been liberated.	1. līberātī, -ae, -a **erāmus**, we had been liberated.
2. līberātus, -a, -um **erās**.	2. līberātī, -ae, -a **erātis**.
3. līberātus, -a, -um **erat**.	3. līberātī, -ae, -a **erant**.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
1. līberātus, -a, -um **erō**, I shall have been liberated.	1. līberātī, -ae, -a **erimus**, we shall have been liberated.
2. līberātus, -a, -um **eris**.	2. līberātī, -ae, -a **eritis**.
3. līberātus, -a, -um **erit**.	3. līberātī, -ae, -a **erunt**.

Observe: —

(1) that these tenses are formed by adding to the perfect passive participle: for the perfect, the present of the verb **sum**; for the pluperfect, the imperfect of the verb **sum**; and for the future perfect, the future of the verb **sum**.

(2) that this participle, like an adjective, agrees in G. N. C. with the subject

191. TABLE OF THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE SECOND AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS.

PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLES.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
PERFECT.		
mōtus, -a, -um dīvīsus, -a, -um captus, -a, -um	sum, es, est.	mōtī, -ae, -a dīvīsī, -ae, -a captī, -ae, -a — sumus, estis, sunt.
PLUPERFECT.		
mōtus, -a, -um dīvīsus, -a, -um captus, -a, -um	eram, erās, erat.	mōtī, -ae, -a dīvīsī, -ae, -a captī, -ae, -a — erāmus, erātis, erant.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
mōtus, -a, -um dīvīsus, -a, -um captus, -a, -um	erō, eris, erit.	mōtī, -ae, -a dīvīsī, -ae, -a captī, -ae, -a — erimus, eritis, erunt.

192. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Helvētiī agrōs vāstāvērunt. — *The Swiss devastated the fields.* (2) Agrī ab Helvētiīs vāstātī sunt. — *The fields were devastated by the Swiss.* (3) Agrī flūminibus vāstātī sunt. — *The fields were devastated by the rivers.*

Observe: —

(1) that sentences 1 and 2 have the same meaning, the one being active, the other passive.

(2) that the **Helvētiī**, persons and voluntary agents, while the subject in the active, sentence 1, are put in the ablative with **ab** in the passive, sentence 2. This ablative is called the Ablative of Agency and answers the question "By whom?"

(3) that **flūminibus** in sentence 3 is put in the Ablative of Means without a preposition, since rivers are not persons and voluntary agents.

193. *RULE. — The voluntary agent after a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

194. **VOCABULARY.**

Casticus, -ī, *Casticus*, a leader of the Sequani.
Catamantāloedēs, -is, m., *Catamantaloedes*, a former leader of the Sequani.
fīlius, fīlī, m., *son* (voc. sing. fīlī).
pater, patris, m., *father*.
populus, -ī, m., *people, nation*.
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate*.
Rōmānus, -a, -um (an adj. often used substantively), *Roman*.
ante, adv., *before*.
quō, masc., abl. sing. of interrogative, (*by*) *whom*.
ā or **ab**, prep., *by* (with Ablative of Agency).

195. **WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Conjugate, with meanings, **prohibeō**, **gerō**, and **faciō** in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, active and passive.
(2) Decline **fīlius**, **pater**, **senātus**.

196. **EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) Superātus est; mōtus erat; gestum erit; iactus es; prohibitī sumus. (2) Gessistī, gestum est; dūxerās, ductus erās; dīvīseris, dīvīsus eris. (3) Comparāverās; dīxērunt, dictī erātis, līberātī sunt; captī sumus; armātī erunt. (4) Multōs annōs proximīs cum cīvitātibus pāx ab Helvētiīs cōnfīrmāta est. (5) Nostrī fīnēs biennium ā Casticō vāstātī sunt quod pācem nōn cōnfīrmāverāmus. (6) Fortitūdine et glōriā bellī Helvētiī Gallōs omnēs praecēdēbant. (7) Exercitus Sēquanōrum ex prōvinciā ab Casticō ductus erit. (8) Ā quō Orgetorīx ad eās rēs cōnficiendās dēlēctus est?

II. (1) They have been prevented, they have prevented; you have been led, you have led; he had been called, he had called. (2) They shall have been given, they shall have given; you have been chosen, you had chosen; she has been affected, she has af-

fected. (3) We shall have been conquered, we shall have conquered; I had been accused; you (sing.) have been influenced; it will have been weakened. (4) For many years we were weakened by the wars. (5) A large part of these territories had been seized by the Belgians. (6) The Germans, whose towns had been seized by the Romans, did not make peace for many years. (7) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 8, part I.]

197. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

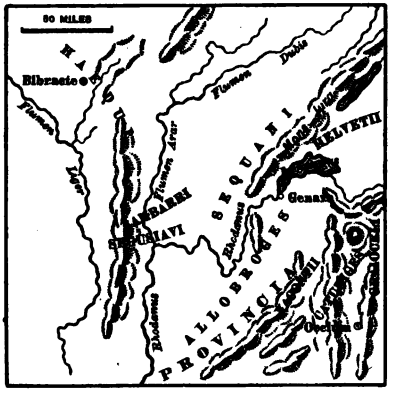
In eō itinere Orgetorīx Casticō, Sēquanō, persuāsit, ut (that) rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupāret (should seize). Casticus erat fīlius Catamantāloedis, quī rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat. Catamantāloedēs populī Rōmānī amīcus ā senātū appellātus erat. Orgetorīx Casticō persuāsit ut rēgnum occupāret quod pater ante habuerat.

LESSON XXVIII.

DECLENSION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ĪDEM*. — SYNOPSIS OF VERBS. — ABLATIVE OF TIME.

198. *Orgetorix appeals to the noblemen of neighboring states to set up monarchies.*

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat.



To the West of the Swiss.

199. The demonstrative **īdem**, used as a pronoun or adjective, is a compound of the demonstrative **is** and the suffix **dem**. Memorize its declension in the App., § **16**.

200. SYNOPSES OF THE VERB **Dūcō** IN THE INDICATIVE.

	ACTIVE 3D SINGULAR.	PASSIVE 2D PLURAL.
Present	dūcit, he leads.	dūciminī, you are led.
Imperfect	dūcēbat, he was leading.	dūcēbāminī, you were being led.
Future	dūcet, he will lead.	dūcēminī, you will be led.
Perfect	dūxit, he led.	ductī estis, you were led.
Pluperfect	dūxerat, he had led.	ductī erātis, you have been led.
Future Perfect	dūxerit, he will have led.	ductī eritis, you will have been led.

Such an arrangement of a verb as is shown above, giving each tense in some designated person and number, is called a synopsis.

201. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Eōdem tempore prīncipātum obtinēbat. — *At the same time he was holding the leadership.* (2) Tribus annīs eās rēs cōnficiēmus. — *Within three years we shall accomplish these things.*

Observe: —

That in sentence 1, the ablative phrase **eōdem tempore** denotes the Time When he was holding the leadership, and in sentence 2, the ablative phrase **tribus annīs** denotes the Time Within Which we shall accomplish these things.

202. *RULE.* — Time When *or* Within Which *is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.*

203. VOCABULARY.

Aeduus, -a, -um, *Aeduan, one of the Aedui*, an important Gallic nation.
Dīviciācus, -ī, m., *Diviciacus*, an Aeduan leader.
Dumnorīx, Dumnorīgis, m., *Dumnorix*, brother of Diviciacus.
dux, ducis, m., *leader, guide, general.*
fīlia, **-ae**, f., *daughter* (dat. and abl. plu. fīliābus to distinguish from fīliīs).
frāter, frātris, m., *brother.*
mātrimōnium, -ī, n., *marriage.*

plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people.*
prīncipātus, -ūs, m., *leadership.*
tempus, temporis, n., *time.*
acceptus, -a, -um, *acceptable* (followed by dative).
item, adv., *likewise;* for itemque see -que, § 77.
māximē, adv., *very, especially.*
īdem, eadem, idem, dem. pro. and adj., *the same.*
ac, conj., *and also* (atque before vowels).

204. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write with meanings, synopses of **prohibeō** in active 1st plural and **gerō** in the passive 3d singular, assuming the subject of **gerō** to be neuter.

(2) Put **īdem** into agreement with each of the following nouns and decline each combination in full: **fīlia, frāter, tempus.**

205. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Nostra prōvincia ab Helvētiīs eīsdem flūminibus dīviditur. (2) Tertiō annō Orgetorīx, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, coniūrātiōnem fēcit. (3) Quot annīs eaedem rēs ab Helvētiīs cōnfectae erunt? (4) In[1] eundem annum profectiō lēge cōnfīrmāta erat. (5) Multa bella ipsīs cum Germānīs hōc annō gerentur. (6) Trēs annōs Orgetorīx prīncipātum suae cīvitātis obtinuerat. (7) Fīnēs Gallōrum eōdem annō vāstātī sunt. (8) Māgnum numerum carrōrum et māgnam cōpiam frūmentī sēcum dūxērunt. (9) Belgae ipsī suās cōpiās ex agrīs Sēquanōrum in oppida eōrum dūcent. (10) Auctōritāte eiusdem ducis permovēbantur ac pācem proximīs cum cīvitātibus cōnfīrmāvērunt.

II. (1) Marcus Messala was selected consul for one year. (2) In the same year Orgetorix was chosen leader and led the Swiss into our province. (3) Within three days a large number of carts was bought in the villages of the same people. (4) For many days he held the royal power in his state. (5) Our fields will not be laid waste this year. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 3, part I.]

[1] **In** as here may have the sense of *for* or *against* followed by the accusative. Compare English "against that day."

206. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Item Dumnorīgī, quī erat frāter Dīviciācī, persuādet. Dīviciācus eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte Aeduōrum obtinēbat ac māximē plēbī acceptus erat. Dumnorīgī persuāsit ut (that) idem cōnārētur (imp. subj., transl. should attempt). Eī fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

LESSON XXIX.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.—THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ILLE*.

207. *Orgetorix wins the support of an ambitious Aeduan by making him his son-in-law.*

Itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

208. The indicative mood states the action of the verb as a fact, while the subjunctive states the action of the verb as desired, doubtful or dependent for its truth upon a statement of fact either expressed or implied. No meanings are given for subjunctive forms because the meanings vary widely according to the degree of uncertainty expressed or implied.

209. PARADIGMS.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE VERB **Līberō**, AND **Sum**.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. **līberem**	**līberēmus.**	1. **līberer**	**līberēmur.**
2. **līberēs**	**līberētis.**	2. **līberēris or -re**	**līberēminī.**
3. **līberet**	**liberent.**	3. **līberētur**	**liberentur.**
1. **sim**	**sīmus.**	(No Passive.)	
2. **sīs**	**sītis.**		
3. **sit**	**sint.**		

Observe:—

(1) that the active first personal ending is **-m** instead of **-ō**.

(2) that the vowel preceding the personal endings is long, except before **-nt** and **-m, -r, -t** final.

These observations are true of all tenses of the subjunctive of whatever conjugation.

210. TABLE OF THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THREE CONJUGATIONS.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
līberē- **movea-** **dīvida-** **capia-**	**-m, -s, -t,** **-mus, -tis, -nt.**	**līberē-** **movea-** **dīvida-** **capia-**	**-r, -ris** or **-re, -tur,** **-mur, -minī, -ntur.**

How does the present subjunctive of **dīvidam** and **capiam** differ from their future indicative?

The present subjunctive of any verb in the Latin language can be formed without difficulty by any student who will memorize the following five forms: **sim, līberem, moveam, dīvidam, capiam.**

211. Memorize the declension of the demonstrative **ille, illa, illud,** in the App., § **16.** **Ille** (transl. *that* in sing., *those* in plu.) is contrasted as to use with **hīc** (transl. *this* in sing., *these* in plu.). In general, **hīc** is used to designate what is thought of as near in time, place, etc., to the speaker, while **ille** denotes what is remote. For this reason **hī**, the plural of **hīc**, is used very frequently by Caesar to refer to his own soldiers, while **illī** is made to refer to the enemy. **Hīc** often means *the latter*, and **ille**, *the former.*

212. VOCABULARY.

cōnātum, -ī, n., *attempt.*
dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful.*
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adj. or pro., *that.*
propterea, adv., *therefore, for that reason;* regularly followed by conj., **quod**, with which it is translated by the single word *because.*
quīn, conj. (followed by subj., often trans. as ind.) *that, but that.*

conciliō, 1, *conciliate, win over.*
dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give.*
perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *accomplish.*
probō, 1, *prove, approve.*

213. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write, with careful attention to marking long vowels, the present subjunctive, active and passive, of **conciliō, prohibeō, dēligō,** and **perficiō,** and write a synopsis of the last-named verb in the 2d plural passive indicative.

(2) Put **ille** in agreement with each of the following nouns and decline together: **exercitus, coniūrātiō, cōnātum.**

214. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Hī fīnēs angustī, illī lātī sunt. (2) Belgae et Helvētiī eōs fīnēs incolunt; illī lātissimōs, hī angustissimōs. (3) Illī sunt in nostrīs fīnibus. (4) Trēs diēs nostrī agrī ab Gallīs vāstātī sunt. (5) Dux Helvētiōrum Casticō exercitum dedit quem in Galliam dūxit. (6) Orgetorīx rēgna suīs amīcīs suō exercitū conciliābit. (7) Helvētiī arbitrantur sē fortēs cōpiās habēre. (8) Gallī ipsī sē līberābunt. (9) Trēs partēs illōrum fīnium ab Helvētiīs vāstātae erant. (10) Illīs probat sē esse fortem.

II. (1) These towns were captured, those were freed. (2) These rivers are wide, those are long. (3) We were holding the royal power in the state at that time. (4) For three years the fields of the Gauls were laid waste by those Germans. (5) The Swiss were afflicted with great distress on account of (their) narrow territories.

215. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

1. Cōnāta perficere est perfacile factū.[1] 2. Illīs probat cōnāta perficere esse perfacile factū[1]: id erat perfacile factū[1] propterea quod suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus[2] esset (imp. subj. of sum: transl. as imp. ind.). 3. Nōn erat dubium quīn Helvētiī tōtīus Galliae plūrimum possent (were the most powerful). 4. Dīxit nōn esse dubium quīn Helvētiī tōtīus Galliae plūrimum possent. 5. Suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrus[3] erat. 6. Illīs rēgna sē conciliātūrum esse cōnfīrmat.

[1] **factū**, what is known as the supine in **ū** of **faciō**, transl. as present infinitive.
[2] **obtentūrus**, future active participle of **obtineō**, transl. *going to get* or *obtain*.
[3] **conciliātūrus**, future active participle of **conciliō**, transl. *going to win over*.

Note how in the above short sentences the even-numbered sentences express the same thought as those immediately preceding with the addition of an introductory word of saying or thinking, as **probat**, **dīxit**, or **cōnfīrmat**. After such introductory words the main verbs of the thought, as **est** and **erat**, are changed into the infinitive, though best translated by the indicative in English. Point out how the same change has taken place in the development exercises of Lessons XXI, XXIV, and XXVI. A thought thus expressed is said to be in indirect discourse because it is indirectly stated.

LESSON XXX.

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.— CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

216. *Orgetorix explains to his confederates the grounds of his confidence.*

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: [dīxit] nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat.

217. PARADIGMS.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE VERB **Līberō**.

PRESENT INFINITIVE **līberāre**.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. **līberārem**	**līberārēmus**.	1. **līberārer**	**līberārēmur**.
2. **līberārēs**	**līberārētis**.	2. **līberārēris** or **-re**	**līberārēminī**.
3. **līberāret**	**līberārent**.	3. **līberārētur**	**līberārentur**.

Observe: —

(1) that the imperfect subjunctive is formed by adding the personal endings, both active and passive, to the present active infinitive. This is true of all verbs of all conjugations.

(2) that the principle already stated in § **209** holds true regarding the length of the vowel preceding the personal endings.

218. TABLE OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF OTHER VERBS.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRESENT INFINITIVES.		PRESENT INFINITIVES.	
movēre- dīvidere- capere- esse-	-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.	movēre- dīvidere- capere-	-r, -ris, or -re, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur.

219. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Coniūrātiōnem facit ut rēgnum occupet. — *He forms a conspiracy in order to seize the royal power* (literally, *that he may seize the royal power*). (2) Coniūrātiōnem fēcit ut rēgnum occupāret. — *He formed a conspiracy-in-order to seize the royal power* (literally, *that he might seize the royal power*). (3) Caesar bellum geret nē Helvētiī fīnēs Galliae obtineant. — *Caesar will make war, that the Swiss may not hold the territories of Gaul.* (4) Caesar bellum gesserat nē Helvētiī fīnēs Galliae obtinērent. — *Caesar had made war, that the Swiss might not hold the territories of Gaul.*

Observe: —

(1) that the verbs in the subordinate clauses are all in the subjunctive mood.

(2) that these subordinate clauses express the purpose or will of the action of the principal clauses, **ut** affirmative and **nē** negative.

(3) also that when the main verb is in the present or future tenses, as in sentences 1 and 3, the subordinate verb is in the present subjunctive. On the other hand, when the main verb is

in a past time tense (*i.e.* imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect), the subordinate verb is in the imperfect subjunctive.

220. ***RULE.—Purpose is expressed by the subjunctive mood with ut (or utī) affirmative, and nē negative.***

221. VOCABULARY.

fidēs, fideī, f. (nom. and acc. only in plu.), *pledge, trust, loyalty.*
iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n. (a compound noun, with both parts declined, d. iūrī iūrandō, acc. iūs iūrandum, abl. iūre iūrandō, nom. and acc. plu. iūra iūranda), *oath.*
ōrātiō, orātiōnis, f., *speech, plea.*
fīrmus, -a, -um, *strong, firm.*
potēns m., f., n., (potentis, gen.), *powerful.*
per, prep. governing acc., *through, by means of.*
ut (utī), conj., *as*, with the ind., *that, in order that*, with subj.
nē, conj., with subj., *that not.*
quō cōnsiliō, *with what purpose?*

spērō, 1, *hope* (followed by inf., usually fut., with subject acc.).

222. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate in the present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, **spērō, obtineō, dūcō, afficiō.**

(2) Decline in G.N.C. agreement: **īdem** and **orātiō**; **fīrmior** and **fidēs.**

(3) Compare **fīrmus** (fīrm-) and **potēns** (potent-).

223. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Orgetorīx dēlēctus est ut eās rēs cōnficeret. (2) Hīs rēbus adductī sunt nē cum fīnitimīs bellum gererent. (3) Helvētiīs persuādet ut frūmentum coëmant.[1] (4) Hī lātissimōs, illī angustissimōs fīnēs incolunt. (5) Multa bella gerēbant ut lātiōrēs fīnēs obtinērent. (6) Dumnorīx et Casticus coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt ut rēgnum in suīs cīvitātibus occupārent. (7) Ea bella biennium gerimus ut Germānōs nostrīs fīnibus prohibeāmus. (8) Pācem cum Germānīs fēcimus nē nostrī fīnēs vāstārentur. (9) Orgetorīx ab Helvētiīs dēlēctus est ut cōpiās ad eōsdem fīnēs dūceret. (10) Quō cōnsiliō ad nostram prōvinciam mercātōrēs saepe commeant?

[1] **ut . . . coëmant**, a Substantive Clause of Purpose. Why substantive?

II. (1) He gave the Belgians his forces that they might wage war with the Germans. (2) They had established peace with their neighbors that their fields might not be devastated. (3) We shall march three miles into the territories of the Sequanians to lay waste their fields.[1] (4) (In order) to free themselves[1] the Swiss prepared these (things). (5) We purchased many beasts of burden that we might have a supply of grain on the march. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence containing a purpose clause the question in sentence 10, part I.]

224. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Hāc ōrātiōne addūcēbantur. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant.[2] Rēgnō occupātō (the royal power having been seized), imperiō tōtīus Galliae potientur (Fut. Ind. of potior). Spērant, rēgnō occupātō sēsē posse potīrī imperiō tōtīus Galliae. Per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs spērant imperiō[3] tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse.

[1] Purpose cannot be expressed by the infinitive in Latin prose as is done in English.

[2] **dant inter sē** = *exchange* (literally, *give among themselves*).

[3] **imperiō** may be omitted allowing **potīrī** to be followed by the genitive instead of the ablative. See § **146**.

LESSON XXXI.

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. — RESULT CLAUSES.

225. *The princely conspirators plan to extend their kingdoms over the whole of Gaul.*

Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant. [Cap. III. Fīnis.]

226. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE VERB **Līberō**.

ACTIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	PERFECT TENSE.	
1.	**līberāverim.**	**līberāverimus.**
2.	**līberāveris.**	**līberāveritis.**
3.	**līberāverit.**	**līberāverint.**
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
1.	**līberāvissem.**	**līberāvissēmus.**
2.	**līberāvissēs.**	**līberāvissētis.**
3.	**līberāvisset.**	**līberāvissent.**

PASSIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	PERFECT TENSE.	
1.	**līberātus, -a, -um sim.**	**līberātī, -ae, -a sīmus.**
2.	**līberātus, -a, -um sīs.**	**līberātī, -ae, -a sītis.**
3.	**līberātus, -a, -um sit.**	**līberātī, -ae, -a sint.**
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
1.	**līberātus, -a, -um essem.**	**līberātī, -ae, -a, essēmus.**
2.	**līberātus, -a, -um essēs.**	**līberātī, -ae, -a, essētis.**
3.	**līberātus, -a, -um esset.**	**līberātī, -ae, -a, essent.**

Observe:—

(1) that the perfect and pluperfect active subjunctive are formed by adding to the perfect stem **līberāv-** the suffixes **-erim, -eris**, etc., and **-issem, -issēs**, etc., respectively. In what person does the perfect active subjunctive differ from the future perfect active indicative?

(2) that the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive differ from the corresponding tenses of the indicative only in the mood of the auxiliaries.

(3) All verbs in Latin form these tenses in precisely the same way, as may be seen by reference to the Appendix.

227. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Belgae tam potentēs sunt ut Germānōs suīs fīnibus prohibeant. — *The Belgians are so powerful that they keep the Germans from their territories.* (2) Helvētiī montibus et flūminibus continēbantur ut nōn vagārentur. — *The Swiss were hemmed in by mountains, so that they did not wander about.*

Observe: —

(1) that **prohibeant** and **vagārentur**, the verbs in the subordinate clauses, are in the subjunctive and express, not purpose, but a fact resulting from the action or state expressed by the main clause, **ut** (*that*) denoting affirmative, and **ut nōn** (*that not*) denoting negative result.

(2) that these subjunctives are translated by the indicative.

Note that the tenses of the subjunctive are determined by the same principles as in purpose clauses in § **219** (3).

228. *RULE. — Result is expressed by the subjunctive with* **ut**, *that, so that* (*negative,* **ut nōn**).

229. VOCABULARY.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason, case;* causam dīcere, *to plead a case.*
ignis, ignis, m. (an i-stem with abl. sing. ignī), *fire.*
indicium, indicī, n., *information, evidence.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom.*
poena, -ae, f., *punishment.*
vinculum, -ī, n., *chain, fetter;* ex vinculīs, *in chains.*
quam, interrog. adv., *how?*
tam, adv., *so.*

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *compel, collect.*
cremō, 1, *burn* (ignī cremāre, *to burn to death*).
damnō, 1, *condemn.*
ēnūntiō, 1, *announce, tell.*
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impersonal[1] verb, *it is necessary.*
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, deponent verb, *follow.*

[1] An impersonal verb is one used only in the third person and having no personal subject.

230. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate in full the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of **ēnūntiō, moveō, cōgō, iaciō,** and **sum.**

(2) Decline **īgnis** and **mōs.**

231. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Hae cōpiae fuērunt fīrmissimae ut eās nōn superārēmus. (2) Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur. (3) Hī montēs eōs undique continēbant ut mercātōrēs ad eōs nōn commeārent. (4) Hāc ōrātiōne addūcēmur ut rēgnum occupēmus. (5) Pācem Helvētiī cōnfīrmant nē agrī vāstentur. (6) Ex vinculīs causam dīxit nē īgnī cremārētur. (7) Orgetorīx erat tam potēns ut ad eās rēs cōnficiendās dēligerētur. (8) Fīnēs tam angustī erant ut māgnō dolōre afficerentur. (9) Casticus est tam acceptus Orgetorīgī ut hīc suam fīliam in mātrimōnium illī det. (10) Quam acceptus plēbī erat Orgetorīx?

II. (1) The Belgians were so brave that they surpassed all the-rest-of the Gauls. (2) They are very far away from the province so that they are least weakened by the traders. (3) This Sequanian was very acceptable to the common people, so that he easily persuaded them. (4) The trader imports all these things, that he may be the richest of the Gauls. (5) They contend so often in almost daily battles that they are very brave. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence containing a result clause the question in sentence 10, part I.]

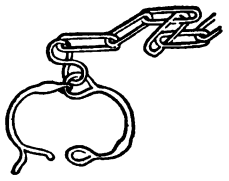
232. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ea coniūrātiō est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs (abl. of cause) Orgetorīgem[1] ex vinculīs causam dīcere (to plead) coēgērunt. Oportēbat poenam Orgetorīgem damnātum sequī. Haec poena erat ut īgnī cremārētur.

[1] **Orgetorīgem,** accusative, subject of the infinitive **dīcere.**

LESSON XXXII.

PLACE TO WHICH AND FROM WHICH. — DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*.



ANCIENT FETTERS.

233. *Discovering his conspiracy, the Swiss arrest Orgetorix.*

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur.

234. PARADIGM.

DECLENSION OF THE NOUN **Domus**, *house, home.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nominative	**domus**	**domūs**
Genitive	**domūs**	**domuum, domōrum**
Dative	**domuī, domō**	**domibus**
Accusative	**domum**	**domōs, domūs**
Ablative	**domō, domū**	**domibus**
Locative[1]	**domī,** *at home.*	

Observe: —

(1) that **domus** is declined according to the Fourth Declension but also shows certain forms of the Second Declension.

(2) that in the ablative singular and the accusative plural these second declension forms occur more frequently than the alternative form, and should therefore be learned first.

Domus is feminine, though we should expect to find it masculine, whether regarded as a fourth or second declension noun.

235. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Exercitum dūcit, *he leads the army.*

- ad Galliam, *to or towards Gaul.*
- in oppidum, *into the town.*
- Genāvam, *to Geneva.*
- domum, *home.*
- rūs, *to the country.*

[1] The locative case (denoting place where) occurs in names of towns and a few other words.

(2) Exercitum dūcit, *he leads the army.*

- ab Hispāniā, *away from Spain.*
- dē monte, *down from the mountain.*
- ex oppidō, *out of the town.*
- Genāvā, *from Geneva.*
- domō, *from home.*
- rūre, *from the country.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 Place To Which is expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**.

(2) that in sentence 2 Place From Which is expressed by the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

(3) that in both constructions, with names of towns, **domus**, and **rūs**, the prepositions are omitted.

These constructions may also refer to persons, as **ad Caesarem**, *to Caesar;* **ā Caesare**, *from Caesar.*

236. *RULES.* — 1. Place To Which *is expressed by the accusative with* ***ad*** *or* ***in***, *but with names of towns,* ***domus***, *and* ***rūs*** *the preposition is omitted.*

2. Place From Which *is expressed by the ablative with* ***ab***, ***dē***, *or* ***ex***, *but with names of towns,* ***domus***, *and* ***rūs***, *the preposition is omitted.*

237. **VOCABULARY.**

cliēns, clientis, m. or f., *retainer.*
dictiō, dictiōnis, f., *pleading.*
domus, -ūs, f., *home, house.*
familia, -ae, f., *house servants, retinue.*
Genāva, -ae, f., *Geneva*, a town of the Allobroges.
iūdicium, -ī, n., *trial.*
obaerātus, -ī, m., *debtor.*
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*
rūs, rūris, n., *country* as opposed to the town.
decem, numeral adj., indeclinable, *ten.*
eōdem, adv., *to the same place.*
quō, int. adv., *whither? to what place?*
unde, interrog. adv., *whence? from what place?*

condūcō, 3, *lead together, lead.*
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *snatch away, rescue.*

238. **WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Decline **cliēns** in full.

(2) Write synopses of **ēripiō** in the active 3d plural, and **cōnstituō** in the passive 3d singular, indicative and subjunctive.

239. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Decem mīlia obaerātōrum ad iūdicium contendent. (2) Cōnsulēs exercitum Rōmā ad oppida Belgārum dūxērunt. (3) Gallī domum cum suō exercitū contendērunt. (4) Helvētiī, ā quibus haec oppida capta sunt, Genāvā iter facient. (5) Suam fīliam Orgetorīgī dedit ut eī persuādēret. (6) Rōmā rūs iter faciam. (7) Orgetorīx dēlēctus est ut lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs susciperet. (8) Vīcī, ad quōs mercātōrēs commeābant, ā Belgīs captī erant. (9) Nostrī fīnēs dē montibus ad haec flūmina pertinent. (10) Unde et quō Orgetorīx lēgātiōnem dūxit?

II. (1) Orgetorix led a powerful army from these states to Geneva. (2) Caesar hastened from Rome and led his friends with him into the country. (3) Dumnorix will hasten home to collect[1] a large army. (4) The towns from which Orgetorix will lead his forces will be captured by the Belgians. (5) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 10, part I.]

A Signifer, or Bearer of the Signum, which was the Standard of a Cohort.

240. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Diēs causae dictiōnis cōnstitūta est. Diē cōnstitūtā Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam undique coēgit. Ea familia erat ad[2] hominum mīlia decem. Omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs eōdem condūxit. Eōrum māgnum numerum habēbat. Per eōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, sē ēripuit nē causam dīceret.

[1] Not infinitive in Latin. Why not? § 220.

[2] **ad**, used as an adverb, *nearly, about.*

LESSON XXXIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION OF VERBS. — ABLATIVE OF PLACE IN WHICH.

241. *Orgetorix assembles a large number of supporters, who interrupt the trial and rescue him.*

Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit.

242. The characteristic vowel of the Fourth Conjugation is **ī** preceding **-re**, the ending of the present infinitive.

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION OF THE VERB **Impediō**.

PRIN. PARTS: **impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impeditus.**

PRESENT STEM: **Impedī-.**

ACTIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. impediō, I impede, am impeding.	impedīmus, we impede, are impeding.
2. impedīs, you impede, etc.	impedītis, you impede, etc.
3. impedit, he impedes, etc.	impediunt, they impede, etc.

PASSIVE VOICE.

1. impedior, I am impeded, am being impeded.	impedīmur, we are impeded, etc.
2. impedīris, you are impeded, etc.	impedīminī, you are impeded, etc.
3. impedītur, he is impeded, etc.	impediuntur, they are impeded, etc.

Observe: —

That the present of this Fourth Conjugation verb is exactly the same as the present of **capiō**, the model verb of the Third Con-

jugation in **io**, except in the second singular passive and in the quantity of the characteristic vowel.

All other tenses, both indicative and subjunctive, are formed in precisely the same way as the same tenses of **capiō**.

243. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) In eīs fīnibus bellum gerunt. — *They wage war in these territories.*

(2) Exercitus est, *the army is*
- in oppidō, *in the town.*
- Genāvae, *in Geneva.*
- domī, *at home.*
- rūrī, *in the country.*

Observe: —

That Place in Which is expressed by the ablative with **in**, but names of towns, **domus** and **rūs**, omit the preposition and show a form known as the locative. This case in names of towns of the First and Second Declensions is the same as the genitive singular, in names of towns of the Third Declension is the same as the dative.

Domī, *at home*, and **rūrī**, *in the country*, are the only other locative forms in common use.

244. *RULE.* — Place In Which *is expressed by the ablative case with the preposition* ***in***, *but with names of towns,* ***domus***, *and* ***rūs***, *the preposition is omitted and the locative is used whenever such a form occurs.*

245. VOCABULARY.

arma, armōrum, n., *arms, weapons* (wanting in sing.).
iūs, iūris, n., *right.*
magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistrate.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
suspīciō, suspīciōnis, f., *suspicion.*
ubi, interrog. adv., *where?*
cum, conj. (with past time tenses usually followed by subj. trans. as ind.), *when, while.*
neque, conj., *and not, nor, neither* (neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*).
ob, prep. governing acc., literally, *against, facing;* freely, *on account of.*

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, *hear.*
cōnscīsco, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus, *decree, ordain* (mortem sibi **cōnscīscere**, *to decree death to one's self*, i.e. *to commit suicide*).

exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum, *follow out, perform, execute.*
impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impeditus, *hinder, impede.*
incitō, 1, *urge on, impel, arouse* (perf. pass. part. incitātus, -a, -um, *aroused*).
morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus sum, *die.*

246. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **magistrātus** and **mors.**

(2) Write synopses as directed in § **200** of the following Fourth Conjugation verbs: **impediō** in 3d plural active; **audiō** in 2d plural passive.

(3) Write the imp. subj. act. and pass. of **impediō** and **audiō,** § **217** (1).

247. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Impediunt, impediuntur; audiunt, audiuntur, audient, audientur. (2) Impedīvimus, impedītī sumus; audīverās, audītus erās; impediēbāmus, impediēbāmur. (3) Impedīris, impediēris, impedīvistī, impedīveris. (4) Eī persuādet ut orātiōnem audiat. (5) Eīs persuāsimus ut ōrātiō audīrētur. (6) Genāvae multī clientēs īgnī cremātī sunt. (7) Mercātōrēs ad multa oppida commeant in quibus sunt nostrae cōpiae. (8) Germānī in fīnibus Helvētiōrum ab Orgetorīge impedientur. (9) Exercitus, quem Helvētiī domī habēbant, erat in agrīs. (10) Ubi fuit Caesar cum esset[1] cōnsul?

II. (1) He is impeding, he is being impeded, you will impede, you will be impeded; they will have heard, they will have been heard. (2) He is heard, he was being heard, he will be heard. (3) You (sing.) were at home; I was at Geneva. (4) He will persuade Casticus to seize the royal power in his state. (5) Ten thousand men will be led from their homes to Geneva. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 10, part I.]

248. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Cīvitās, ob eam rem incitāta, armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnābātur.[2] Magistrātūs multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs cōgēbant.

[1] Translate by same tense of indicative. [2] A deponent verb, translate as active voice.

Cum ea facerent,[1] Orgetorīx mortuus est. Ut[2] Helvētiī arbitrantur, ipse mortem sibi cōnscīvit. Neque abest suspīciō quīn mortem sibi cōnscīverit.[3]

[1] Translate by same tense of indicative. [2] For translation of ut see § 221.
[3] Perfect subjunctive, see § 212 under quīn.

LESSON XXXIV.

PARTICIPLES. — THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS.

249. *The Swiss prepare to rearrest him. Orgetorix unexpectedly dies.*

Cum cīvitās, ob eam rem incitāta, armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit. [Cap. IV. Fīnis.]

250. The participle is a verbal adjective, often governing a case as a verb and always agreeing as an adjective in G. N. C. with its substantive. Participles are so much more frequently used in Latin than in English that a thorough knowledge of their forms and uses becomes of great importance. Before attempting to study the table given below, the student must thoroughly review the treatment of verb-stems in § 112.

251. TABLE OF PARTICIPLES.

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
PRESENT TENSE.	
līberāns, liberating	
movēns, moving	
dīvidēns, dividing	Latin has no present passive participle.
capiēns, taking	
impediēns, impeding	
FUTURE TENSE.	
līberātūrus, -a, -um, going to liberate	līberandus, -a, -um, to be liberated
mōtūrus, -a, -um	movendus, -a, -um
dīvīsūrus, -a, -um	dīvidendus, -a, -um (commonly known
captūrus, -a, -um	capiendus, -a, -um as gerundives)
impedītūrus, -a, -um	impediendus, -a, -um

PERFECT TENSE.

Latin has no perfect active participle.

līberātus, -a, -um (having been) liberated
mōtus, -a, -um
dīvīsus, -a, -um
captus, -a, -um
impedītus, -a, -um

Observe: —

(1) that the present active and future passive (or gerundive) participles are formed by adding to the present stem **-ns** and **-ndus** respectively. The verbs in **io** form their present active and future passive participles in **-iēns** and **-iendus**.

(2) that the future active and perfect passive participles are formed on the participial stem. To this stem **-ūrus** is added to form the future active, while the perfect passive participle is simply the fourth principal part.

252. All present participles and adjectives ending in **-ns** present the peculiarities of i-stems. Memorize the declension of the present participle **līberāns** in the App., § **10**.

253. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Id eīs persuāsit. — *He persuaded them (to do) this.* (2) Dumnorīgī ut idem cōnārētur persuāsit. — *He persuaded Dumnorix to attempt the same thing.* (3) Gallī Germānīs resistēbant. — *Gauls resisted the Germans.*

Observe: —

That in the English sentences the words, *them*, *Dumnorix*, and *Germans* are the direct objects of their verbs, while the Latin equivalents are put in the dative case, becoming indirect objects though translated as direct objects. This construction is called the Dative with Special Verbs.

254. *RULE. — Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative translated as direct object.*

255. VOCABULARY.

aedificium, ī, n., *building.*
duodecim, num. adj., *twelve.*
parātus, -a, -um, *ready.*
prīvātus, -a, -um, *private, personal.*
quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *four hundred.*
iam, adv., *at that or this time, now.*
nihilō minus, adv., *nevertheless.*
post, prep. governing acc., *after.*
ubi, conj., *where, when.*

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go forth, emigrate.*
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, *set on fire.*
resistō, resistere, restitī, —, *withstand, resist.*
studeō, studēre, studuī, —, *be eager or zealous for, desire* (with dative).

256. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **oriēns**, present participle of **orior**, like **līberāns**, in App., § 10.

(2) Tabulate in vertical columns as below, with meanings, the four participles of the following verbs: **cōnfīrmō**, **persuādeō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, **audiō**.

Present Active	movēns, moving.
Future Active	mōtūrus, going-to-move.
Perfect Passive	mōtus, having been moved.
Future Passive	movendus, to-be-moved.

257. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Gallī quoque Germānīs nōn facile resistēbant. (2) Cīvitās autem, ob eam rem incitāta, coniūrātiōnī Orgetorīgis restitit. (3) Hīs rēbus adductus, Orgetorīx Casticō persuāsūrus est. (4) Helvētiī, studentēs amīcitiae fīnitimōrum, lēgātiōnem suscipient. (5) Ea aedificia sunt incendenda. (6) Eōs resistentēs superat. (7) Orgetorīgī rēgnum occupantī Helvētiī restitērunt. (8) Gallī aedificia capta incendent. (9) Id māgnum aedificium item incēnsūrī sumus. (10) Quibus Orgetorīx persuāsit?

II. (1) They are going-to-hasten into Gaul. (2) The Swiss overcame the neighbors resisting them. (3) He also persuaded the Swiss to resist them. (4) At that time all the Gauls were zealous for peace. (5) He will likewise desire our friendship (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence containing a purpose clause sentence 10 in part I.]

258. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī cōnantur[1] ē fīnibus suīs exīre. Id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus exeant.[2] Iam arbitrātī sunt sē ad eam rem parātōs esse. Ubi iam sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia incendunt.[1] Atque vīcōs numerō ad quadringentōs et reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt.[1]

[1] Historical present, translate as if perfect.
[2] Translate ut . . . exeant like the infinitive phrase in the previous sentence.

FOURTH REVIEW.

I. Write in a column, with meanings, the Latin nouns, from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: filial, paternal, senatorial, popular, temporal, oration, diurnal, jury, ignite, mortal, amicable, fraternal, fidelity, clientage, armorial, magisterial, suspicious, moral, adding to this list the Latin word for *army*.

II. Decline consecutively the first ten of these nouns (*a*) starting with the first and putting the demonstrative **ille** in agreement with each form, (*b*) starting with the fifth and putting the demonstrative **īdem** in agreement with each form. Index as directed in the First Review all other nouns in I.

III. Give the Latin adjectives from which the following English words are derived: multitude, firmness, potential. Compare the second and decline the last like **līberāns** in the App., § **10**.

IV. Write in a column (giving principal parts and meanings) the Latin verbs from which the following English words are derived: data, probe, perfect, conciliate, (de)sperate, enunciate, cogent, conduce, sequence, adding to this list the Latin verbs meaning *to attempt* and *it is fitting*.

V. Write synopses as follows: in the active voice, **ēnūntiō** in the 3d singular, **perficiō** in the 1st plural, **cōgō** in the 3d plural; in the passive voice, **dō** in the 3d singular, **condūcō** in the 2d plural.

VI. Make a table giving in one column all the uses of the nominative you have studied; in the second, the genitive uses, etc., through the ablative. Review the rules of Purpose and Result.

VII. Translate text at the head of Lessons XXVI–XXXIV inclusive, pointing out all examples of the rules mentioned in VI.

LESSON XXXV.

THE USE OF PARTICIPLES IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

259. *The Swiss continue their preparations and burn their homes behind them.*

Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt.

260. In the sentence, *The teacher being absent, there was no school,* the word *teacher* is said to be nominative independent or absolute because the phrase in which it stands is independent of the rest of the sentence. What is known in English grammar as the nominative independent or absolute is represented in Latin by the Ablative Absolute. The literal translation of each model sentence below will be recognized as containing an example of the nominative independent.

261. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcent.	(Literally, *everything having been prepared,* a translation inadmissible in English), *After, if, since, or when everything has been prepared,*	*they will appoint a day.*

(2) Multīs oppūgnantibus, oppidum non captum est.	(Literally, *many attacking*), *Though many attacked it,*	*the town was not captured.*

Observe: —

That in each of these sentences we find an independent phrase having a noun and a participle in agreement in the ablative; in the first a perfect participle to denote completed action at the time of the main verb, in the second a present participle because the action is going on at the time of the main verb.

Since the verb **sum** has no present participle, two substantives or a substantive and an adjective in agreement in the ablative may constitute an Ablative Absolute.

The following familiar example sufficiently illustrates this construction and its various translations: —

M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem fēcit.	(Literally, *Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso being consuls*), *When Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso were consuls,*	*Orgetorix formed a conspiracy.*

This ablative answers the questions, "When?" "Why?" "How?" "By what means?" "Under what circumstances?"

262. *RULE.* — *A noun or pronoun with a participle in agreement may be put in the ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the ablative absolute.*

263. **VOCABULARY.**

mēnsis, mēnsis, m., *month*.
reditiō, reditiōnis, f., *return*; reditiō domum, *return home*.
spēs, spei, f., *hope* (in plu. only nom. and acc.).
quisque, quaeque, quidque, indef. pro., *each one*.
cibārius, -a, -um, *of* or *pertaining to food*; cibāria molita, *ground food, flour*.
difficilis, -e, *difficult*.
quandō, interrog. adv., *when?*
praeter, prep. governing acc., *except, beyond*.

combūrō, combūrere, combussī, combūstus, *burn up.*
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, *carry* or *take away.*
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, *order.*
oppūgnō, 1, *attack.*
portō, 1, *carry.*
subeō, subīre, subiī, subitus, *undergo;* gerundive, subeundus, -a, -um, *to-be-undergone.*
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, *take away, remove.*

264. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Combine **Orgetorīx**, in the Ablative Absolute, with the perfect passive and present active participles of **addūcō** and translate each combination in all possible ways, as suggested in the translations in § **261**.

(2) Similarly combine and translate **cōnsul** and **superō**, **Belgae** and **līberō**.

(3) Decline **mēnsis** and **spēs**, noting that one of these nouns is defective in certain cases of the plural.

265. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(Translate the Ablative Absolutes in all possible ways and tell what question each answers.)

I. (1) Hāc rē ēnūntiātā, Orgetorīgem damnāvērunt. (2) Cōpiīs iam coāctīs, Germānī agrōs Belgārum vāstāre cōnstituērunt. (3) Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs, Orgetorīx sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. (4) Multīs oppidīs incēnsīs, Helvētiī domum reditiōnis spem sustulērunt. (5) Cīvitās, ob eam rem incitāta, māgnum numerum hominum ex agrīs coēgit. (6) Helvētiīs omnia oppida incendentibus, spēs tollētur. (7) Spē reditiōnis sublātā, omne frūmentum combūrēmus praeter id quod carrīs portābimus. (8) Orgetorīge persuādente, nōbilissimī Gallōrum rēgna occupāvērunt. (9) Rēgnīs Gallōrum occupātīs, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potientur. (10) Quandō Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem fēcit?

(In sentences 1–4, translate the subordinate clauses by the Ablative Absolute.)

II. (1) After many carts had been bought up, the Swiss

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

marched from their territories. (2) When the towns of their neighbors have been burned, the Belgians will hasten to Geneva. (3) Though many attack (it), this town will not be taken. (4) Since a conspiracy had been made, the magistrates seized the royal power. (5) The march (being) long and difficult, the Swiss will buy and carry with them much grain. (6) [Answer in a complete sentence containing an ablative absolute the question in sentence 10, part I.]

266. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

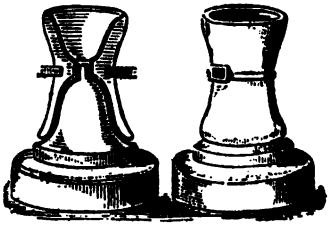
Frūmentum omne combūrunt[1] praeter id quod sēcum portātūrī erant. Itaque spem domum reditiōnis tollunt[1] et parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda[2] sunt.[1] Frūmentum combūrunt[1] ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda[2] essent. Iubent[1] quemque[3] sibi trium mēnsium[4] molita cibāria domō efferre.

[1] Historical present, translate past.
[2] Gerundive, translate phrase as if **omnia perīcula subīre.**
[3] Accusative case, subject of infinitive **efferre.**
[4] Genitive of measure; translate, *for three months.*

LESSON XXXVI.

FORMATION AND USES OF INFINITIVES.

267. *Three months' provisions are allowed each man; all other supplies are destroyed.*



ANCIENT MILLS.

Frūmentum omne praeter quod sēcūm portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent, trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

268. TABLE OF INFINITIVES.

PRÉSENT TENSE.

	Active Voice.	Endings.	Passive Voice.	Endings.
I.	**liberāre**, to liberate.	**-āre**	**liberārī**, to be liberated.	**-ārī**
II.	**movēre**, to move.	**-ēre**	**movērī**, to be moved.	**-ērī**
III.	**dīvidere**, to divide. / **capere**, to take.	**-ere**	**dividī**, to be divided. / **capī**, to be taken.	**-ī**
IV.	**impedīre**, to impede.	**-īre**	**impedīrī**, to be impeded.	**-īrī**

PERFECT TENSE.

liberāvisse, to have liberated.	**liberātus, -a, -um esse**, to have been liberated.
mōvisse, to have moved.	**mōtus, -a, -um esse**, to have been moved.
dīvīsisse, to have divided.	**dīvīsus, -a, -um esse**, to have been divided.
cēpisse, to have taken.	**captus, -a, -um esse**, to have been taken.
impedīvisse, to have impeded.	**impedītus, -a, -um esse**, to have been impeded.

FUTURE TENSE.

liberātūrus, -a, -um esse, to be going to liberate.	**liberātum īrī**, to be going to be liberated.
mōtūrus, -a, -um esse.	**mōtum īrī.**
dīvīsūrus, -a, -um esse.	**dīvīsum īrī.**
captūrus, -a, -um esse.	**captum īrī.**
impedītūrus, -a, -um esse.	**impedītum īrī.**

Observe:—

(1) that the perfect active infinitive is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem, while the future active infinitive is simply the future active participle and **esse**.

(2) that the present passive infinitive is formed by changing the final **-e** of the present active infinitive to **-ī** except in the Third Conjugation, where the **-er** is syncopated (or cut out) after making the same change.

(3) that the perfect passive infinitive is simply the perfect passive participle and **esse**.

(4) that the future passive infinitive is formed by combining **īrī** and what is called the supine of the verb, a form which always is the same as the neuter singular accusative of the perfect passive participle.

The verb **sum** having no passive voice has but three infinitive forms: present, **esse**, *to be;* perfect, **fuisse**, *to have been;* future, **futūrus, -a -um esse**, *to be going-to-be.*

269. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Facile est tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. — *It is easy to get control of the whole of Gaul.* (2) Orgetorīx parātus esse cōnābitur. — *Orgetorix will try to be prepared.* (3) Pācem cōnfīrmāre possunt. — *They are able to establish peace.* (4) Orgetorīgem causam dīcere coēgērunt. — *They compelled Orgetorix to plead his case.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 the infinitive **potīrī** is the subject of the main verb **est**.

(2) that in sentence 2 the infinitive **esse** is the direct object of the main verb **cōnābitur**.

(3) that in sentence 3 the infinitive **cōnfīrmāre** is the complement of the main verb **possunt**.

(4) that in sentence 2 the adjective **parātus** agrees in G. N. C. with **Orgetorīx**, the subject of the main verb, according to § **45**.

(5) that in sentence 4 **Orgetorīgem**, the subject of the infinitive **dīcere**, is put in the accusative case.

270. *RULES.* — 1. *The infinitive may be used as subject, object, or complement.*

2. *The subject of the infinitive mood is in the accusative.*

271. VOCABULARY.

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, m., **Rauracī, -ōrum, m.,** **Tulingī, -ōrum, m.,** } tribes to the north of the Swiss.

ūnā, adv., *together with.*

quid, interrog. pro. neut. sing. nom. or acc., *what?*

exūrō, exūrere, exussī, exustus, *burn up, consume.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *set forth, go* (deponent, transl. actively).

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use, employ* (deponent translated actively).

272. WRITTEN WORK.

Tabulate in a vertical column with meanings the six infinitive forms of each of the following verbs: **occupō, iubeō, exūrō, cōnficiō, audiō.**

273. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Rauracīs persuādēre cōnstituērunt ut eōdem tempore iter facerent. (2) Multōs annōs rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupāre cōnātur. (3) Helvētiōs omnia aedificia incendere coēgit. (4) Dīviciācus iam cōnstituit amīcus populī Rōmānī esse. (5) Perfacile erat Helvētiīs persuādēre ut suōs vīcōs exūrerent. (6) Iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere cōnstituent. (7) Orgetorīx cōnātur potentissimus tōtīus Galliae esse. (8) Helvētiōs omne frūmentum, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrere coēgit. (9) Germānī agrōs Belgārum vāstāre et oppida oppūgnāre cōnstituunt. (10) Quid Orgetorīx cōnābātur?

II. (1) The Swiss will now decide to enforce their rights (sing.) by arms. (2) Caesar will compel his troops to march from Gaul to Rome. (3) He will attempt to lead a great number of men from Geneva to another part of Gaul. (4) We shall compel him to purchase grain for three months. (5) [Answer, in a complete Latin sentence containing an infinitive as object, the question in sentence 10, part I.]

274. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Eōdem cōnsiliō[1] ūtuntur. Oppida sua vīcōsque exūrunt. Oppidīs vīcīsque exustīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscuntur. Persuādent fīnitimīs utī, ūsī[2] eōdem cōnsiliō, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur.[3]

[1] Ablative with ūtor translated as direct object.
[2] ūsī, perf. pass. participle of ūtor, transl. actively.
[3] Present subjunctive. Why?

LESSON XXXVII.

DECLENSION OF *DUO*. — CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*. — DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

275. *Their neighbors adopt the same plan and start out along with them.*

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur.

276. Memorize the declension of the numeral **duo**, *two*, App., § **9**; also the conjugation of **possum**, *I am able*, App., § **26**.

The verb **possum** is a compound of the verb **sum** and the adjective **potis**, *able;* base, **pot-**. — This combination undergoes certain euphonic changes when two consonants occur together.

277. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Dumnorīx erat amīcus Helvētiīs. — *Dumnorix was friendly to the Swiss.* (2) Genāva erat oppidum proximum fīnibus Helvētiōrum. — *Geneva was the town nearest to the territories of the Swiss.*

Observe: —

That **Helvētiīs** and **fīnibus** are in the dative case, with the adjectives **amīcus** and **proximus**.

278. *RULE.* — *The dative is used with adjectives denoting fitness, friendliness, likeness, nearness.*

279. VOCABULARY.

Bōiī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe.
Nōrēia, -ae, f., *Noreia*, the chief town of the Norici.
socius, -ī, m., *ally*.
amīcus, -a, -um, *friendly*.
duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two*.
Nōricus, -a, -um, *belonging to the Norici*, a tribe north of the Alps.
dissimilis, -e, m., f., n., *unlike*.
similis, -e, m., f., n., *like, similar to*.
adscīscō, adscīscere, adscīvī, adscītus, *take to, add, adopt*.
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *take back, receive*.
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go across, cross*.

280. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write a synopsis of **possum** in the 3d singular.
(2) Decline **ūnum iter** in the singular and **duo itinera** in the plural.

281. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Haec oppida fīnibus Helvētiōrum proxima sunt. (2) Orgetorīx erat reliquīs Gallīs virtūte dissimilis. (3) Illī agrī quī lātē patēbant nostrīs agrīs similēs erant. (4) Iter erat difficile ut Helvētiī iter facere nōn facile possent. (5) Bōiī Helvētiīs erant amīcī. (6) Duo oppida erunt quae Belgae oppūgnāre poterunt. (7) Germānī erant proximī nostrīs sociīs, quōrum agrōs vāstāre poterant. (8) Nostrī agrī sunt dissimilēs agrīs nostrōrum duōrum amīcōrum. (9) Belgae erant dissimilēs reliquīs Gallīs. (10) Nōrēia nōn erat amīca Genāvae.

II. (1) We were not able to march from home by the two roads which were nearest our territories. (2) The Swiss were unlike their allies. (3) He had been able to seize the royal power, which his father had held. (4) These two rivers are like those three. (5) To his two daughters, he will give this hope.

282. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Bōiī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnāverant (oppūgnārant). Helvētiī eōs Bōiōs sociōs ad sē recipiunt et sibi adscīscunt. Bōiōs receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

LESSON XXXVIII.

THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

283. *The Swiss form an alliance with the Boii.*

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur, Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt. [Cap. V. Fīnis.]

284. Direct Discourse gives the exact words of a speaker or writer; as, *Caesar is coming.* Indirect Discourse gives the words of a speaker or writer as reported by another or by the same person after a verb of knowing, telling, thinking, and perceiving; as, *he says that Caesar is coming.*

Direct Discourse.	Indirect Discourse.
Belgae bellum gerunt. — *The Belgians are carrying on war.*	Dīcit Belgās bellum gerere. — *He says that the Belgians are carrying on war,* or *He says the Belgians are carrying on war,* or (literally), *He says the Belgians to be carrying on war.*

Observe: —

(1) that the indicative **gerit** in the Direct Discourse becomes the infinitive **gerere** in the Indirect Discourse.

(2) that the infinitive phrase is the direct object of **dīcit** according to § **270** (1).

(3) that **Belgae**, the subject nominative in the Direct Discourse, becomes **Belgās**, the subject accusative of the infinitive in the Indirect Discourse.

285. *RULE. — Verbs and other expressions of knowing, telling, thinking, and perceiving are followed in indirect discourse by the infinitive with subject accusative.*

USES OF THE INFINITIVE TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

286. MODEL SENTENCES.

Dīcit Belgās bellum gerere. — *He says that the Belgians are carrying on war.* Dīxit Belgās bellum gerere. — *He said that the Belgians were carrying on war.*

Observe: —

That the present infinitive represents the action as being performed at the time of the verb on which it depends.

Dīcit Belgās bellum gessisse. — *He says that the Belgians have carried on war.* Dīxit Belgās bellum gessisse. — *He said that the Belgians had carried on war.*

Observe: —

That the perfect infinitive represents the action as already performed at the time of the verb on which it depends.

Dīcit Belgās bellum gestūrōs esse. — *He says that the Belgians will carry on war.* Dīxit Belgās bellum gestūrōs esse. — *He said that the Belgians would carry on war.*

Observe: —

That the future infinitive represents the action as going to be performed after the time of the verb on which it depends, and that the participle **gestūrōs** agrees in G. N. C. with **Belgās**, the subject of the infinitive.

In all these sentences the conjunction *that* introducing the subordinate clause in English has no equivalent in the Latin sentence.

SUMMARY.

The tenses of the infinitive *present*, *perfect*, or *future* represent the action as *being performed*, *already performed*, or *going to be performed* relative to the time of the verb on which it depends.

287. VOCABULARY.

perpaucī, -ae, -a, *very few.*
singulī, -ae, -a (distributive numeral), *one each, one by one.*
omnīnō, adv., *altogether, in all.*
quā, rel. adv., *where.*
vix, adv., *hardly, scarcely, with difficulty.*

impendeō, impendēre, *overhang, threaten* (with dat.).
exeō, -īre, -iī, **-itus**, *go out, emigrate.*

288. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) With the present 3d plural active of **ēnūntiō** as an introductory verb and **sē** as subject accusative of the infinitive, form expressions of Indirect Discourse, employing each of the three active forms of the infinitive of **dūcō** and translating each as in § **286**.

(2) Do likewise with the perfect and future active of **ēnūntiō**.

289. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

Note that each infinitive phrase in sentence 1 is the direct object of the main verb according to § **270**, 1. What of the infinitive phrase in sentence 4 ?

I. (1) (*a*) Dīcit — Orgetorīgem coniūrātiōnem facere.
(*b*) Dīcet — Orgetorīgem coniūrātiōnem fēcisse.
(*c*) Dīxit — Orgetorīgem coniūrātiōnem factūrum esse.

(2) (*a*) Dīcunt — sē oppida oppūgnāre.
(*b*) Dīcent — sē oppida oppūgnāvisse.
(*c*) Dīxērunt — sē oppida oppūgnātūrōs esse.

(3) (*a*) Arbitrantur — exercitum ā sē dūcī.
(*b*) Arbitrābuntur — exercitum ā sē ductum īrī.
(*c*) Arbitrātī sunt — exercitum ā sē ductum esse.

(4) Helvētiōs iter factūrōs esse ēnūntiātum est. (5) Montēs impendēre ēnūntiāverant. (6) Dīxit sē rēgna illīs conciliātūrum.[1] (7) Ēnūntiābitur Orgetorīgem ab Helvētiīs dēlēctum

[1] **Esse** is frequently understood with the future infinitive, also with the perfect passive.

esse. (8) Arbitrātus erat Casticum rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupātūrum esse. (9) Ēnūntiāvit sē amīcum populī Rōmānī appellātum esse.

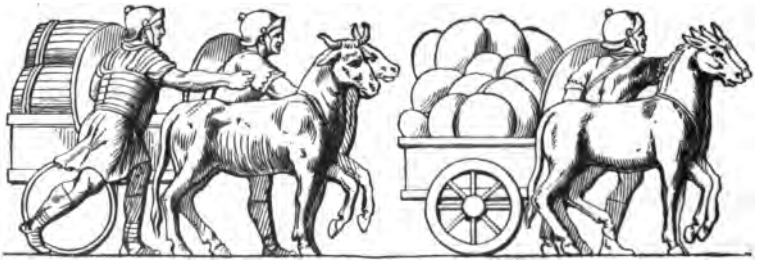
II. (1) They thought that they were being accused. (2) He thinks that they are being accused. (3) They said that their fields had been laid waste. (4) The Aedui announced that arms were being imported by the Swiss. (5) The Swiss thought that they had narrow territories. (6) It was announced that he would attack their towns.

290. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Eīs duōbus itineribus domō exīre poterant. Erant omnīnō duo itinera quibus itineribus domō exīre possent. Ūnum iter per Sēquanōs erat inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, angustum et difficile, quā singulī carrī vix[1] dūcerentur.[2] Perpaucī facile eōs prohibēre potuērunt. Mōns autem altissimus impendēbat ut perpaucī facile prohibēre possent.[2]

[1] Caesar places this adverb before quā, thus making it very emphatic and giving a superlative force to an adverb that could not be compared. For greater emphasis Caesar also places the adverb facile before perpaucī. Compare the position of these adverbs in the above and in the text in § 291.

[2] A clause of Result, see § 228.



Ancient Carts.

LESSON XXXIX.

DEPONENT VERBS AND ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS.

291. *The Swiss must choose one of two roads in leaving home. The first of these, with narrow passes and overhanging mountains, traverses the Sequani.*

Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent.

THE ROAD NARROW AND DIFFICULT.

292. A deponent verb is one which is passive in form but active in meaning. Deponent verbs occur in all conjugations, and in the indicative and subjunctive are conjugated exactly like the passive voice of their respective conjugations, as may be seen by reference to the App., § **24**. The participles and infinitives present peculiarities, which will be noted in the following paradigms.

293. PARADIGMS.

PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES OF DEPONENT VERBS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

	I	II	III	IV
Pres. Ind.	cōnor	vereor	sequor	potior
Pres. Inf.	cōnārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
Perf. Ind.	cōnātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

cōnāns, *attempting*	verēns, *fearing*	sequēns, *following*	potiēns, *getting control*

FUTURE.

cōnātūrus, *going-to-attempt.*	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus

PERFECT.

cōnātus, *having attempted.*	veritus	secūtus	potītus

GERUNDIVE.

cōnandus, *to be attempted.*	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

Observe: —

That deponent verbs have all four participles: (*a*) present and future participles active in both form and meaning; (*b*) perfect participles passive in form and active in meaning; (*c*) gerundives passive, not only in form, but even in meaning, notwithstanding the nature of deponent verbs.

INFINITIVES.

PRESENT.

cōnārī, *to attempt*	verērī, *to fear*	sequī, *to follow*	potīrī, *to get control*

PERFECT.

cōnātus esse, *to have attempted.*	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse

FUTURE.

cōnātūrus esse, *to be going-to-attempt.*	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

Observe : —

That deponent verbs have three instead of six infinitive forms, and that they substitute the future active infinitive for the future passive. What are wanting?

294. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Eōdem cōnsiliō ūsī sunt. — *They adopted the same plan.* (2) Imperiō tōtīus Galliae potītī sunt. — *They got control of the whole of Gaul.*

Observe : —

That in the English sentences *plan* and *control* are the direct objects of their verbs, while their Latin equivalents are put in the ablative though translated as direct objects.

295. *RULE.* — **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** *and* **vescor,** *with their compounds, govern an ablative translated as direct object.*

296. VOCABULARY.

vadum, -ī, n., *ford, shoal.*
expedītus, **-a**, **-um**, *unencumbered, easy.*
extrēmus, **-a**, -um, *farthest, most distant.*
nōnnūllus, **-a**, **-um**, *some.*
nūper, adv., *recently.*

fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus, *flow.*
orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *rise.* See § **107.**
pācō, 1, *subdue, pacify.*

297. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **id vadum.**

(2) Write synopses of the following verbs, giving infinitives and participles with meanings: **arbitror** in the 1st plural and **ūtor** in the 2d plural.

(3) Write infinitives and participles only of **orior.**

298. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Frūmentum, quō Helvētiī nōn ūsī erant, combustum est. (2) Belgae armīs, quae undique coēmerant, nōn ūsī sunt. (3) Nōnnūllīs oppidīs, quae nūper līberāvimus, potītī sumus. (4) Omnī

frūmentō, quod nōn combusserant, ūtī cōnstituērunt. (5) Dīxit Rauracōs Tulingīs persuāsisse ut eōdem cōnsiliō ūterentur. (6) Dīxit sōlem orīrī. (7) Dīxērunt sē extrēmīs vadīs Rhodanī nōn ūsūrōs esse. (8) Imperiō hōrum fīnium Helvētiī eō diē potītī erant. (9) Rauracīs persuādēre cōnābuntur ut omnia sua oppida ad duodecim numerō exūrant. (10) Helvētiī frūmentō, quod sēcum portāverant, ūtī nōn potuērunt.

II. (1) They will decide not to use this grain. (2) They thought that all hope had been taken away by the return of Orgetorix. (3) The Swiss are carrying from home all the grain that they will use. (4) They had thought that they would get control of all the towns of the Belgians. (5) The troops, which we led to Geneva, had used all the grain.

299. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Alterum iter per nostram prōvinciam erat multō[1] facilius atque expedītius. Inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit. Allobrogēs ā populō Rōmānō nūper pācātī erant et ob eam causam nōn erant amīcī. In fīnibus Allobrogum Rhodanus nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.

[1] Neuter singular ablative, translate *much*.

LESSON XL.

ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE OF QUALITY. — DECLENSION OF *VĪS*.

300. *The second road affords easy access to the territories of the Allobroges, who on account of a recent defeat are hostile to Rome.*

Alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.

301. PARADIGM.

vīs, *force, strength.*

BASE : **vi-**.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nominative	**vīs**	**vīrēs**
Genitive	**vīs**	**vīrium**
Dative	**vī**	**vīribus**
Accusative	**vim**	**vīrēs**
Ablative	**vī**	**vīribus**

The genitive and dative singular of **vīs** are rarely found.

302. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Allobrogēs { bonō animō / bonī animī } in populum Rōmānum nōn erant.

— *The Allobroges were not in good humor towards the Roman people.*

(2) Trium mēnsium molita cibāria domō efferunt. — *They carry from home flour for three months.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 the bracketed phrase is used to describe the **Allobrogēs** by denoting a Quality; that this phrase contains both an adjective and a noun and is expressed by either the genitive or ablative. Unlike all other ablatives heretofore studied, the ablative of quality modifies nouns, either directly or as predicate.

(2) that in sentence 2 **mēnsium** denotes the Measure of Time, is modified by a numeral **trium**, and is expressed only by the genitive.

303. *RULES.* — 1. *The genitive or ablative is used to denote quality but only when modified by an adjective.*

2. *The genitive of quality with numerals is used to define measure of time, length, etc., and is then known as the genitive of measure.*

304. VOCABULARY.

Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, m., plu., a Gallic tribe in the north of the province.
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.
vīs, vīs, f., *force*, *strength*, *violence*.
bonus, **-a**, **-um**, *good*.
quālis, **-e**, interrog. adj., *what sort of?*
nōndum, adv., *not yet*.
vel, coördinate conj., *or*; **vel** . . . **vel**, *either* . . . *or*.

eō, īre, īvī or iī, itus, *go*.
exīstimō, 1, *think*, *believe*.
patior, patī, passus sum, *permit*, *endure*.
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see*; passive, *be seen*, therefore, *seem*, *appear*.

305. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write with meanings the infinitives and participles of **videō** and **patior**, noting that the latter is a deponent of the Third Conjugation in **io**.

(2) Write synopses of **videō** in the 2d singular active and **patior** in the 3d plural.

(3) Decline **pōns** after reviewing **pars** in § **60**.

306. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Helvētiī iter trium mīlium passuum per fīnēs Sēquanōrum fēcerant. (2) Trānsīre Rhodanum, flūmen māgnā lātitūdine, cōnātī sunt. (3) Exīstimābant Orgetorīgem esse māgnā auctōritāte apud Helvētiōs. (4) Auctōritāte Orgetorīgis inductī, dē suīs fīnibus exīre cōnstituērunt. (5) Helvētiī arbitrābantur sē montibus altissimīs continērī. (6) Hōs agrōs, quī erant māgnā lātitūdine, vāstāre nōn poterant. (7) Dumnorīgī, quī erat māgnae auctōritātis in eius cīvitāte, persuāsit. (8) Cīvitās eum causam dīcere vī cōget. (9) Illō frūmentō omnī ūtentur. (10) Quālis populus erant Helvētiī?

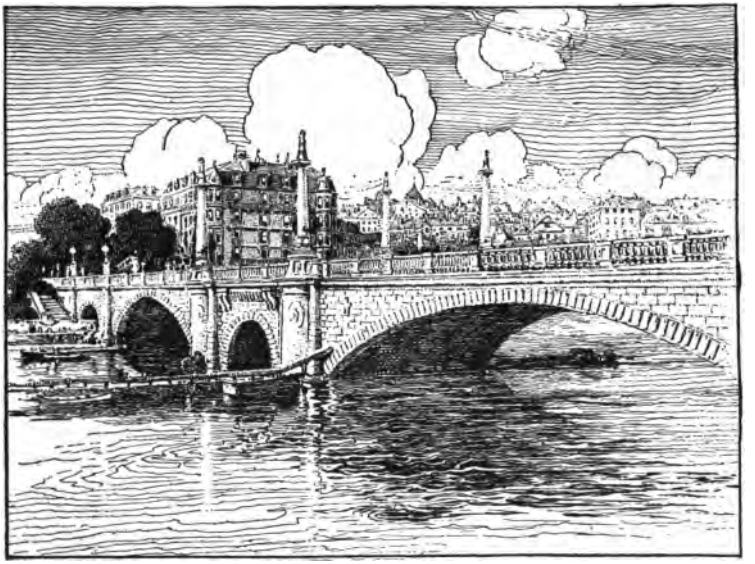
(In the following sentences, translate all expressions of quality without measure by both genitive and ablative as in Model Sentence (1), § **302**.)

II. (1) From this village a bridge of great length extends to the town. (2) The Swiss, who are (men) of great bravery, will get control of all this territory. (3) They will lead with them an army of three thousand men. (4) The army had made a

march of two miles altogether that day. (5) We had used weapons of great length. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence containing an ablative or genitive of quality the question in sentence 10, part I.]

307. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Genāva est extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque fīnibus Helvētiōrum. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet.



THE PRESENT BRIDGE AT GENEVA.

Allobrogēs nūper pācātī erant et nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidēbantur. Quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur (transl. as if vidēbantur), Helvētiī sēsē Allobrogibus persuāsūrōs esse exīstimābant. Exīstimābant Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs vel eōs vī coāctūrōs. Helvētiī Allobrogēs vī coāctūrī erant ut eōs per fīnēs īre paterentur.

LESSON XLI.

COMPARISON OF CERTAIN IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. — THE VERB *EŌ*.

LEGIŌNĀRIUS EXPEDĪTUS.

306. *The Swiss plan to cross the Rhone at Geneva by persuasion or force, believing that the recently subjugated Allobroges will grant them the right of way.*

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur.

309. **Celer, celeris, celere** (base **celer-**) is a Third Declension adjective of Three Terminations. Memorize its declension in the App., §**10**; also declension of **līber** in the App., §**8**. Note their comparison below.

celer, celeris, celere	**celerior, -ius**	**celerrimus, -a, -um**
swift	*swifter*	*swiftest* or *very swift*
līber, lībera, līberum	**līberior, -ius**	**līberrimus, -a, -um**
free	*freer*	*freest* or *very free*

Observe: —

That the comparative of the above adjectives is formed regularly by adding **-ior** and **-ius** to the base, but that the superlative is formed by adding **-rimus** to the masculine singular nominative of the positive.

All adjectives ending in **-er** are thus compared.

310. **facilis, -e** (base **facil-**), *easy;* **facilior, -ius,** *easier;* **facillimus, a, -um,** *easiest.*

Observe: —

That the comparative of this adjective is formed regularly, but that the superlative is formed by adding **-limus** to the base.

The following adjectives are similarly compared: **difficilis**, *difficult*, **dissimilis**, *unlike*, **gracilis**, *slender*, **humilis**, *low*, **similis**, *like*.

311. PARADIGM.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Eō**.

eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itus**, *go*.

PRESENT STEM: **ī**.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. eō	īmus
2. īs	ītis
3. it	eunt

SYNOPSIS OF **Eō** WITH INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	INFINITIVES.
PRES.	eō	eam	iēns (base **eunt-**) Gen. euntis	īre
IMP.	ībam	īrem		
FUT.	ībō		itūrus	itūrus esse
PERF.	īvī or iī	īverim (ierim)		īvisse (īsse)
PLUP.	īveram (ieram)	īvissem (issem)	Gerundive eundum (no m. or f.)	
FUTP.	īverō (ierō)			

Transitive compounds of **eō** are fully conjugated in the passive. **Trānsītur, trānsitum est**, and the present infinitive **trānsīrī** occur frequently.

Observe: —

(1) that **ī**, the present stem of **eō**, becomes **e** before a vowel in the present indicative and present subjunctive.

(2) that **eō** forms its future and imperfect indicative by adding to the present stem the tense signs of the First and Second Conjugations and the personal endings.

(3) that the **v** may be dropped in the forms based on the perfect stem. This letter is regularly dropped in compounds, as **trānsierant**.

312. VOCABULARY.

Kalendae, -ārum, f., plu., *Kalends*, the first day of the month.
rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).
ante, prep. governing acc., *before*.
Aprīlis, -e, *April*, *of April*.
celer, -is, -e, *swift*.
līber, -a, -um, *free*.
quīntus, -a, -um, *fifth*.
conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come together*, *assemble*.

313. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Compare fully the adjectives: **difficilis, dissimilis, gracilis, humilis, similis.**

(2) Write synopses of **trānseō** in the 3d singular active and **exeō** in the 3d plural active, noting particularly the warning contained in the last sentence of § 311, (3).

(3) Decline fully the present participle of **eō**, noting in § 311 how the base differs from the nominative.

314. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Difficillimīs itineribus nōn ūtī cōnstituērunt. (2) Flūmen māgnā lātitūdine trānsīre cōnābimur. (3) Caesar dīcit flūmen Rhodanum nōn nūllīs locīs trānsīrī. (4) Oppidīs incēnsīs, itinere facillimō domō exīre cōnātī sunt. (5) Helvētiī ē suīs fīnibus exiērunt ut līberiōrēs essent. (6) Ēnūntiāvit arma Belgārum esse simillima armīs Helvētiōrum. (7) Reliquō frūmentō combustō, ad alteram rīpam Rhodanī trānsībunt. (8) Sociī dīxērunt sē esse amīcōs Belgīs. (9) Cōnstituērunt sē eō frūmentō nōn ūsūrōs esse. (10) Arbitrātī sunt reditiōnem domum celerrimam futūram esse.

II. (1) The roads by which we went home were very easy. (2) They announced that their towns were the freest of all Gaul. (3) Caesar thought that he would cross this very swift river. (4) After the most difficult roads have been seized, the Swiss will assemble at Geneva. (5) They crossed this river by the easiest ford. (6) The same river was crossed by our soldiers by means of a bridge.

315. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Omnēs rēs ad profectiōnem comparātae sunt. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt. Diem dīcunt, quā[1] diē (=ut eā diē) omnēs ad rīpam Rhodanī conveniant. Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs,[2] Lūciō Pīsōne, Aulō Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

[1] **quā**: a relative adjective introducing a relative clause of purpose.

[2] The fifth day before the first of April, that is, the twenty-eighth of March, counting according to the Roman system the twenty-eighth and the first as two of the five days.

LESSON XLII.

ABLATIVE OF MANNER. — *CUM* TEMPORAL.

316. *The Swiss name March 28, 58 B.C. as the date of assembling.*

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant: is diēs erat, a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus. [Cap. VI. Fīnis.]

CONFLUENCE OF THE RHONE AND ARVE AT GENEVA.

317. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Cum virtūte
Māgnā virtūte
or
Māgnā cum virtūte } resistimus { *With bravery* or *Bravely*,
With great bravery, or
Very bravely, do we resist.

Observe: —

That in the above sentence Manner is expressed by the Ablative with the preposition **cum** when the noun in the phrase is not modified by an adjective, but that **cum** is preferably omitted when the noun is so modified. This is called the Ablative of Manner.

318. *RULE.* — *The manner of an action is denoted by the ablative with* **cum**, *but* **cum** *may be omitted when the ablative is modified by an adjective.*

319. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Cum in Galliam iter facient, oppida vīcōsque incendent. — *When they make the march into Gaul, they will burn their towns and villages.* (2) Cum magistrātūs multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est. — *While the magistrates were assembling from the country a large number of men, Orgetorix died.*

Observe: —

(1) that in these sentences the conjunction **cum** means *when* (its usual meaning) and introduces a clause expressing time.

(2) that in sentence 1 the verb of the subordinate clause refers to future time and takes the indicative.

(3) that in sentence 2 the verb of the subordinate clause refers to past time and takes the subjunctive.

320. *RULE.* — *A temporal clause with* **cum**, *when referring to present or future, regularly takes the indicative; when referring to the past, generally takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.*

321. VOCABULARY.

Caesar, Caesaris, m., *Caesar*.
legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion*, corresponding roughly to a brigade in modern armies.
mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier*.
urbs, urbis, f., *city*, always referring to Rome in Caesar.
ulterior, **-ius**, comp. adj., *farther*.

imperō, 1, *command* (see § 254).
mātūrō, 1, *hasten, make haste*.
nūntiō, 1, *announce*.
perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *get through, arrive, reach* (with prep. ad and acc.).
rescindō, rescindere, rescidī, rescissus, *tear down, destroy*.

322. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **mīles** and **legiō**.

(2) Write a synopsis of **perveniō** in the 3d plural active and write out with meanings the infinitives and participles of **nūntiō**.

323. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Cum Genāvam iter faciēmus, oppida Allobrogum māgnā vī oppūgnābimus. (2) Cum Bōiī Norēiam occupant, Noricī māgnō dolōre exeunt. (3) Cum cīvitās suum iūs vī exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorīx mortuus est. (4) Cum Casticus rēgnum māgnō perīculō occupāvisset, pācem cum fīnitimīs cīvitātibus cōnfīrmāvit. (5) Helvētiī cum omne frūmentum combussissent, ex suīs fīnibus cum spē profectī sunt. (6) Cum flūmen trānsīsset, Caesar Genāvam īre mātūrāvit. (7) Cum iter in fīnēs Celtārum facerent, frūmentō sociōrum ūsī sunt. (8) Ponte rescissō flūmen trānsīre nōn poterunt. (9) Urbe captā, nostrī mīlitēs māgnā cōpiā frūmentī potientur.

(Translate the subordinate clauses in the first three sentences below by both ablative absolute phrases and cum-clauses.)

II. (1) After they had made peace, they bravely[1] set out. (2) When they had captured the city, they burned the grain. (3) While Orgetorix was dying, the Swiss collected men from the fields. (4) When we attack[2] the town, Caesar will be in Gaul.

[1] Translate by an Ablative of Manner.

[2] Latin is very exact as to tenses. To what time does *attack* refer?

(5) While Caesar was trying to collect soldiers, the Swiss laid waste the territory of his allies with great violence.

324. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesarī[1] ēnūntiātum est eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset,[2] ab urbe proficīscī mātūrat.[3] In Galliam ulteriōrem quam māximīs[4] potest itineribus contendit. Quam māximīs[4] itineribus contendit, et ad Genāvam[5] pervenit.

Quam māximum numerum mīlitum potest tōtī prōvinciae imperat. In Galliā ulteriōre erat omnīnō legiō ūna. Pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī.

[1] Caesar now first mentions his own name, placing it in an emphatic position in the sentence. How do we make a word emphatic in English?

[2] Pluperfect, to denote action already performed at the time of the main verb.

[3] Historical present. Caesar rode on horseback, averaging ninety miles a day.

[4] Translate **quam māximīs**, *greatest possible*.

[5] Names of towns occur with **ad** or **ab** in the sense of *to* or *from* the vicinity.

FIFTH REVIEW.

I. Write in a column with meanings the Latin nouns meaning: town, house, hope, month, ally, bridge, force, bank, plan, village, building, ford. Decline consecutively the first ten of these nouns, starting (*a*) with the first and putting the adjective **nūllus** in agreement with each form, (*b*) with the second, putting the adjective **bonus** in agreement with each form. Decline in full **duo** in agreement with the plural of the eleventh word and **trēs** in agreement with the plural of the twelfth word.

II. Compare with meanings **līber** and **facilis**, reviewing the rules for their comparison in §§ **309** and **310**.

III. Write in a column with principal parts and meanings the Latin verbs from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: porter, incendiary, (ex)tol, transition, recipient, pugnacious, vision, convene, susceptible, fluent, estimate, pacify, (pre)pare, adding to this list the Latin verbs meaning: order, go, undertake, be able.

IV. Write synopses consecutively in the 3d plural of the first ten of these verbs by giving the present indicative of the first, the imperfect indicative of the second, etc., ending with the pluperfect subjunctive of the tenth.[1]

V. Tabulate with meanings the infinitives of **pācō** and **trānseō** (active only) and the participles of **exīstimō** and **iubeō**.

VI. Summarize four uses of the infinitive already studied.

VII. Tabulate in three separate columns the case constructions that modify (1) nouns, (2) adjectives, (3) verbs.

VIII. Translate the text of Lessons XXXV–XLII inclusive, pointing out all examples of the rules mentioned above.

IX. Arrange the following prepositions with meanings in two columns, one for prepositions governing the accusative, the other for those governing the ablative, noting that one of these prepositions must appear in both columns: **ab, ad, cum, dē, ex, in inter, ob, per, post, prō, trāns.**

[1] A model of this scheme will be found in the App., § 30.

LESSON XLIII.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. — DECLENSION OF *PLŪS*.

325. *Caesar hastens from Rome to Geneva and orders the destruction of the bridge across the Rhone.*

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī.

A Soldier of the Legion.

326. The following adjectives are irregular both in the comparative and the superlative: **bonus, dīves, māgnus, malus, multus, parvus, vetus.** Memorize with meanings their comparison in the App., § **12.**

327. In the following adjectives the positive rarely occurs: **exterus, inferus, posterus, superus.** Memorize with meanings their comparison in the App., § **12.**

328. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Flūmen erat celerius. — *The river was rather swift* or *too swift.* (2) Montibus altissimīs continentur. — *They are hemmed in by very high mountains.* (3) Quam māximum numerum carrōrum coēmērunt. — *They bought up the greatest possible number* (or *as great a number as possible*) *of carts.*

Observe : —

The variations possible in the translation of the comparative and superlative degrees.

329. PARADIGM.

DECLENSION OF **Plūs.**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
Nominative	——	plūs, *more*	plūrēs, { *several* or *more* }	plūra
Genitive	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dative	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Accusative	——	plūs	plūrēs, -is	plūra
Ablative	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

Plūs in the singular is always a noun (defective in the dative), and is often followed by the Genitive of the Whole. Note the genitive plural in **-ium.** **Complūrēs,** *very many,* is a compound of **plūs** having no singular and declined in the plural like **plūs** except that the neuter nominative and accusative plural may have **ia** instead of **a.**

330. VOCABULARY.

adventus, **-ūs**, m., *arrival, approach.*
lēgātus, **-ī**, m., *envoy, ambassador, lieutenant.*
maleficium, **-ī**, n., *evil deed, outrage, hostile act.*
Nammēius, -ī, m., Verucloetius, -ī, m., } Swiss envoys.
voluntās, voluntātis, f., *wish, desire, good will.*
certus, **-a**, **-um**, *certain.*
prīnceps, m., f., n., (gen., prīncipis), *first*, (as substantive), *prince.*
ūllus, **-a**, **-um**, *any, any one.*
sine, prep. governing abl., *without.*
licet, licēre, licuit, impers. verb, *it is permitted* (with dat. of pers. and inf.).
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send.*
rogō, 1, *ask, beg, request.*

331. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline the nouns **adventus** and **maleficium.**

(2) Decline **prīnceps**, a third declension adjective of One Termination, like **audāx** in the App., § 10.

(3) Write the infinitives and participles of **mittō** with meanings.

332. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Rōmānī mīlitēs optimīs armīs ūtentur. (2) Eōrum māxima oppida erant simillima nostrīs minimīs vīcīs. (3) Īnfimīs locīs captīs, nostrī mīlitēs plūribus montibus potientur. (4) Hī montēs erant altiōrēs ut[1] Helvētiī itinera occupāre nōn possent. (5) Eō tempore Germānī Helvētiōs summīs locīs prohibēre cōnābantur. (6) Īnfimī Gallōrum cum eō Genāvam Ībunt. (7) Orgetorīx quam plūrimōs mīlitēs sēcum dūcet. (8) Itinera erant longiōra et montēs erant difficiliōrēs. (9) Caesar quam māxima itinera faciet ut ad id oppidum perveniat. (10) Belgae erant summae virtūtis.

II. (1) The higher parts of these mountains will be seized by the better Swiss. (2) The best soldiers will use the worst arms. (3) The Swiss will carry with them as much grain as possible. (4) Caesar sent his best soldiers to Geneva, the worst home. (5) The arms were too long so that the soldiers could not use them.

[1] Clause of Result. By what mode must **possent** then be translated?

333. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt,[1] lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. Huius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant. Eōs mittunt quī ea dīcerent.[2] Dīcēbant sibi[3] esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere. Lēgātī rogant ut Caesaris voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

[1] **Certiōrēs factī sunt,** *were made more certain,* i.e. *were informed.*
[2] Relative Clause of Purpose.
[3] *To them it was in mind;* freely, *they had it in mind to make,* etc.

LESSON XLIV.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (continued).— FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

A Roman General Holding a Conference.

334. *The Swiss send ambassadors to ask Caesar's consent to making a march through the Province.*

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre, ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

335. The adjectives **citerior, prior, propior,** and **ulterior** have no positive. Memorize with meanings their comparison in the App., **§ 12.**

336. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adj.	lātus, -a, -um, *wide.*	lātior, -ius, *wider.*	lātissimus, -a, -um, *widest.*
	Base : **lāt-**.		Base : **lātissim-**.
Adv.	lātē, *widely.*	lātius, *more widely.*	lātissimē, *most widely.*
Adj.	līber, -a, -um, *free.*	līberior, -ius, *freer.*	līberrimus, -a, -um, *freest.*
	Base : **līber-**.		Base : **līberrim-**.
Adv.	līberē, *freely.*	līberius, *more freely.*	līberrimē, *most freely.*
Adj.	fortis, -e, *brave.*	fortior, -ius, *braver.*	fortissimus, -a, -um, *bravest.*
	Stem : **forti-**.		Base : **fortissim-**.
Adv.	fortiter, *bravely.*	fortius, *more bravely.*	fortissimē, *most bravely.*
Adj.	potēns, *powerful.*	potentior, -ius, *more powerful.*	potentissimus, -a, -um, *most powerful.*
	Stem : **potent-**.		Base : **potentissim-**.
Adv.	potenter, *powerfully.*	potentius, *more powerfully.*	potentissimē, *most powerfully.*

Observe : —

(1) that from **lātus**, an adjective of the First and Second Declension, the positive of the corresponding adverb is formed by adding **-ē** to the base.

(2) that from **fortis**, an adjective of Two Terminations of the Third Declension, the positive of the corresponding adverb is formed by adding **-ter** to the stem.

(3) that from **potēns**, an adjective of One Termination of the Third Declension, the positive of its corresponding adverb is formed by dropping the final **t** of its stem before adding **-ter**.

(4) that the comparative of each adverb is the same as the nominative neuter singular comparative of the adjective, while the superlative is in all cases formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the superlative of the adjective.

Adverbs are regularly formed and compared in this way, and in the comparative and superlative degrees they show the same variations in translation as do the same degrees of the adjectives. For these variations in translation, see § **328**.

337. VOCABULARY.

facultās, facultātis, f., *ability, opportunity.*
iniūria, -ae, f., *injustice, wrong, affront.*
iugum, -ī, n., *yoke.*
memoria, -ae, f., *memory;* memoriā tenēre, *to remember.*
inimīcus, -a, -um, *unfriendly;* when used substantively, *enemy.*
sub, prep. governing acc. or abl., *under.*

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *retire, withdraw, yield, grant.*
occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut down, kill.*
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *beat, drive, strike, rout.*
putō, 1, *reckon, think.*
temperō, 1, *regulate, restrain;* with **sē**, *refrain from.*
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, *hold.*

338. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Compare the following adjectives and the adverbs formed from them: **altus, angustus, cupidus, celer, longus, nōbilis.**

(2) Decline **facultās.**

(3) Write a synopsis of **pellō** in 2d singular active.

339. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Helvētiī haec oppida fortissimē oppūgnābant. (2) Caesar cum omnibus suīs mīlitibus in ulteriōrem Galliam celeriter ībit. (3) Haec flūmina erant proxima nostrae citeriōrī prōvinciae. (4) Nostrō exercitū pulsō, fīnitimī oppidīs potientur. (5) Illa oppida longissimē aberant ut celerrimē nōn occupārī possent. (6) Id iter erat difficillimum ut vix proficīscī possent. (7) Helvētiī amīcitiae proximārum cīvitātum cupidissimē studēbant. (8) Hī meliōres agrī lātissimē patēbant. (9) Eōrum fīnēs montibus altiōribus angustissimē continēbantur. (10) Quam māximum exercitum cōget ut bellum celerius cōnficiat.

II. (1) They attacked the nearest towns very eagerly. (2) Caesar will march very quickly through the hither province. (3) Very high mountains overhang, so that they can cross this river with difficulty. (4) Several soldiers will be led to

Geneva. (5) Caesar remembered that these roads were narrowly hemmed in by mountains.

340. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar memoriā tenēbat Lūcium Cassium[1] cōnsulem occīsum esse. Atque memoriā tenēbat exercitum eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum[2] missum esse.[3] Quod ea memoriā tenēbat, concēdendum[4] esse[3] nōn putābat. Neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī,[5] ab iniūriā et maleficiō temperātūrī erant. Neque exīstimābat hominēs inimīcō animō ab iniūriā et maleficiō temperātūrōs esse.[3]

[1] **This humiliating defeat had occurred fifty years before near Lake Geneva.**

[2] **iugum**: a sign of humiliation formed of a spear maintained in a horizontal position by two vertical supports. Under this filed the subjugated army.

[3] **Caesar omits esse with most infinitive compounds.**

[4] **nōn concēdendum**: *not to-be-granted, i.e.* ought not to be granted.

[5] **faciundī**: gerundive (future passive participle) of **faciō**. **Itineris faciundī**, *of a march to-be-made, i.e.* of making a march.

LESSON XLV.

CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ*, *NŌLŌ*, AND *MĀLŌ*.

341. *Caesar decides not to grant the request.*

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat.

342. From the verb **volō**, *I wish*, are derived **nōlō** (**nōn volō**), *I do not wish*, and **mālo** (**māgis volō**), *I wish rather, prefer*. Memorize their conjugation in the App., § **26**.

343. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Helvētiī per prōvinciam exīre volunt. — *The Swiss wish to emigrate through the province.* (2) Caesar Helvētiōs per prōvinciam exīre nōn vult. — *Caesar does not wish the Swiss to emigrate through the province.*

Observe: —

That these verbs of wishing (**volō, nōlō, mālō**) are followed by an infinitive used as object with or without a subject accusative. For this use of the infinitive, see § **270.**

344. VOCABULARY.

Īdūs, -uum, f., plu., *Ides;* the 15th of March, May, July, October; the 13th of all other months; abbr. Īd.
spatium, spatī, n., *space* (of time or place).
tamen, adv., *still, yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding.*
quis, m., f., quid, n., indef. pro., *any one, anything.*
dum, subord. conjunc., *while*, with ind.; *until*, with subjunc.
sī, subord. conjunc., *if.*

dēlīberō, 1, *think about, consider.*
intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *go between, intervene.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, *wish, rather, prefer.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, *be unwilling.*
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, *reply, answer.*
revertō, revertere, revertī, reversus, *turn back, return.* (Usually deponent except in perf., plup., and fut. perf.)
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take up, take.*
volō, velle, voluī, *wish, be willing.*

345. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write synopses of **volō** in the 2d singular, **nōlō** in the 1st plural, **mālō** in the 3d plural.

(2) Write with meanings the infinitives and participles of **sūmō.**

346. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Nōn vult, volunt, vīs. (2) Nōn vīs, nōlumus, nōlunt. (3) Māvīs, māvultis, mālunt. (4) Voluistī, voluerās, volueris. (5) Mālet, mālent, māluistis. (6) Nōluērunt, nōluerant, nōlueris.

(7) Itinera erant difficillima ut proficīscī nōllent. (8) Helvētiī facilióre itinere exīre māluērunt. (9) Caesar respondit sē velle Genāvam īre. (10) Haec loca sunt proxima ut flūmen transīre mālint. (11) Helvētiī frūmentō ūtī volébant quod sēcum portāverant. (12) Eō tempore longióre itinere ūtī mālébant.

II. (1) They will be willing, you are willing; he prefers. (2) We had been unwilling; they will have preferred, they were preferring. (3) You are unwilling; you have preferred; they were wishing. (4) The mountains were so high that they preferred to return home. (5) The Swiss preferred to send their army to Geneva. (6) He said that he had preferred to persuade the Allobroges.

347. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Caesar voluit spatium intercēdere dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, Caesar lēgātīs respondit: "Diem ad dēlīberandum[1] sūmam." Lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum esse. Sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlēs reverterentur.[2]

[1] **Ad dēlīberandum**: gerund expressing purpose; transl. as if **dēlīberāre**.
[2] **Reverterentur**: *they should return.*

LESSON XLVI.

COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADVERBS. — ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

348. *To gain time, Caesar replies that he will think it over.*

Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur. [Cap. VII. Fīnis.]

349. Certain adverbs show irregularities in one or more degrees of comparison. Memorize their comparison with meanings in the App., § **13.**

350. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Rhēnus est longior { quam Rhodanus. / Rhodanō. } *The Rhine is longer than the Rhone.*

(2) Hī montēs sunt propiōrēs Helvētiīs quam Belgīs. — *These mountains are nearer to the Swiss than to the Belgians.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 when **quam** is used, **Rhodanus** is in the nominative, the same case as the word with which it is compared; when **quam** is omitted, the word for *Rhone* is in the ablative. Either construction may be used without difference of meaning.

(2) that in sentence 2 **Helvētiīs** and **Belgīs** are both in the dative case. **Quam** can be omitted only when the former of the two things compared is in the nominative or accusative.

351. *RULE. — The comparative is followed by the ablative of comparison when* ***quam****, than, is omitted; otherwise the same case follows* ***quam*** *as precedes it.*

352. VOCABULARY.

altitūdō, altitūdinis, f., *height or depth.*
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
novem, num. adj., *nine.*
sēdecim, num. adj., *sixteen.*
interea, adv., *meanwhile.*
quam, conj., *than.*
Influō, Influere, Inflūxī, Inflūxus, *flow into.*
perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, construct.*

353. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Compare the adverb **difficile.**
(2) Decline **altitūdō** and **pēs.**
(3) Write synopses of **revertō** in the 3d singular and **respondeō** in the 3d plural active, making the former deponent in pres., imp., and fut.

354. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Helvētiī erant fortiōres reliquīs Gallīs et tōtīus Galliae plūrimum poterant. (2) Iter per Sēquanōs erat difficilius itinere per nostram prōvinciam. (3) Respondit Helvētiōs esse potentiōrēs quam Belgās. (4) Exercitum Caesaris esse māiōrem quam Helvētiōrum putābant. (5) Minōrem numerum mīlitum Helvētiīs quam Belgīs dedit. (6) Allobrogēs erant meliōre animō in Helvētiōs quam in populum Rōmānum. (7) Helvētiī armīs melius quam Belgae ūtēbantur. (8) Sēquanī longiōre itinere Allobrogibus revertērunt. (9) Sēquanī Genāvam celerius Belgīs iter facere poterunt. (10) Helvētiī id oppidum maiōre vī quam Belgae oppūgnāverant.

(Where possible, translate the following sentences in two ways.)

II. (1) The Swiss often thought they had narrower territories than the rest of the Gauls. (2) The Belgians will march to Geneva with better soldiers than the other Gauls. (3) Orgetorix was far richer than the other Swiss. (4) The Belgians were farther away than the Aquitanians. (5) The Swiss are nearer to the Allobroges than to the Germans. (6) The army of Orgetorix was larger than Caesar's.

355. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque,[1] quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Mūrum fossamque ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, perdūcit. Mīlia passuum XIX mūrum[2] fossamque perdūcit. Mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim[3] fossamque perdūcit.

[1] **Militibus**: an Ablative of Means. Persons may be regarded as means when used as such by a superior.

[2] Not a continuous wall, but only at points where the river banks were not steep enough to form natural fortifications.

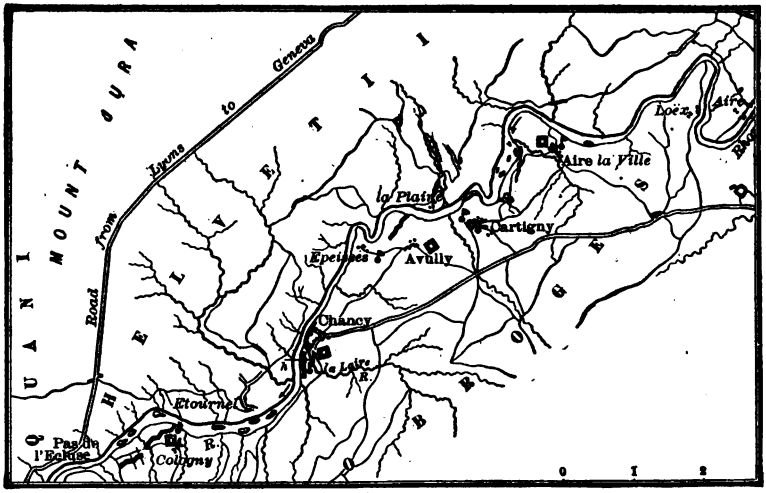
[3] The combined height of the wall and depth of the ditch. Note meaning of **altitūdō**.

LESSON XLVII.

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

356. *Caesar constructs a long line of fortifications along the banks of the Rhone.*

Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit.



THE LINE OF FORTIFICATIONS ALONG THE RHONE.

357. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt quī haec dīcerent. — *They sent to him envoys to say this* (literally, *who should say*). (2) Praesidia disposuit quō facilius eōs prohibēre posset. — *He placed at intervals garrisons in order to be able to check them more easily* (literally, *by which he might the more easily check them*).

Observe: —

(1) that the subordinate clause in each of the above sentences expresses purpose and is introduced by a relative pronoun.

(2) that in sentence 1 the relative refers to a preceding antecedent and is the subject of the subordinate clause, while in sentence 2 the clause of purpose contains a comparative and the relative is in the ablative case.

358. *RULES.* — 1. *Relative clauses of purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun* ***quī*** *or a relative adverb (****ubi****, ****unde****). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.*

2. *The ablative* ***quō*** *(=****ut eō****) is used as a conjunction in purpose clauses which contain a comparative.*

359. **VOCABULARY.**

castellum, -ī, n., *little camp, fort, redoubt.*
exemplum, -ī, n., *example.*
opus, operis, n., *work, earthwork, fortification.*
praesidium, -ī, n., *garrison, protection, guard.*
invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling, reluctant.*

commūniō, -mūnīre, -mūnīvī, -mūnītus, *fortify strongly, construct.*
dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *set at intervals, distribute.*
negō, 1, *say no, deny, refuse.*
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus, *expose to view, show.*
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, *come.*

360. **WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Put the reflexive pronoun in agreement with the adjective **invītus** and decline together, assuming the gender to be masculine.

(2) Decline **praesidium** and **opus**.

(3) Write synopses of the following verbs: **commūniō** in 1st plural passive; **dispōnō** in 2d singular active; **veniō** in the 3d plural active.

(4) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **ōstendo**.

361. **EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) Orgetorīx lēgātōs mīsit quī sociīs populī Rōmānī persuādērent. (2) Belgae flūmen trānsiērunt ut (or quī) agrōs

vāstārent. (3) Orgetorīx dēlēctus est quī sibi lēgātiōnem susciperet. (4) Omne frūmentum incendērunt quō celerius iter facerent. (5) Omnem suum exercitum sēcum dūcet quō facilius sē ēripiat. (6) Arma nōn habēbant quibus oppida oppūgnārent. (7) Caesar facillimō itinere ūsus est quō celerius ad fīnēs Helvētiōrum pervenīret. (8) Orgetorīx Helvētiīs facile persuādet ut cum fīnitimīs cīvitātibus pācem cōnfīrment. (9) Armīs Helvētiōrum ūsī sunt quibus oppida oppūgnābant. (10) Armīs suīs ūsī sunt quibus oppida oppūgnārent.

(In the sentences below, translate all subordinate clauses not containing a comparative by both **ut** and **quī**.)

II. (1) Soldiers were sent to capture the grain of the Gauls. (2) Envoys came to persuade the Swiss to make peace. (3) That they might reach home more quickly, they set out by the easiest roads. (4) The best men were chosen to plead the case. (5) Ten thousand men were collected to rescue Orgetorix. (6) That they might cross the river more quickly, they wished to use the fords.

362. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit. Praesidia dispōnit[1] et castella commūnit quō facilius prohibēre posset. Ea omnia fēcit quō facilius, sī sē[2] invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit. Lēgātī ad eum revertērunt. Ubi lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē posse iter per prōvinciam ūllī dare. Mōre[3] et exemplō populī Rōmānī iter per prōvinciam ūllī dare nōn potest. Ostendit sē eōs prohibitūrum esse sī vim facere cōnentur.

[1] **Historical present. How does this affect the tense of posset?**

[2] **sē invītō**: an Ablative Absolute with *being* understood; literally, *he being unwilling*, i.e. *against his will*.

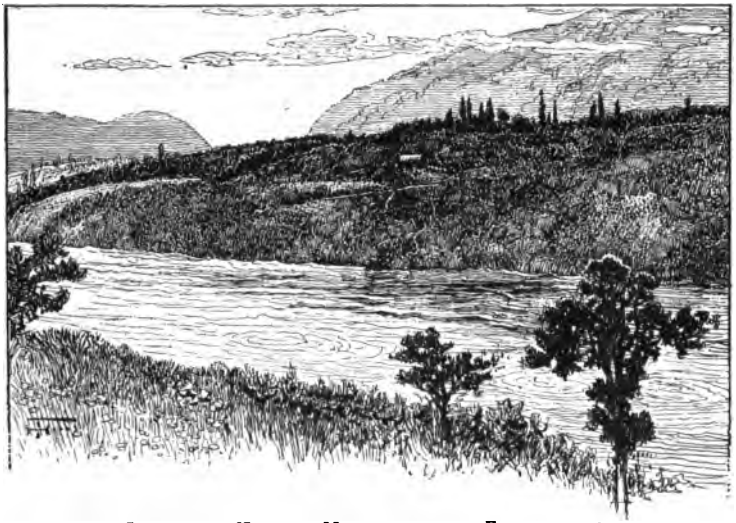
[3] **Mōre et exemplō**: Ablative of Cause, sometimes called accordance, transl. *in accordance with*, etc.

LESSON XLVIII.

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.

363. *Caesar distributes garrisons along the Rhone and fortifies weak points so as to resist the Swiss.*

Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit.



SOME OF THE NINETEEN MILES NEEDING NO FORTIFICATIONS.

364. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Alterum iter erat multō facilius. — *The second road was much easier* (literally, *easier by much*). (2) Hōc iter est decem mīlibus passuum longius quam illud. — *This road is ten miles longer than that* (literally, *longer by ten miles*).

Observe: —

That the ablatives **multō** and **mīlibus** express the degree of difference between the objects compared.

365. *RULE. — Degree of difference is denoted by the ablative with comparatives and words implying comparison.*

366. VOCABULARY.

cōnātus, -ūs, m., *attempt.*
concursus, -ūs, m., *a running together, rally, assemblage.*
mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis, f., *fortification.*
nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship.*
ratis, ratis, f., *raft.*
complūrēs, -ium, plu., *several, very many.* For dec. see § **329.**
interdiū, adv., *during the day, by day.*
noctū, adv., *at night.*
numquam, *never;* nōn numquam, *sometimes.*

dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus, *throw* or *cast down;* spē dēiectus, *disappointed in a hope.*
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, —, *desist from, stop, cease.*
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *join.*
perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break through, force a passage.*
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repel.*

367. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **concursus, mūnītiō,** and the combination **complūrēs nāvēs.**

(2) Write a synopsis of **dēiciō** in the 2d singular active and **iungō** in the 2d plural passive.

(3) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **repellō.**

368. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Rhēnus erat multīs mīlibus passuum longior Rhodanō. (2) Helvētiī multō celerius quam Belgae contendērunt. (3) Nostrī mīlitēs iter decem mīlibus passuum longius quam Belgae fēcērunt. (4) Hī montēs nōn minus tribus mīlibus passuum ā nostrīs oppidīs aberant. (5) Hōc iter est multō facilius ut domō proficīscī possint. (6) Sociīs repulsīs, Helvētiī cōnātū iam dēstitērunt. (7) Caesar tum cōnstituit sē Genāvam faciliōre itinere profectūrum esse. (8) In Galliā viae (*roads*) multīs pedibus angustiōrēs sunt quam in prōvinciā. (9) Nostrae nāvēs erant multō celeriōrēs nāvibus Gallōrum.

II. (1) We shall attack Noreia much more eagerly than Geneva. (2) The Swiss were much braver than the rest of the Gauls. (3) The mountains are much higher in Gaul than in the province. (4) The road through the mountains was much longer than (that) through the fields. (5) Our weapons were two feet longer than (those) of the Gauls. (6) The mountains are less than ten miles away from the river.

369. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī sunt. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī,[1] nāvēs iūnxērunt et complūrēs ratēs fēcērunt. Aliī,[2] nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, cōnātī sunt[3] sī perrumpere possent. Aliī[2] vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, cōnātī sunt[3] sī perrumpere possent. Nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī[3] sunt. Sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī sunt. Operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī,[1] hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

[1] Note that this form is a perfect passive participle.

[2] Aliī . . . aliī: *some . . . others.* The first aliī is understood in the text in §370.

[3] Supply "to see" after cōnātī sunt.

LESSON XLIX.

CUM CAUSAL AND *CUM* CONCESSIVE.

370. *The Swiss attempt to cross the Rhone by using boats, constructing rafts, and by wading.*

Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. [Cap. VIII. Fīnis.]

A Fording Place over the Rhone.

371. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Cum Helvētiī virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae potīrī volēbant. — *Since the Swiss excelled all in bravery, they wished to get control of the whole of Gaul.* (2) Hīs cum persuādēre non possent, lēgātōs mīsērunt. — *Since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors.* (3) Cum fortissimē resisterent, tamen repulsī sunt. — *Although they resisted most bravely, yet they were repulsed.*

Observe: —

That **cum** meaning *since* or *although* is followed by the subjunctive. Such clauses are called causal or concessive according as **cum** means *since* or *although.*

372. *RULE.* — *A* **cum** *clause expressing cause or concession has its verb in the subjunctive.*

373. VOCABULARY.

angustiae, -ārum, f. plu., *narrows, narrow pass, straits.*
dēprecātor, dēprecātōris, m., *intercessor.*
grātia, -ae, f., *favor, goodwill, influence.*
largītiō, largītiōnis, f., *lavish giving, bribery.*
sponte, f., abl. of a defective noun, *of one's own accord, willingly.*
via, -ae, f., *way, route, road.*
cum, conj., *when, while, since, although.*
propter, prep. governing acc., *on account of.*

impetrō, 1, *obtain one's wish.*
relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictus, *leave behind, abandon.*

374. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **grātia** in singular and **augustiae** in plural.

(2) Write a synopsis of **impetrō** in 1st plural active and **relinquō** in 1st plural passive.

(3) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **repellō**.

375. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Cum oppida nōn caperet, tamen Caesar agrōs vāstābat. (2) Helvētiī, cum frūmentum sēcum nōn portāre possent, id incendērunt. (3) Cum oppidum māgnā vī oppūgnārent, Helvētiī tamen nōn cēpērunt. (4) Caesar, cum quam māximīs itineribus Genāvam contendat, celerius Helvētiīs perveniet. (5) Cum optimīs cōnsiliīs ūterentur, tamen spē dēiectī sunt. (6) Cum propter angustiās hāc viā īre nōn posset, flūmen trānsīre mātūrāvit. (7) Cum Orgetorīx omnēs suōs clientēs ad iūdicium coēgisset, sē ēripuit. (8) Cum omnēs rēs ad profectiōnem comparātae essent, diem dīxērunt. (9) Cum Helvētiī inimīcō animō sint, Caesar eōs per prōvinciam īre nōn patitur. (10) Cum illī repulsī essent, tamen multōs annōs resistēbant.

(Translate the subordinate clauses of the following first three sentences by the ablative absolute as well as by **cum** causal or concessive.)

II. (1) Though their fields were laid waste, the Sequanians did not resist. (2) Since the day of their departure had been appointed, they collected troops. (3) Though their army had been

defeated, they resisted very bravely three months. (4) They tried to march through our province, since the road was much better. (5) Since the Swiss carried with them a large quantity of grain, they could not march very quickly.

376. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Sēquanīs invītīs, propter angustiās per Sēquanōs īre nōn poterant. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt. Lēgātōs mīsērunt ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat. Quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, Dumnorīx erat amīcus Helvētiīs.

SIXTH REVIEW.

I. List in a column and number with meanings the Latin nouns from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: military, advent, malefactor, memorial, legionary, altitude, opera, itinerary, naval, pedal, principal, voluntary, faculty, injury, spacious, castle, munition, concourse, (sub)jugate, adding to this list the Latin nouns meaning: garrison, raft, missile.

II. List in a column and number the Latin adjectives meaning: good, great, bad, old, little, outward, below, following, above, much. Combine in G. N. C. agreement the comparative of each of these adjectives with the correspondingly numbered noun in I. Then decline these combinations consecutively, starting with the first.

III. Combine with the next ten nouns in I the superlative of each of the adjectives, the first adjective with the eleventh noun, the second adjective with the twelfth noun, etc. Then decline these combinations consecutively, starting with the first. While writing out such exercises, the student should prepare himself to give orally the meaning of each combination in its declined form.

IV. Combine in G. N. C. agreement and decline together in the plural the perfect passive participle of **iungō** and the Latin word for *raft;* in the singular only the present participle of **repellō** and the Latin word for *missile.*

V. List in a column and number with meanings and principal parts the Latin verbs from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: refer, dejection, tenant, mission, imperative, response, (as)sume, volition, concession, temperance, repel, license, junction, intercession, revert, repellent, dispose, ostentation, mature, desist, (e)nunciate, adding to this list the Latin verbs meaning: arrive, come, kill.

VI. Write consecutive synopses as directed in the last review lesson of the first ten verbs of the list just formed in the third singular active and in the second plural passive, indicating by blanks defective forms.

VII. Tabulate consecutively with meanings the infinitives and participles of the last ten[1] verbs of the list, giving the present active infinitive of the fifteenth verb, the perfect active infinitive of the sixteenth, etc., ending with the gerundive or future passive participle of the twenty-fourth.[2]

VIII. List the Latin adverbs formed from the following adjectives and compare them: **celer, cupidus, nōbilis, bonus, facilis, malus, māgnus, multus, parvus, propior.**

IX. Decline in full in the positive the following adjectives of the Third Declension: **potēns, facilis, celer.**

X. Review the text at the head of Lessons XLIII–XLIX, pointing out all examples of the above rules occurring in these chapters.

XI. Translate into Latin the following phrases: after the return, under the mountain, without arms.

[1] The student will hardly need to be reminded that there are six infinitives (three active and three passive) and four participles, making ten in all, just enough to allow each verb one form.

[2] A model of this scheme will be found in the App., § **30**. Note that this drill may be profitably extended by starting with other verbs than the one suggested.

LESSON L.

THE VERB *FERŌ* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

377. *The Swiss seek the consent of the Sequani, to use the narrow Pas de l'Ecluse.*

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat.

THE NARROW PASS THROUGH THE SEQUANI.

378. Memorize the conjugation of the irregular verb **ferō** in the App., § **29**.

379. The following compounds of **ferō** should be noted: —

Prefix.	Present.	Perfect.	Perf. Part.	Meaning.
ab, *from*	auferō	abstulī	ablātus	*bear from, remove.*
ad, *to*	afferō	attulī	allātus	*bear up to, convey.*
con (cum), *with*	cōnferō	contulī	collātus	*bring together, collect.*
dis, *apart*	differō	distulī	dīlātus	*bear apart, differ.*
ē (ex), *out of*	efferō	extulī	ēlātus	*bear* or *carry out.*
in, *in* or *upon*	īnferō	intulī	illātus	*bear upon* or *against, inflict.*
ob, *towards*	offerō	obtulī	oblātus	*bear towards, offer, present.*
re, *back*	referō	rettulī, retulī	relātus	*bear back, bring back.*
sub, *under*	sufferō	sustulī	sublātus	*bear from beneath, sustain, endure.*
	tollō	sustulī	sublātus	*lift up, remove.*

Observe: —

The phonetic changes in prefixes compounded with **ferō** and note how the prepositions when used as prefixes add to the verb much the same significance as they show when construed with cases.

As the present infinitives undergo no phonetic changes not indicated in the present indicative, they are not given in the above table.

380. VOCABULARY.

beneficium, -ī, n., *service, kindness.*
obses, obsidis, m. or f., *hostage* (usually child of a prince).
novae rēs, *new things*, i.e. *a revolution.*
novus, **-a**, **-um**, *new* (no comparative); sup. novissimus, *last.*
itaque, conj., *and so, therefore.*
obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus, *bind, put under obligation.*

381. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **beneficium** and **obses.**

(2) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **tollō.**

(3) Write synopses of **afferō** in the 3d singular active; **cōnferō** in the 3d plural passive.

382. **EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) Fert, fertur, fers, ferris. (2) Adferet, adferētur; efferēmus, efferēmur. (3) Īnferēbat, īnferēbātur; referēbātis, referēbāminī. (4) Distulistī, dīlātī estis; contuleris; collātī eritis. (5) Rettuleris; contulērunt; sustulerint; tollēbant. (6) Oppidīs captīs, omnis spēs sublāta est. (7) Helvētiī māgnam cōpiam frūmentī domō extulērunt. (8) Helvētiī frūmentum in oppida contulērunt ut eō in itinere ūterentur. (9) Montibus undique continēbāmur ut bellum aegerrimē gererēmus. (10) Helvētiī frūmentum sēcum extulērunt ut omnem spem domum reditiōnis tollerent.

II. (1) You collect; you remove; they carried out. (2) We shall be borne back; we offered; they were sustaining. (3) They will be taken away; you will have collected; we shall be carried out. (4) They carried their arms out with them. (5) They brought back with them the grain which they did not use.

383. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Adductus cupiditāte rēgnī, novīs rēbus studēbat. Quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō obstrictās habēre volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat. Ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per suōs fīnēs Helvētiōs īre patiantur. Perficit ut inter sē obsidēs dent. Sēquanī obsidēs dant nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. Helvētiī obsidēs dant ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

LESSON LI.

DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR.

384. *The Sequani grant the Swiss the right of way.*

Et, cupiditāte rēgnī adductus, novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs

īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant. [Cap. IX. Fīnis.]

385. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) (*a*) Helvētiī arma habent. — *The Swiss have arms.*
(*b*) Helvētiīs sunt arma. — *To the Swiss are arms*, or *The Swiss have arms.*

(2) (*a*) Helvētiī habēbant in animo
(*b*) Helvetiīs in animō erat
had (it) *in mind to march.*
} iter facere. — *The Swiss*

Observe: —

(1) that in group 1 the idea of possession may be expressed in two ways: (*a*) with the verb **habeō** and the possessors in the nominative, (*b*) with the verb **sum** and the possessors in the dative.

(2) that in group 2 the same variety of expression is possible: Swiss as nominative with **habeō** or as dative with **sum**.

Compare the English sentence, "There are two chimneys to that house."

386. *RULE. — The dative of possessor is used with the verb* ***sum****, the thing possessed being put in the nominative.*

387. VOCABULARY.

Santonēs, -um, m. plu. (Santonī, -ōrum), a Celtic tribe north of the Garonne.
Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., a Celtic tribe south of the Garonne.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike.*
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *pertaining to grain, fertile.*
inimīcus, -a, -um, *unfriendly;* as substantive, inimīcus, -ī, m., enemy.
patēns, pres. participle of pateō, used as adj., *lying open, exposed.*
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus, *know, understand, be aware.*
renūntiō, 1, *report.*

388. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline together **patēns locus**. What gender in the plural?

(2) Write synopses of **intellegō** in 3d plural active and **renūntiō** in the 3d plural passive neuter.

389. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Helvētiī multōs vīcōs habēbant. (2) Helvētiīs multī vīcī erant. (3) Māgnus exercitus erat Caesarī, māior Helvētiīs. (4) Belgīs erant māiōra oppida quam Helvētiīs. (5) Dīxērunt sibi esse in animō oppida Belgārum oppūgnāre. (6) Belgīs erant longa tēla, quibus bene ūtēbantur. (7) Helvētiīs sunt carrī et iūmenta, quae undique coēmērunt. (8) Eīs erat māgna frūmentī cōpia. (9) Helvētiī arbitrantur sibi esse angustōs fīnēs. (10) Eīs armīs, quae sibi sunt, nōn ūtentur.

(Translate each sentence below in two ways.)

II. (1) The Sequani have large and fertile fields. (2) The weapons which they have are long. (3) The Swiss said they had no other road. (4) When Caesar comes[1] to Geneva, he will have two legions. (5) The Swiss have a larger army than the Santones.

390. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Illud Caesarī renūntiātur: Helvētiī habent in animō iter facere. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō iter facere. Helvētiīs est in animō, per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere. Santonēs[2] nōn longē ā fīnibus Tolōsātium[2] absunt. Cīvitās Tolōsātium est in prōvinciā. Santonēs nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Sī id fieret (if this should happen), intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum esse. Intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs fīnitimōs habēret. Loca fīnitima erant patentia, māximēque frūmentāria. Caesar nōlēbat

[1] What tense? [2] Locate on the large map opposite page 50.

habēre hominēs bellicōsōs, inimīcōs populī Rōmānī, fīnitimōs locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs.

LESSON LII.

COMPOUNDS WITH *SUM*. — DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

391. *The Swiss intend to march into the lands of the Santones, a tribe near the Roman province.*

Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret.

392. The following compounds of the verb **sum** should be noted. All these verbs except **possum** are followed by the dative (§ **394**).

absum, *be away, be absent.*
adsum, *be at hand, be present, assist.*
dēsum, *be lacking, be missing.*
possum, *be able.*
praesum, *be at the head of, be in command,* or *in charge of.*
supersum, *be over, survive.*

393. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Bellum fīnitimīs īnferunt. — *They make war upon their neighbors.* (2) Labiēnus mūnītiōnī praeest. — *Labienus is in command of the fortification.*

Observe: —

(1) that each of the compound verbs in the above sentences governs the dative case.

(2) that the transitive verb **īnferunt** in the first sentence is followed by the accusative **bellum** as the direct object of the verb and the dative **fīnitimīs** with the preposition **in** of the compound.

(3) that the intransitive verb **praeest** is followed by the dative alone with the preposition **prae** of the compound.

394. ***RULE.*** — *The dative is used with many verbs compounded with* ***ad***, ***ante***, ***con***, ***in***, ***inter***, ***ob***, ***post***, ***prae***, ***prō***, ***sub***, ***super***, *and some with* ***circum***.

395. VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, -ium, f. plu., *the Alps.*
Aquilēia, -ae, f., Roman military station on the Adriatic sea.
hīberna, -ōrum, n. plu., *winter quarters*, with castra, *camp*, understood.
Italia, -ae, f., *Italy.*
hībernus, -a, -um, *winter* (as adj.).
quīnque, num. adj., *five.*
ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*
circum, prep. governing acc., *around.*
cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write up, enroll, enlist.*
ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductus, *lead forth.*
hiemō, 1, *pass the winter, winter.*
praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *put at the head of* or *in command of.*

396. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **hīberna** and **ea mūnītiō**.

(2) Write synopses of **contendō** in the 2d singular active and **praeficiō** in the 2d plural passive.

(3) Compare, with meanings, **māgnus, proximus, ulterior.**

397. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Helvētiī suīs sociīs nōn aderunt. (2) Tria mīlia Belgārum eī proeliō superfuērunt. (3) Germānī suīs fīnitimīs bellum īnferre volēbant. (4) Ēnūntiāvit Helvētiōs omnibus virtūte praestāre. (5) Duo lēgātī hībernīs praefectī sunt. (6) Caesar trēs lēgātōs mīsit, quī eīs hībernīs praeessent. (7) Caesar inimīcōs[1] populī Rōmānī hīs locīs fīnitimōs[2] habēre nōlēbat. (8) Cum Helvētiīs essent māgnae cōpiae, tamen nostrīs sociīs parvus exercitus aderat.

II. (1) On that day Caesar marched five miles in all, that he might aid his allies. (2) Caesar put his best lieutenant in command of the winter quarters. (3) The Germans very often waged war on the Belgians. (4) They passed the winter with the Aeduans, who were in charge of the winter quarters.

[1] Used as a noun. What case would follow if used as an adjective?
[2] Used as an adjective. What case would follow if used as a noun?

398. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Ob eās causās praeficit Titum Labiēnum lēgātum eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat. Caesar ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit. Ibi duās legiōnēs cōnscrībit. Trēs legiōnēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit. Cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat.

LESSON LIII.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

399. *Leaving Labienus in command of the fortifications, Caesar returns to northern Italy, where he enlists two legions of raw recruits, making his total force twenty thousand men.*

ROMAN LEGATUS AND AIDES.

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum ĭter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

400. The gerundive is a verbal adjective of the First and Second Declension, always agreeing in G. N. C. with a noun or pronoun, as **urbis capiendae spēs**, *the hope of taking the city* (*of the city to-be-taken*). The gerund is a verbal noun, never agreeing with but sometimes governing another noun or pronoun, as **urbem capiendī spēs**, *the hope of taking the city*. The gerund occurs in only four cases, the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative. The nominative is regularly supplied by the infinitive used as subject.

PARADIGMS OF GERUNDS.

Gen.	līberandī, *of freeing*	movendī	dīvidendī	capiendī
Dat.	līberandō, *to* or *for freeing*	movendō	dīvidendō	capiendō
Acc.	līberandum, — *freeing*	movendum	dīvidendum	capiendum
Abl.	līberandō, *by freeing*	movendō	dīvidendō	capiendō

The gerunds of **impediō** and of all verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are formed exactly like those of **capiō**.

Observe: —

That the gerunds are the same in form as the corresponding cases of the neuter gerundive, otherwise known as the future passive participle, the forms of which in § **251** should now be reviewed.

401. MODEL SENTENCES.

Nominative. Dīcere nōn est facere. — Literally, *To say is not to do. Saying is not doing* (Infinitive instead of gerund as subject).

Genitive. (1) Spem urbis capiendae habēmus. — *We have hope of taking the city* (Gerundive). (2) Spem urbem capiendī habēmus. — *We have hope of taking the city* (Gerund).

Dative. (1) Hībernīs oppūgnandīs diem dīxērunt. — *They named a day for attacking the winter quarters* (Gerundive). (2) Pūgnandō locum dēlēgerat. — *He had selected a place for fighting* (Gerund).

Accusative. (1) Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium est satis. — *Two years are enough for completing those plans* (Gerundive). (2) Ea ad proficīscendum pertinent. — *These things pertain to starting out* (Gerund).

Ablative. (1) In pāce petendā haec dīxērunt. — *In seeking peace they said this* (Gerundive). (2) Multās rēs pollicendō Helvētiīs persuādet. — *He persuades the Swiss by promising many things* (Gerund).

Observe: —

(1) that in these sentences the gerundives agree in G. N. C. with the nouns in the construction, while the gerunds are nouns themselves and in their verbal nature may govern other nouns. The nouns with which the gerundives agree take the case required by their relation to the rest of the sentence, while with gerunds the verbals themselves take the required case.

(2) that when the verb is transitive and has a direct object, the gerundive construction is to be preferred.

SUMMARY.

GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.
Verbal Noun	Verbal Adjective
Active Voice	Passive Voice
May have object	Cannot have object
Four cases	All cases
Singular number	Both numbers
Neuter gender	All genders [1]

402. VOCABULARY.

Caturīgēs, -um, m. plu. } Alpine
Ceutronēs, -um, m. plu. } tribes.
Graiocelī, -ōrum, m. plu. }

Segūsiāvī, -ōrum, m. plu., a tribe south of the Aedui.

Vocontiī, -ōrum, m. plu., a tribe south of the Allobroges.

Ocelum, -ī, n., a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

citerior, -ius, *hither, on this side.*

septimus, -a, -um, *ordinal*, (ordinal number) *seventh.*

superus, -a, -um, *above, upper.*

inde, adv., *thence* (both time and place).

extrā, prep. governing acc., *outside of, beyond.*

capiō, 3, *take;* cōnsilium capere, *to form a plan.*
petō, petere, petīvī (petiī), petītus, *ask, seek.*

403. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Compare: **citerior, extrēmus, prīmus, superus.**

(2) Tabulate with meanings the gerunds of **oppūgnō, prohibeō, petō, faciō, impediō,** and also the participles and infinitives of **cōnor.**

[1] How many possible forms will a gerundive have?

404. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Helvētiī fīnem oppidum oppūgnandī fēcērunt. (2) Helvētiī, bellandī cupidī, māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. (3) Orgetorīx erat cupidissimus rēgnī occupandī. (4) Ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātissimī erant. (5) Lēgātī ad Caesarem missī sunt pācis petendae causā.[1] (6) Gallī dē bellō Rōmānīs īnferendō cōnsilia capiēbant. (7) Caesar complūrēs diēs ad dēlīberandum sūmpsit.

II. (1) Crossing this river was very difficult. (2) Caesar formed the plan of setting out. (3) The Swiss were very desirous of waging war on their neighbors. (4) In attacking the city hope was given to our soldiers. (5) The Swiss were ready for (ad) setting out.

405. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ibi, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere nostrum exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hī complūribus proeliīs pulsī sunt. Hīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae pervenit. Ocelum est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppidum. In fīnēs Vocontiōrum diē septimō pervenit. Inde in fīnēs Allobrogum exercitum dūcit. Inde in fīnēs Segūsiāvōrum exercitum dūcit. Hī Segusiāvī sunt extrā prōvinciam Rōmānam, prīmī trāns Rhodanum.

LESSON LIV.

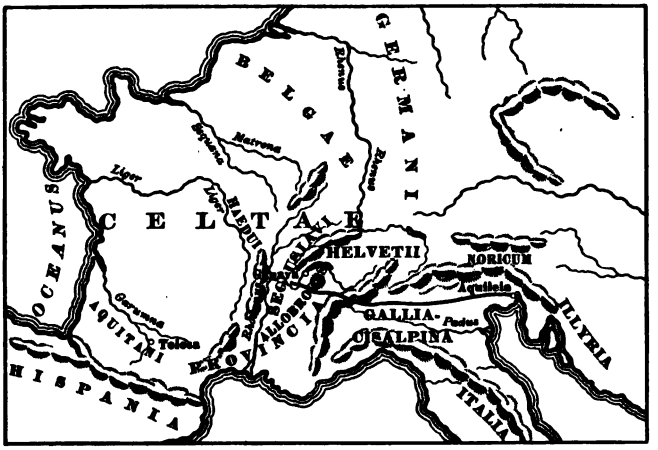
FORMATION AND USES OF SUPINES.—WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE.

406. *Crushing the opposition of the Alpine tribes, Caesar rushes to the scene of the impending war.*

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum,

[1] **causā**, *for the sake of*. This word is frequently used with the genitive.

in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit: inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī. [Cap. X. Fīnis.]



CAESAR'S ROUTE ACROSS THE ALPS.

407. The supine is a verbal noun of the Fourth Declension, having only two cases, the accusative in **um** and the ablative in **ū**. These are formed by adding **-um** and **-ū** to the participial stem.

PARADIGM OF SUPINES.

Acc.	līberātum	mōtum	dīvīsum	captum	impedītum
	to liberate	*to move*	*to divide*	*to take*	*to impede*
Abl.	līberātū	mōtū	dīvīsū	captū	impedītū
	in liberating	*in moving*	*in dividing*	*in taking*	*in impeding*

408. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Lēgātōs ad Caesarem auxilium rogātum mittunt. — *They send ambassadors to Caesar to ask for help.* (2) Perfacile factū est cōnāta perficere. — *To accomplish their attempts is very easy to do* (literally, *in the doing*). (3) Helvētiī omnēs virtūte praecēdunt. — *The Swiss excel all in bravery.*

Observe: —

(1) that **rogātum**, the accusative of the supine, expresses purpose and is used with **mittunt**, a verb of motion.

(2) that **factū**, the ablative of the supine, states in what respect the accomplishment is easy, just as **virtūte** in sentence 3 states in what respect the Swiss excel all.

409. *RULES.* — 1. *The accusative of the supine is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.*

2. *The ablative of the supine is used with a few adjectives to denote specification.*

410. Six ways of expressing purpose have already been noted in our study of Latin as follows: —

Lēgātōs mittet
(1) ut auxilium rogent.
(2) quī auxilium rogent.
(3) auxilium rogandī causā.
(4) auxilī rogandī causā.
(5) ad auxilium rogandum.
(6) auxilium rogātum.

All six expressions may be translated: *he will send ambassadors to ask for help*, or *for the purpose of asking for help.*

Note that the gerund with an object, a rather infrequent construction, occurs only in (3).

411. **VOCABULARY.**

auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help* (plu. *auxiliary troops*).
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *ward off, defend.*
populor, populārī, populātus sum, *ravage, raid.*
trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead across.*

412. **WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Decline **auxilium.**

(2) Tabulate with meanings the supines of **dēfendō, ferō, faciō, prohibeō, trādūcō,** and also the infinitives and participles of **populor** and **dēfendō.**

413. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Caesar mīsit decem mīlia mīlitum oppidum oppūgnātum. (2) Hōc est facilius dictū quam factū. (3) Exercitus vēnit agrōs Belgārum vāstātum. (4). Caesar putābat id optimum esse factū. (5) Helvētiī Orgetorīgem mīsērunt hās rēs cōnfectum. (6) Potentissimōs et fīrmissimōs Gallōrum conciliāvit ut rēgnum occupāret. (7) Aeduī, cum Helvētiī agrōs populārentur, ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. (8) Helvētiī suās cōpiās flūmen trādūxērunt agrōs Aeduōrum populandī causā. (9) Caesar cum quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit ad sociōs dēfendendōs. (10) Caesar duās legiōnēs cōnscrīpsit quibus sociōs dēfenderet.

(In the following sentences translate the expressions of purpose in as many ways as possible.)

II. (1) Orgetorix came to accomplish these things. (2) Ambassadors were sent to see Caesar. (3) Caesar sent Labienus to defend the town. (4) Caesar thought the best (thing) to do was to lead his soldiers across the river. (5) Caesar did not give the Swiss an opportunity of attacking this town.

414. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Dum Caesar erat in Ītaliā, Helvētiī iam per angustiās et per fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant. Helvētiī iam in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant et eōrum agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque (sē et suās rēs) ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium.

SEVENTH REVIEW.

I. List in a column with meanings and number the Latin nouns from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: via(duct), benefit, gracious, auxiliary, itinerary, diary, military, hostile, adding to the list the Latin words for hostage, narrow-pass, and voluntarily.

II. Decline consecutively the first ten of the above nouns, starting with the first and putting **prior** in G. N. C. agreement with each singular form and **primus** with each plural form.

III. List in a column and compare when possible the Latin adjectives meaning: farther, fertile, former, hither, nearer, new, seventh, wintry.

IV. List in a column and number with principal parts and meanings the Latin verbs from which the following words are wholly or partly derived: relinquish, studious, renunciation, intelligence, prefect, traduce, educe, petition, defend, adding to the list the verb meaning to obtain one's request.

V. Write consecutive synopses in the 1st plural active of these ten verbs.

VI. Tabulate consecutively with meanings as in the last review lesson the infinitives and participles of these ten verbs, noting that some of these verbs are defective in certain infinitive and participial forms. Write with meanings the gerunds of the first verb and the supines of the fourth.

VII. Review the rules of syntax for Dative of Possessor, Dative with Compounds, and illustrate each with an original Latin sentence properly translated.

VIII. Review the text at the head of Lessons L–LIV inclusive, pointing out in these chapters all examples of the rules mentioned above.

LESSON LV.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *FĪŌ*.—COMPOUNDS OF *FACIŌ*.

415. *During Caesar's absence, the Swiss fall upon the fields of the Aeduans, who send urgent appeals to him for help.*

Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs

populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium.

Grain Fields along the Route of the Swiss March.

416. The verb **fiō** is used as an intransitive verb (*to become* or *happen*) and also as the passive voice of **faciō**. In its latter use it may be translated passively (*to be made, be done*) even when active in form. Observe that the **i** in **fiō** is long though it occurs before another vowel. This peculiarity is found in all forms of **fiō** unless the vowel is followed by **-er**, as in the present infinitive **fierī**. Memorize the conjugation of **fiō** in the App., § **28**.

417. The following compounds of **faciō** should be noted: —

afficiō (*do to*), *affect, afflict*, Perf. Pass. Par., affectus.
cōnficiō (*make together*), *accomplish, complete*, P. P. P. cōnfectus.
interficiō (*make between*), *kill, put to death*, P. P. P. interfectus.
perficiō (*do thoroughly*), *accomplish*, P. P. P. perfectus.
praeficiō (*make before*), *put at head of*, P. P. P. praefectus.
commonefaciō (cum-mone-), *remind*, P. P. P. commonefactus.
patefaciō (pateō, *lie open*), *open, disclose*, P. P. P. patefactus.
satisfaciō (satis, *enough*), *satisfy, apologize, make restitution to* (with dative), P. P. P. satisfactus.

Observe: —

That when **faciō** is compounded with a preposition, as in the first five examples, the **-a** of the stem is modified to **-i**, producing **-ficiō**. (Compare **incipiō**, **recipiō**.) Compounds of **faciō** with verbs or adverbs, as in the last three examples, do not modify **-a** of the stem and use **fiō** in the passive, as **patefaciō**, passive **patefiō**.

Compounds of **faciō** with prepositions do not use **fiō** in forming their passive voice, but follow the model of **io** verbs of the Third Conjugation as **efficiō**, passive **efficior**.

418. VOCABULARY.

Ambarrī, -ōrum, m., plu., a Celtic tribe, a branch of the Aedui.
cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *view, sight.*
hostis, hostis, m. or f., *stranger, foreigner, enemy.*
līberī, -ōrum, m., plu., *children.*
servitūs, servitūtis, f., *slavery.*
cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, *of the same blood, kindred.*
necessārius, -a, -um, *necessary, urgent* (used substantively, *relative, friend*).
ita, adv., *so.*
paene, adv., *almost.*

abdūcō, 3, *lead away, lead back.*
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe to, ought to, be obliged to.*
dēpopulor, 1, *ravage, lay waste;* P. P. P., dēpopulātus, transl. passively.
expūgnō, 1, *take by storm, capture.*
mereor, merērī, meritus sum, *deserve, merit.*

419. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **cōnspectus** and **hostis**.

(2) Write synopses of **cōnficiō** in the 3d plural passive and **patefaciō** in the 1st plural passive.

(3) Tabulate the infinitives and participles of **dēbeō** with meanings.

420. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Facis, fīs, faciēs, fīēs, faciunt, fīunt. (2) Fēcērunt, factī sunt; cōnficiet, cōnficiētur; satisfaciunt, satisfīunt. (3) Interficiētis, interficiēminī; commonefaciēs, commonefīēs. (4) Praeficiēbātis, praeficiēbāminī; faciēbāmus, fīēbāmus. (5) Nōbilissimōs lēgātōs Caesar mittit quō facilius eam rem per-

ficiat. (6) Hostēs, cum oppidum cēpissent, obsidēs interfēcērunt. (7) Duo lēgātī hīs mūnītiōnibus praefectī sunt. (8) Caesarem certiōrem faciunt; Caesar certior fit.

II. (1) They become, they will become, you were becoming, they had become. (2) We accomplish; you will complete; they will be killed. (3) The lieutenants, whom Caesar put in charge of the fortification, were killed in that battle. (4) The Swiss were afflicted with great distress. (5) The Aedui said that their children had been led away by the Swiss.

421. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Hī lēgātī haec dīxērunt: "Ita omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritī sumus ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs Rōmānī nostrī agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint."[1] Dīxērunt ita sē dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī nōn dēbuerint,[1] ut oppida eōrum expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.[1] Ambarrī erant necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum. Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt dē suīs iniūriīs. Ambarrī haec[2] dīxērunt: "Agrīs dēpopulātīs, vim hostium ab oppidīs nōn facile prohibēmus." Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, agrīs dēpopulātīs, ab oppidīs[3] vim hostium nōn facile prohibēre.

One of the Auxilia.

[1] **Dēbuerint** is perfect subjunctive in a result clause after a past time tense. Transl. **vāstārī nōn dēbuerint**, *ought not to have been laid waste.*

[2] **Haec, ea,** and similar words when used in the neuter plural relate to a statement which is to follow and may be translated *as follows.*

[3] Note how **oppidīs** is strongly emphasized by placing it before **vim hostium.** The Romans indicated emphasis by the order of the words instead of depending upon vocal stress as we do in English.

LESSON LVI.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT.

422. *The Aeduans feel that their past services to the Romans entitle them to protection from the ravages of the Swiss barbarians.*

Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī vāstārī, līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre.

423. Just as the perfect passive participle is compounded with **sum** to form the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses, so the future active and future passive participles are compounded with **sum** to form what are known as the periphrastic conjugations.

The *First* or *Active Periphrastic* conjugation is formed by combining the future active participle with the various tenses of the verb **sum**; as, **līberātūrus sum**, *I am about to, intend to,* or *am going to liberate.* From these meanings it will be seen that the *Active Periphrastic* is future in sense and expresses expectation or intention.

The *Second* or *Passive Periphrastic* conjugation is formed by combining the gerundive, or future passive participle, with the various tenses of the verb **sum**; as, **līberandus sum**, *I am to be, must be, ought to be liberated.* From these meanings it will be seen that the *Passive Periphrastic* expresses necessity, obligation, or propriety.

In these combinations the tenses of the verb **sum** have their usual force. Note, however: **līberandus fuī**, *I was to be* or *had to be freed;* **līberandus fueram**, *I had had to be freed;* **līberandus fuerō**, *I shall have had to be freed.*

424. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Omnia Caesarī facienda erant. — *Everything had to be done by Caesar* or *Caesar had to do everything.* (2) Mōns Labiēnō capiendus est. — *The mountain is to be seized by Labienus* or *Labienus must seize the mountain.*

Observe: —

That in each of the above sentences the person who must or ought to perform the act is put in the dative. This dative is called the Dative of Agent.

425. *RULE.* — *Agency with the gerundive is expressed by the dative.*

426. VOCABULARY.

fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune, luck;* fortūnae, -ārum, f., *possessions.*
nihil, n., (an indeclinable noun), *nothing.*
possessiō, -ōnis, f., *possession, occupation.*
solum, -ī, n., *soil, ground.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *take together, use up, consume.*
dēmōnstrō, 1, *point out, explain.*
exspectō, 1, *look out, watch, wait, expect.*
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, *resolve, determine.*

427. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write synopses with meanings of **statuō** in the Active Periphrastic, 3d singular, and **cōnsūmō** in the Passive Periphrastic, 3d plural.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the participles of **dēmōnstrō** and the infinitives of **exspectō**.

428. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Orgetorīx rēgna suō exercitū conciliātūrus erat. (2) Caesar decem diēs ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrus erit. (3)[1] Praesidia Caesarī dispōnenda fuērunt quō facilius hostēs prohibēre posset. (4)[1] Līberī Aeduōrum Helvētiīs in servitūtem nōn abdūcendī erant. (5) Facultātem itineris faciundī per prōvinciam Caesar

[1] Translate both passively and actively.

nōn datūrus erat. (6)[1] Oppida sociōrum Caesarī dēfendenda sunt. (7) Caesar nōn putābat hominēs inimīcō animō ab iniūriā temperātūrōs esse. (8)[1] Duae legiōnēs Labiēnō mittendae erunt mūnītiōnem oppūgnātum.

II. (1) Caesar does not intend to await the arrival of Labienus. (2)[2] Caesar ought not to await the arrival of Labienus. (3) The Swiss are going to attempt to march through our province. (4)[2] The Aedui had had to send ambassadors to Caesar to ask help. (5) All the possessions of our allies ought not to be used up by these Swiss.

429. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Allobrogēs vīcōs possessiōnēsque trāns Rhodanum habēbant. Item Allobrogēs sē ad Caesarem fugā recipiunt. Dēmōnstrant nihil reliquī[3] esse sibi praeter agrī solum. Quibus (= hīs) rēbus adductus, Caesar statuit nōn exspectandum esse.[4] Caesar statuit nōn exspectandum[4] dum omnēs fortūnae sociōrum cōnsūmerentur, aut dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, Helvētiī in Santonōs pervenīrent.

[1] Translate both passively and actively.

[2] This sentence must be turned into the passive voice before the Second Periphrastic can be used. The subject of the active form becomes what case?

[3] Genitive of the whole; **nihil reliquī**, *nothing of remainder*, i.e. *nothing was left*.

[4] Translate actively, *he should not wait*.

LESSON LVII.

INTERROGATIVES AND INDEFINITES. — INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES.

430. *Caesar decides that he cannot afford to wait until the Swiss strip his allies of their property.*

Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi

praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent. [Cap. XI. Fīnis.]

431. Like Demonstratives and Relatives, Interrogatives and Indefinites are used both as pronouns and adjectives: **quis,** *who?* **quī homō,** *what man?* (Interrogatives) and **quis,** *any one,* **quī homō,** *any man* (Indefinites).

432. PARADIGMS.

RELATIVE (reviewed).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

433. INTERROGATIVE (used as pronoun).

	SINGULAR.	
	M. AND F.	N.
Nom.	quis, *who?*	quid, *what?*
Gen.	cuius, *whose?*	cuius, *of what?*
Dat.	cui, *to whom?*	cui, *to what?*
Acc.	quem, *whom?*	quid, *what?*
Abl.	quō, *by, from, in,* or *with whom?*	quō, *by, from, in,* or *with what?*

The plural is the same as that of the Relative, **quī, quae, quae.**

434. INTERROGATIVE (used as adjective).

These are declined throughout singular and plural like the Relative.

	M.	F.	N.	meaning of all genders
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	*who? what? which? what kind of?*

Indefinites, whether pronouns or adjectives, are declined like the corresponding Interrogative, but **qua** is commonly used for **quae** except in the feminine plural nominative.

435. The Indefinites **quis** and **quī** are rare except after **sī, nisi, nē, num.** In other situations, the student should make use of the compounds shown in the following table: —

M.	F.	N.
quis	(qua)	quid (quod), *somebody, anybody.*
aliquis (aliquī)	(aliqua)	aliquid (aliquod), *some one.*
quisquam		quicquam, *any one* (at all) (no plu.).
quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam), *a certain one.*
quisque	(quaeque)	quidque (quodque), *each one, every one.*
quīvīs	quaevīs	quidvīs (quodvīs), *any one* (you please).

The bracketed forms are used as adjectives. The pronominal parts alone of the compounds are declined and these like the corresponding forms of **quis** or **quī**. Note, however, a euphonic change of **m** to **n** before **d**, showing **quendam, quandam, quōrundam,** etc.

436. MODEL SENTENCES.

DIRECT QUESTIONS.

(1) Quid facit? — *What is he doing?* (2) Quod oppidum oppūgnat? — *What town is he attacking?* (3) Nōnne Caesar hōc facit? — *Is not Caesar doing this?* or *Caesar is doing this, is he not?* (Implied answer, "Yes.") (4) Num Caesar hōc facit? — *Caesar is not doing this, is he?* (Implied answer, "No.") (5) Caesarne hōc facit? — *Is Caesar doing this?* (Answer uncertain.)

Observe: —

(1) that questions 1 and 2 cannot be answered by *yes* or *no,* while the other questions may be so answered. After carefully studying the other questions, observe,

(2) that the interrogative particle **nōnne** is used when the answer expected is *yes,* that **num** is used when the answer expected is *no,* that the enclitic particle **-ne** is used when the question gives no indication as to the nature of the answer. This enclitic

is always attached to the most emphatic word, which is usually placed first in the sentence. Note how the emphasis is altered in the following: —

Idne Caesar facit? — *Is it this that Caesar is doing?*

437. **VOCABULARY.**

Arar, Araris, m., *the Saone*, a river tributary to the Rhone.
lēnitās, -tātis, f., *smoothness.*
linter, lintris, m., *small boat, skiff.*
oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*
incrēdibilis, -e, *incredible.*
uter, utra, utrum, *which of two.*

iūdicō, 1, *judge, decide.*

438. **WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Decline the Indefinites **quis, quisque,** and **quīdam,** placing in brackets the alternative adjective forms.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the gerunds and supines of **iūdicō.**

439. **EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) Quīdam hōrum hominum ad pācem cōnfīrmandam dēlēctī sunt. (2) Nōnne Helvētiī suās cōpiās per fīnēs Sēquanōrum trāductūrī sunt? (3) Num hostēs Genāvam itūrī erant? (4) Helvētiī quoddam oppidum Aeduōrum oppūgnāre cōnstituērunt. (5) Labiēnumne huic oppidō Caesar praefēcit? (6) Helvētiī quemque ferre frūmentum iubent. (7) Num Orgetorīx imperiō tōtīus Galliae potītus est? (8) Quod cōnsilium oppidī oppūgnandī nostrīs mīlitibus capiendum est? (9) Cōnābiturne Caesar exercitum prohibēre? (10) Num Orgetorīx cuiquam persuāsit ut rēgnum occupāret?

440. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Flūmen Arar per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit. Flūmen Arar est incrēdibilī lēnitāte ita ut oculīs, in utram partem[1] fluat,[2] iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant.

[1] **Partem**: direction.

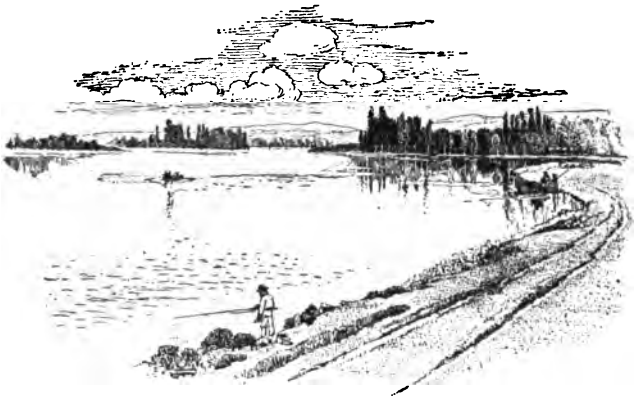
[2] **Fluat**: subjunctive of what is known as Indirect Question. Translate as if fluit.

LESSON LVIII.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

441. *The Swiss cross the Saone.*

Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus āc lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant.



HERE THE SWISS CROSSED THE SAONE.

442. A Substantive Clause is one used as subject or object of a verb or in apposition with a noun or pronoun.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Casticō persuādet ut rēgnum occupet. — *He persuades Casticus to seize the royal power.* (2) Timet ut Casticus rēgnum occupet. — *He fears that Casticus may not seize the royal power.* (3) Caesar monuit nē Helvētiī fīnēs Santonum obtinērent. — *Caesar advised that the Swiss should not hold the territories of the*

Santones. (4) Caesar timuit nē Helvētiī fīnēs Santonum obtinērent. — *Caesar feared that the Swiss would hold the territories of the Santones.* (5) Dumnorīx perficit ut inter sē obsidēs dent. — *Dumnorix arranges that they shall give hostages to one another.*

Observe: —

(1) that the subordinate clauses of all these sentences, being the direct objects of the main verbs, are Substantive Clauses and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

(2) that sentences 1, 2, 3, 4 contain Substantive Clauses of Purpose, while sentence 5 contains a Substantive Clause of Result which is translated by the indicative mood.

(3) compare sentences 1 and 2, and note that when, as in sentence 2, **ut** introduces a Substantive Clause as object of a verb of Fearing, **ut** is negative and means "That not."

(4) that similarly **nē** with a verb of Fearing, as in sentence 4, is affirmative and means "That."

443. *RULE. — Verbs of fearing take the subjunctive with* ***nē*** *affirmative and* ***ut*** *negative.*

444. **VOCABULARY.**

castra, **-ōrum**, n., *camp* (plu. of castrum, which is not used in Caesar).
explōrātor, **-ōris**, m., *scout.*
vigilia, **-ae**, f., *night-watch, guard.*
quārtus, **-a**, **-um** (ordinal adj.), *fourth.*
citrā, prep. governing acc., *this side of.*
perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *accomplish, arrange.*
timeō, timēre, timuī, — , *fear, dread.*
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear, stand in awe of.*

445. **WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Decline **castra** in plural and **explōrātor** in full.

(2) Write a synopsis of **timeō** in the 3d plural active and tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **vereor**.

446. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(In the following sentences classify each subordinate clause as suggested in the observations above and tell why each is substantive.)

I. (1) Caesaris cōnsilium erat ut faciliōre itinere ūterētur. (2) Caesar timuit ut suī mīlitēs faciliōre itinere ūterentur. (3) Caesar Belgīs persuāsit nē castra oppūgnārent. (4) Caesar verēbātur nē Belgae castra oppūgnārent. (5) Aeduī verentur ut sua oppida dēfendere possint. (6) Caesar verēbātur nē hominēs inimīcō animō agrōs sociōrum populārentur. (7) Helvētiī Caesarem rogāvērunt ut sibi licēret per prōvinciam īre. (8) Caesar perficit ut Helvētiī īre per prōvinciam nōn possint.

II. (1) The plan of the Allobroges was that they should cross the river. (2) The Allobroges feared that the enemy would cross the river. (3) The Swiss persuaded their neighbors not to send aid. (4) The Swiss feared that their neighbors would not send aid. (5) Orgetorix arranges so that the noblest are sent as hostages.

447. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est Helvētiōs trēs partēs cōpiārum id flūmen iam trādūxisse.[1] Quārta ferē pars erat reliqua citrā flūmen Ararim. Ubi Caesar certior factus est quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim esse, dē tertiā vigiliā[2] ē castrīs profectus est. Profectus cum tribus legiōnibus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

[1] **Trādūcō may take two accusatives, one (as cōpiās) the direct object of the verb and the other (as flūmen) the object of the preposition trāns (trā in compound with dūcō).**

[2] **Dē tertiā vigiliā: between midnight and 3 a.m. The time between sunset and sunrise was divided into four watches.**

LESSON LIX.

SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVES.

448. *Caesar plans to crush the Swiss forces left on his side of the Saone River.*

Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

449. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Cōnsul bellum māgnopere cupiēbat. — *The consul greatly desired war.* (2) Cōnsulis cupiditās bellī erat māgna. — *The consul's desire of war was great.* (3) Cupidissimus bellī erat cōnsul. — *The consul was very desirous of war.*

Observe: —

(1) that **cōnsul** is subject and **bellum** is object, when the feeling of desire is expressed by a verb, as in sentence 1.

(2) that **cōnsul** and **bellum** are put in the genitive, when the feeling of desire is expressed by a noun, as in sentence 2. Therefore **cōnsulis** is called the Subjective Genitive and **bellī** the Objective Genitive.

(3) that in sentence 3 **bellī** is also in the Objective Genitive and the feeling of desire is expressed by an adjective.

450. *RULES.* — 1. *Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the subjective or objective genitive.*

2. *Adjectives of desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites govern the objective genitive.*

451. VOCABULARY.

pāgus, -ī, m., *district, clan.*
silva, -ae, f., *forest, grove.*
Helvētius, -a, -um, *Swiss*, as adj.
inopīnāns, m., f., n. (inopīnantis, genitive), *not expecting, unawares.*
perītus, -a, -um, *experienced, skilled in* (followed by genitive).
Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *of* or *belonging to the Tigurini*, a Swiss clan.
quattuor, num. adj., *four.*
nam, conj., *for.*

abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, *put away, hide, conceal* (followed by **in** with acc.).
aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, *approach, attack.*
concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut down, cut to pieces, kill.*
impediō, 4, *impede, hinder, encumber.*
mandō, 1, *hand over, commission;* fugae sē mandāre, *take to flight.*

452. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write a synopsis of **concīdō** in the 3d plural active, and **aggredior** in the 3d plural.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the infinitive and participles of **abdō** and the gerunds and supines of **mandō**.

453. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(Classify all genitives in the following sentences.)

I. (1) Iter exercitūs per hōs fīnēs erat difficillimum. (2) Orgetorīx, spē rēgnī inductus, novīs rēbus studēbat. (3) Aeduī erant cupidissimī Caesaris adventūs. (4) Hī vīcī in cōnspectū nostrī exercitūs nōn incendendī erant. (5) Reditiō Helvētiōrum per montēs fuerat difficillima. (6) Hae silvae memoriā nostrōrum patrum concīsae erant. (7) Caesar memoriā eārum iniūriārum nōn indūcētur. (8) Helvētiī, quod bellī perītissimī erant, adventū Caesaris nōn erant permōtī.

II. (1) The conspiracy of Orgetorix was formed at that time. (2) On the arrival of Caesar, the enemy took to flight. (3) Caesar was attacking enemies experienced in war. (4) The nobles had been alarmed by the punishment of Orgetorix. (5) The nobles had been anxious for a revolution on account of their desire for royal power.

454. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Eī Helvētiī erant impedītī et inopīnantēs. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs Caesar aggressus est. Eōs aggressus, māgnam partem eōrum concīdit. Reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt (mandāvērunt), atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus patrum nostrōrum memoriā domō exierat. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, Lūcium Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

LESSON LX.

DATIVE OF PURPOSE. — ACCUSATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS.

455. *Caesar destroys the clan that had killed the consul Cassius fifty years before.*

Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit: reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus: nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

456. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Eī mīlitēs auxiliō Caesarī erunt. — *These soldiers will be (for) an aid to Caesar.* (2) Haec calamitās erat dolōrī Gallīs. — *This disaster was (for) a grief to the Gauls.*

Observe: —

That in sentence 1 **auxiliō** denotes the purpose or end which these soldiers will serve to Caesar, the person affected or concerned.

Explain in like manner the datives in sentence 2.

457. *RULE.* — *The dative is used to denote the purpose or end, often with another dative of the person or thing affected or concerned.*

458. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Helvētiī suās cōpiās id flūmen trādūxerant. — *The Swiss had led their forces across this river.* (2) Helvētiī id flūmen trānsierant. — *The Swiss had crossed this river.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1, **trādūxerant** takes two accusatives, **cōpiās** the direct object of the verb and **flūmen** the object of the preposition **trāns** changed to **trā** in composition.

(2) in sentence 2, **trānsierat** (though **eō** uncompounded is intransitive), governs an accusative, **flūmen**, as the object of the preposition **trāns** in composition.

459. *RULES.* — 1. *Transitive compounds of* **trāns** *and a few other prepositions may take two accusatives, one the direct object of the verb and the other the object of the preposition.*

2. *Verbs of motion compounded with* **ad**, **circum**, **praeter**, *and* **trāns** *frequently become transitive and take an accusative.*

460. VOCABULARY.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*
calamitās, -tātis, f., *disaster.*
cāsus, -ūs, m., *chance, accident.*
deus,[1] ī, m., *god.*
socer, socerī, m., *father-in-law.*
pūblicus, -a, -um, *public*, belonging to the state.
sōlum, acc. neut. of sōlus, as adv., *only.*
immortālis, -e, *immortal.*
insīgnis, -e, *marked, distinguished, conspicuous.*
sed, conj., *but.*
sīve . . . sīve, *whether . . . or.*

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus, *pay a debt* or *penalty.*
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *take vengeance on, avenge.*

[1] The noun **deus** is irregularly declined in the plural as follows: Nominative, **deī (diī)**, **dī**; Genitive, **deōrum**, **deum**; Dative, **deīs (diīs)**, **dīs**; Accusative, **deōs**; Ablative, **deīs (diīs)**, **dīs**. The Vocative singular is **deus**, the same as the Nominative.

461. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **cāsus** and **calamitās**.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the gerunds, supines, infinitives, and participles of **ulciscor**.

462. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(Fully explain datives and accusatives in the following sentences.)

I. (1) Caesar statuit suās cōpiās id flūmen trādūcere. (2) Fuga amīcōrum erat magnō dolōrī Belgīs. (3) Adventus hōrum mīlitum erat māgnō praesidiō Gallīs. (4) Caesar verēbātur nē hostēs cōpiās flūmen trādūcerent. (5) Caesar flūmen trānsiit ut socīīs auxiliō esset. (7) Caesar Labiēnum mūnītiōnī praefēcit ut exemplō virtūtis mīlitibus esset. (8) Rōmānī eōs, quī flūmen nōndum trānsierant, aggressī sunt.

II. (1) This fortification will be (for) a great protection to our possessions. (2) Caesar's arrival was an aid to the Aedui. (3) Caesar led his forces across the Rhone that they might be a protection to the allies. (4) The soldiers had crossed many rivers. (5) The death of Orgetorix was a calamity to his friends.

463. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium ea pars (pāgus Tigurīnus) prīnceps[1] poenam persolvit. Ea pars cīvitātis Helvētiae, quae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium interfēcerant, Lūcium Pīsōnem lēgātum interfēcerant. Pīsō erat avus Caesaris socerī, L. Pīsōnis. Tigurīnī avum eius (Caesaris) socerī interfēcerant.

[1] **prīnceps**: adjective used as adverb, transl. *first*.

LESSON LXI.

FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE. — COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS.

464. *In punishing the Tigurini Caesar avenges the wrongs of the state and gratifies a private grudge for the death of a very distant relative.*

Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant. [Cap. XII. Fīnis.]

465. Study the present imperatives of the regular conjugations and of the verb **nōlō** in the App., §§ **19–23**, **26**. The verbs **dīcō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, **ferō**, have monosyllabic imperatives: **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, **fer**.

466. TABLE OF COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS.

In the following table second person forms are imperatives, first and third person forms are subjunctives.

	AFFIRMATIVE.	NEGATIVE.
	SINGULAR.	
1*st Person*	līberem, *let me liberate.*	nē līberem, *let me not liberate.*
2*d Person*	līberā, *liberate.*	nōlī līberāre, *do not liberate.*
3*d Person*	līberet, *let him liberate.*	nē līberet, *let him not liberate.*
	PLURAL.	
1*st Person*	līberēmus, *let us liberate.*	nē līberēmus, *let us not liberate.*
2*d Person*	līberāte, *liberate.*	nōlīte līberāre, *do not liberate.*
3*d Person*	līberent, *let them liberate.*	nē līberent, *let them not liberate.*

Observe: —

That Negative Commands or Exhortations in 1st and 3d persons are expressed by the subjunctive with **nē**, not by the imperative.

Negative commands in the 2d person are expressed by the imperatives of **nōlō** (**nōlī** and **nōlīte**, *be unwilling*), followed by a complementary infinitive.

467. VOCABULARY.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, a Swiss nobleman.
dux, ducis, m. or f., *leader, guide, general.*
imprōvīsus, -a, -um, *unexpected.*
prīstinus, -a, -um, *former, of old.*
repentīnus, -a, -um, *sudden.*
vetus, m., f., n., veteris (genitive), *old, long standing.*
vīgintī, num. adj., *twenty.*
aegrē, adv., *with difficulty;* comp. aegrius, sup. aegerrimē.
imprōvīsō or dē imprōvīsō, abl. as adv., *unexpectedly.* (Compare Eng. "of a sudden.")

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *attack, assault.*
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, carry on, treat, discuss.*
commoveō, 2, *move thoroughly, alarm, startle.*
cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, overtake, attain.*
cūrō, 1, *care for, provide for* (with gerundive, *cause to be* —).
dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *look down upon, despise.*

468. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **dux** and the adjective **vetus**, noting that the latter is not an i-stem and accordingly forms its ablative singular and genitive plural like **īnferior**, § **105**.

(2) Tabulate Commands and Exhortations as in § **466** of **agō** and **dēspiciō** and the infinitives and participles of **cōnsequor**.

469. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Nē Helvētiōs decem diēbus adoriāmur. (2) Mittite lēgātōs ad Caesarem auxilium rogātum. (3) Nōlīte trānsīre id flūmen, quod est māgnā altitūdine. (4) Loca superiōra imprōvīsō occupēmus ut Helvētiōs itinere prohibeāmus. (5) Exspectāte decem mīlia mīlitum auxiliō. (6) Nē dēspiciant Aeduōs quod eōdem cōnsiliō ūsī sunt. (7) Nōlī Orgetorīgem dēligere quī hanc lēgātiōnem suscipiat. (8) Dā Casticō eius prīstinum imperium tōtīus Galliae.

II. (1) Attack the forces of the Aeduans, which are nearest our camp. (2) Do not put that man in charge of the camp. (3) Let the leader not be alarmed by the sudden flight of the allies. (4) Let them lead ten thousand across that river as an aid to the Romans. (5) Let us not despise our former enemies.

470. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Hōc proeliō factō,[1] pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat.[2] Pontem faciendum cūrat ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōnsequī posset. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī sunt, cum illum (*i.e.* Caesar) ūnō diē id fēcisse intellegerent, quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē cōnfēcerant. Id erat ut flūmen trānsīrent.[3] Helvētiī commōtī lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. Cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit. Dīvicō bellō Cassiānō[4] dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

[1] **factō** here means *fought.*

[2] *has a bridge built over the Saone;* literally, *causes a bridge to be built.* **Faciendum** is a gerundive agreeing in G. N. C. with **pontem**, direct object of **cūrō**.

[3] **ut trānsīrent**: substantive clause of purpose; transl. by infinitive.

[4] **bellō Cassiānō**, the war with Cassius, a Roman general, who had been defeated 50 years before by the Swiss.

EIGHTH REVIEW.

I. List in a column and number from one to thirteen with meanings the Latin nouns numbered 103, 104, 106–116, inclusive, in the Word List on pages 275–278.

II. Decline consecutively the first ten of these nouns, starting with the first and putting the comparative of **incrēdibilis** in agreement with each singular form and the positive **īnsīgnis** in agreement with each plural form.

III. List with meanings and compare when possible the Latin adjectives numbered 66–74, inclusive, in the Word List on page 278.

IV. List and number from one to twenty with meanings and principal parts the Latin verbs numbered 108–127, inclusive, in the Word List on pages 275–278.

V. Write a consecutive synopsis in the 2d plural passive of the first ten verbs, and tabulate consecutively with meanings the infinitives and participles of the last ten. Write synopses of verb numbered 116 in the 3d plural first or active periphrastic and of verb numbered 127 in the 3d singular neuter of the second or passive periphrastic.

VI. Tabulate with meanings the gerunds and supines of **interficiō** and the imperatives of **cūrō**, **dēbeō**, and **impediō**.

VII. Review the Indefinite and Interrogative Pronouns in Lesson LVII.

VIII. Review the rules of syntax for subjunctive with verbs of Fearing, for the Subjective and Objective Genitive, Genitive with Adjectives, Dative of Purpose, Accusatives with verbs compounded with **trāns** and **circum**, Commands and Exhortations, and illustrate each with an original sentence properly translated.

IX. Translate the text at the head of Lessons LV–LXI, inclusive, pointing out all examples of the rules mentioned above.

LESSON LXII.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

471. *Caesar bridges the Saone and throws his army across. In alarm, the Swiss send an embassy of peace.*

Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

472. Since the personal endings of Latin verbs indicate the person of the subject, the nominative of **Personal Pronouns** is used only when needed for emphasis, contrast, or clearness. Memorize the declension of the pronouns **ego**, *I*, and **tū**, *you*, in the App., § 15. The personal pronoun of the third

person, *he, she, it,* is lacking in Latin, and when not reflexive, is expressed usually by **is, ea, id,** sometimes by **hīc** or **ille.** What is the third person reflexive in Latin?

473. Possessive Adjectives are formed from the genitive of the personal pronouns as follows:—

Person.	Genitive.	Possessive Adjective.
1*st Sing.*	**meī,** *of me*	**meus, -a, -um,** *my* or *mine.*
Plu.	**nostrī,** *of us*	**noster, -tra, -trum,** *our* or *ours.*
2*d Sing.*	**tuī,** *of you*	**tuus, -a, -um,** *your* or *yours.*
Plu.	**vestrī,** *of you*	**vester, -tra, -trum,** *your* or *yours.*
3*d Sing. or Plu.*	**suī,** *of him,* etc.	**suus, -a, -um,** *his, her, its,* or *their* (own), according to the subject, to which the reflexive, **suus,** must refer.

When not referring to the subject, the possessive adjective of the third person is supplied by the use in the singular and plural, respectively, of the genitive of the demonstrative **is, ea, id;** namely, **eius,** *his, her, its,* and **eōrum** or **eārum,** *their.*

474. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Ego oppidum oppūgnō, tū dēfendis. — *I attack the town, you defend it.* (2) Mē līberō, vōs līberātis. — *I free myself, you free yourselves.* (3) Quis vestrum veniet, nam vestrī cupidī sumus? — *Who of you will come, for we are fond of you?* (4) Nostrōs nōbīscum dūcēmus. — *We shall lead our (men) with us.*

Observe: —

(1) that **ego** and **tū** are used in sentence 1 because they are contrasted and emphatic.

(2) that as in sentence 2 the first and second persons of the personal pronouns may be used reflexively.

(3) that the genitive form **vestrum** is partitive and **vestrī** is objective, as in sentence 3. **Nostrum** and **nostrī** must be likewise distinguished.

(4) that in sentence 4 **nostrōs** is used substantively and that the preposition **cum** is enclitic with personal pronouns as well as with relative, interrogative, and reflexive pronouns.

475. VOCABULARY.

contumēlia, -ae, f., *insult, affront.*
īnsidiae, -ārum, f., plu., *ambush, stratagem, treachery.*
nōmen, nōminis, n., *name.*
gravis, -e, n., *heavy, serious.*
recēns, m., f., n. (recentis, genitive), *recent.*
graviter, adv., *heavily, bitterly.*

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *fall to, happen.*
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, *be on guard, beware of.*
committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *perform, allow* (proelium committere, *join battle*).
cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *take a position, stand, rally.*
dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *catch, ensnare, deceive.*
discō, discere, didicī, —, *learn.*
nītor, nītī, nīsus (or nīxus) sum, *strive, depend upon* (with abl.).
persequor, -sequī, -secutus sum, *follow up, assail.*
temptō, 1, *try, test, attempt.*

476. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline together **īnsidiae** and **gravis**, **nōmen** and **recēns**.

(2) Write synopses of **accidō** in the 3d plural active and **nītor** in 1st plural.

(3) Tabulate with meanings: participles of **caveō**, infinitives of **committō**, gerunds of **cōnsistō**.

477. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Ego recentem contumēliam memoriā tenēbō, tū nōn. (2) Caesar vestrās īnsidiās cavēbit. (3) In recentī proeliō īnsidiīs nōn nītēbāmur. (4) Māgnum exercitum nōbīscum dūcāmus. (5) Tuīs īnsidiīs nōn dēceptī sumus. (6) Nōs proelium committēmus vōbīscum; vōs cavēbitis. (7) Tuae contumēliae erant māgnae iniūriae[1] nōbīs.

II. (1) I shall go to Geneva, you to the country. (2) Let us carry grain with us. (3) These towns must be defended by you. (4) The Swiss will lead their (men) with them across this river. (5) Your name will be of great aid to us. (6) Many of us are very fond of you (plu.).

[1] Not nom. plu.

LESSON LXIII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.*

478. *The aged Divico haughtily defies Caesar.*

Dīvicō ita cum Caesare ēgit:† "Sī pācem populus Rōmānus faciet, nōs Helvētiī in eam partem ībimus atque ibi erimus, ubi volueris.[1] Sī bellō persequī vīs, tenē memoriā vetus proelium et prīstinam virtūtem Helvētiōrum. Ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum iī, quī flūmen trānsierant, nostrīs auxilium ferre nōn possent.[2] Ob eam rem nōlī[3] nōs dēspicere. Nōs ita ā maiōribus patribusque didicimus: virtūte, nōn īnsidiīs, nītī oportēre. Quārē nōlī committere ut is locus, ubi cōnsistimus, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī nōmen capiat."

479. A **Conditional Sentence** is complex and consists of two parts: the subordinate clause called the **condition** or **protasis**, and the principal clause called the **conclusion** or **apodosis**; as, *if he attacks* (protasis), *he will be defeated* (apodosis).

480. Conditional sentences are classified as follows:—

I. Conditions referring to Present and Past Time.
   (*a*) Simple.
   (*b*) Contrary to Fact.

II. Conditions referring to Future Time.
   (*a*) More Vivid Future.
   (*b*) Less Vivid Future.

* See Syntactical Syllabus regarding Conditions, page 281.

† This speech is a condensed version in direct discourse of the original text, whose indirect form presents serious difficulties. The same liberty has been taken in treating Caesar's reply in Lesson LXIV. All words of these portions of the original text occurring six or more times in Caesar have been used in these versions.

[1] Future perfect, translated as present indicative.

[2] Translated by same tense of indicative.

[3] *Be unwilling to*, i.e. *do not*.

481. SUBDIVISIONS.

I. Conditions referring to Present and Past Time.

(*a*) Simple Conditions.

PRES. *If he has anything, he gives it.*
Sī quid habet, dat.

PAST. *If he had anything, he gave it.*
Sī quid habēbat, dedit.

Observe: —

That these conditions are stated simply without implying anything as to their truth, and the indicative is used in both clauses.

(*b*) Conditions Contrary to Fact.

PRES. *If he had anything, he would give it.*
Sī quid habēret, daret.

PAST. *If he had had anything, he would have given it.*
Sī quid habuisset, dedisset.

Observe: —

(1) that the protases of these sentences imply what is contrary to fact: he has or had nothing and therefore can or could give nothing.

(2) that the subjunctive is used in both clauses, the imperfect in the present contrary to fact and the pluperfect in the past contrary to fact.

II. Conditions referring to Future Time.

(*a*) More Vivid Future.

If he has anything, he will give it.
Sī quid habēbit, dabit.

(*b*) Less Vivid Future.

If he should have anything, he would give it.
Sī quid habeat, det.

Observe: —

(1) that the protasis in (*a*) states the future supposition vividly and distinctly and implies the probability of the action in the

apodosis. In this form of conditional sentence both clauses take the indicative. In English the present tense is used in the protasis though referring to future time, while Latin is more precise and uses the future or sometimes the future perfect.

(2) that the protasis in (*b*) states the future supposition less vividly and distinctly and implies the uncertainty or mere possibility of the action in the apodosis. In this form of conditional sentence both clauses take the present subjunctive. Of what forms are the two conditions used in § **478**?

482. Summary of Conditions.

I. Conditions referring to Present or Past Time.

(*a*) Simple. Indicative in both clauses.

(*b*) Contrary to Fact
- Pres. — Imperfect subjunctive in both clauses.
- Past. — Pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.

II. Conditions referring to Future Time.

(*a*) More Vivid. Future indicative in both clauses.

(*b*) Less Vivid. Present subjunctive in both clauses.

483. VOCABULARY.

commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis, f., *complete change, reverse.*
meritum, -ī, n., *deserts, due.*
victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*
secundus, -a, -um, *following, next, second; favorable, successful.*
diū, adv., *long, for a long time.*
interdum, adv., *meanwhile.*

admīror, 1, *wonder at, marvel at.*
cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētus, *become accustomed*, perf. *be accustomed.*
dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *put down, aside*, or *away.*
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *withdraw, depart.*
doleō, dolēre, doluī, —, *feel pain* or *grief, grieve.*
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *offer, promise.*
vexō, 1, *harass, ravage.*

484. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **commūtātiō**.

(2) Write synopses of **discēdō** in the 3d plural active and **polliceor** in the 3d plural.

(3) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **dēpōnō**, the gerunds of **doleō**, and supines of **vexō**.

485. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Rōmānī, sī id oppidum oppūgnābunt, capient. (2) Sī Caesar memoriam recentium iniūriārum dēposuisset, Helvētiōs amīcōs habuisset. (3) Sī Caesar pācem cum Gallīs faciat, in suōs fīnēs discēdant. (4) Aeduī diū dolēbunt, sī Helvētiī suōs agrōs vexābunt. (5) Sī domō discēderēmus, nostrī agrī vāstārentur. (6) Sī Rōmānī eō tempore cāvissent, nōn superātī essent. (7) Sī Caesar Genāvae est, Labiēnus castrīs praeest.

II. (1) If this happens, the Romans will be on guard. (2) If the Swiss had laid down their arms, Caesar would have promised them peace. (3) If the Belgians should depart, Caesar would not try to follow them. (4) If Labienus were in charge of the fortification, Caesar would not fear the enemy.

LESSON LXIV.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS. — SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

486. *Divico had won his victory fifty years before by treachery. Let the Swiss beware of the vengeance of the gods whose custom it is to make mad with prosperity those whom they purpose to destroy.*

Hīs verbīs Caesar ita respondit: "Memoriā teneō eās rēs quās dīxistī et gravius ferō[1] quod eae rēs nōn meritō populī Rōmānī accidērunt. Rōmānī vetere proeliō nōn caverant quod, nūllā iniūriā ā sē factā, nōn timēbant. Quā rē dēceptī erant. Num nōn sōlum veteris contumēliae sed etiam recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere possum? Mē invītō, iter per prōvinciam temptā-

[1] **gravius ferō**, *I bear more bitterly*, i.e. *am more displeased*.

vistis. Aeduōs, Ambarrōs, Allobrogēs vexāvistis. Nōlīte propter illam victōriam admīrārī vōs tam diū iniūriās intulisse. Cōnsuēscunt deī immortālēs quō hominēs ex commūtātīone rērum gravius doleant, hīs quōs ulcīscī volent secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere. Cum[1] ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs dabuntur, utī ea quae polliceāminī vōs factūrōs intellegam, vōbīscum pācem faciam."[2]

Dīvicō respondit, "Nōs Helvētiī obsidēs recipere, nōn dare consuēvimus."

Eō respōnsō datō, discessit.

487. A **Direct Question** gives the exact words of a speaker or writer. An **Indirect Question** gives the words of a speaker or writer as reported by another or by the same person after a verb of asking, knowing, doubting, and the like, followed by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, adverb, or particle.

Direct Question.	Indirect Question.
Quid Caesar facit? — *What is Caesar doing?*	Rogat quid Caesar faciat. — *He asks what Caesar is doing.*

Observe: —

That the indicative **facit** in the Direct Question becomes the subjunctive **faciat** in the Indirect Question.

488. *RULE. — The verb in an indirect question is put in the subjunctive.*

489. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Primary Tenses.

Rogat, *he asks* Rogābit, *he will ask* Rogāverit, *he will have asked*	]	quid Caesar faciat, *what Caesar is doing.* quid Caesar fēcerit, *what Caesar has done.*

[1] Cum concessive. [2] Future Indicative.

Observe: —

That the present, future, and future perfect, called **Primary** or **Principal Tenses**, are followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, the former to denote *incompleted* action, the latter to denote action *completed* at the time of the main verb.

490. SECONDARY TENSES.

Rogābat, *he was asking* Rogāvit, *he asked* Rogāverat, *he had asked*	quid Caesar faceret, *what Caesar was doing.* quid Caesar fēcisset, *what Caesar had done.*

Observe: —

That the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect called **Secondary** or **Historical**[1] **Tenses**, are followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, the former to denote *incompleted* action, the latter to dencte action *completed* at the time of the main verb.

491. *RULE. — A primary tense is followed by the subjunctive present for incompleted action, perfect for completed action. A secondary tense is followed by the subjunctive imperfect for incompleted action, pluperfect for completed action.*

SUMMARY.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Primary Tenses	Pres. Fut. Fut. Perf.	Present to denote incompleted action with reference to the main verb. Perfect to denote completed action with reference to the main verb.
Secondary or Historical Tenses	Imperf. Perf. Pluperf.	Imperf. to denote incompleted action with reference to the main verb. Pluperf. to denote completed action with reference to the main verb.

[1] Why are these tenses called Historical?

LIBRARY OF THE

492. VOCABULARY.

agmen, agminis, n., *army on the march, line of march.*
equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*
aliēnus, -a, -um, *belonging to another, foreign, unfavorable.*
paucī, -ae, -a, *few.*
posterus, -a, -um, *next, later, subsequent.*
cupidē, adv., *eagerly.*
cūr, interrog. adv., *why?*
num, *whether.* See § 436.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, [cāsūrus], *fall, be slain.*
īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow on, pursue.*
praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *send before* or *in advance.*

493. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **equitātus** in singular only and **agmen** in full.

(2) Write synopses of **cadō**, in the 1st plural active and **īnsequor** in the 3d plural.

(3) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **praemittō**.

494. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(In the following tenses explain the Sequence of Tenses in all subjunctive forms and account for the mood.)

I. (1) In utram partem flūmen flueret, iūdicārī nōn poterat. (2) Caesar Helvētiōs rogāvit cūr Aeduōs vexārent. (3) Praemittit explōrātōrēs quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter factūrī sint. (4) Caesar suōs rogāvit cūr aliēnō locō cum equitātū hostium proelium commīsissent. (5) Cūr Caesar Labiēnum huic agminī praefēcerit, nōn intellegunt. (6) Admīrātī sunt num Casticus rēgnum occupāret. (7) Dīvicō nōn potest intellegere cūr Caesar recentium iniūriārum memoriam nōn dēpōnat.

II. (1) Caesar cannot find out what town the enemy are attacking, have attacked. (2) The scouts could not see in what direction the enemy were marching, had marched. (3) Caesar wondered why the fourth part had not crossed the river. (4) Caesar asked the cavalry why they were joining battle, had joined battle.

495. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Helvētiī posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium praemittit. Equitātum, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum[1] habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī[2] cupidius novissimum[3] agmen īnsequuntur. Quī[2] cupidius īnsecūtī cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium aliēnō locō committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

[1] **coāctum habēbat**: equivalent to **coēgerat**.

[2] **Quī**: the relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence occurs frequently and should be translated as a demonstrative.

[3] **novissimum agmen**, *last line*, i.e. *rear guard*.

LESSON LXV.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

496. *The Swiss attempt to get away. Caesar follows them. His cavalry allow themselves to be drawn into an unfortunate engagement.*

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

SOLDIER IN MARCHING ORDER.

497. The verbs **coepī**, *I began*, and **ōdī**, *I hate*, lack the present system[1] and are therefore called **Defective**

[1] The present system comprises the present, imperfect, and future. What tenses will then be wanting in the subjunctive?

Verbs. The present system of **coepī** is supplied by **incipiō**, *I begin*. Note **ōdī**, *I hate*, **ōderam**, *I hated*, **ōderō**, *I shall hate*.

498. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Many verbs on account of their meaning appear only in the 3d singular. These are called **Impersonal Verbs** because they have no personal subjects. Those most commonly occurring in Caesar are as follows: —

accidit, accidēbat, accidet, etc., *it happens etc.*
constat, constābat, constābit, etc., *it is clear etc.*
fit, fiēbat, fiet, etc., *it happens, becomes etc.*
licet, licēbat, licēbit, etc., *it is permitted etc.* (with dative of the person).
necesse est, erat, erit, etc., *it is necessary, etc.* (with inf. and subj. acc.).
oportet, oportēbat, oportēbit, etc., *it is fitting, ought.*
vidētur (sometimes impersonal in passive), *it seems, seems good.*

Intransitive Verbs and the Special Verbs followed by the dative (§ **254**) are regularly used impersonally in the passive voice, retaining the dative, as: **pūgnātur**, *it is fought, there is fighting;* **Orgetorīgī persuādētur**, *Orgetorix is persuaded* (literally, *it is persuaded to Orgetorix*).

499. VOCABULARY.

eques, equitis, m., *horseman;* plu. *cavalry.*
pābulātiō, -ōnis, f., *foraging.*
populātiō, -ōnis, f., *destroying, a plundering expedition.*
praesentia, -ae, f., *the present.*
rapīna, -ae, f., *plundering, robbery.*
amplus, -a, -um, *large, extensive;* comp. amplior, -ius, *more.*
audāx, m., f., n. (audācis, genitive), *bold, reckless.*
quīndecim, num. adj., *fifteen.*
quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five hundred.*
quīnī, -ae, -a, distributive num. adj., *five each.*
sēnī, -ae, -a, distributive num. adj., *six each.*
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so much.*
circiter, adv., *about.*

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *have begun, began.*
lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *challenge, provoke, excite.*
prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive forward* or *off.*
subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *halt, make a stand.*

500. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **eques.**

(2) Compare the adjective **audāx** and the adverb derived from it, and decline the positive of the adjective.

(3) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **lacessō.**

(4) Write with meanings synopses of **coepī** in 3d plural active and **ōdī** in 2d singular active.

501. EXERCISE FOR PRACTICE.

(1) He hates, he will hate, he hated; they had begun, they began. (2) They hated the Romans and began to make war upon them. (3) The Swiss asked that it should be permitted them. (4) It was necessary (for) Caesar to defend the possessions of the allies. (5) Caesar[1] was not persuaded. (6) It happened that[2] the cavalry were in an unfavorable place.

502. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Quō proeliō Helvētiī sublātī sunt, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant. Quō proeliō sublātī, coepērunt audācius nōn numquam subsistere et suō novissimō agmine[3] nostrōs proeliō lacessere. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat. Satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Duo exercitūs diēs circiter quīndecim iter ita fēcērunt ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum[4] nōn amplius[5] quīnīs[6] aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

[1] **In what case must Caesar be put?**
[2] **Substantive Clause of Result with subjunctive.**
[3] **Agmine**, abl. place, transl. *from their rear.*
[4] **Primum**, *first*, van of an army.
[5] **Amplius**, neut. sing. nom. used substantively.
[6] **Quīnīs et sēnīs** etc., abl. deg. diff., *five or six miles each day.*

LESSON LXVI.

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVES.

503. *The Swiss, puffed up over their cavalry victory, attack Caesar from their rear guard. He avoids battle, while preventing them from ravaging the country.*

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset. [Cap. XV. Fīnis.]

ACROSS THIS COUNTRY MARCHED THE OPPOSING ARMIES.

504. Double Accusatives in Latin are of two classes: —

I. Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Senātus Catamantāloedem amīcum appellāverat. — *The senate had called Catamantaloedes a friend.* (2) Labiēnum certiōrem fēcērunt. — *They informed Labienus* (literally, *made Labienus more certain*). (3) Dīvicōnem ducem Helvētiī dēlēgērunt. — *The Swiss chose Divico as leader.* (4) Dīvicō dux ab Helvētiīs dēlēctus est. — *Divico was chosen as leader by the Swiss.*

Observe: —

(1) that these verbs govern two accusatives, a direct object, as **Catamantāloedem** or **Dīvicōnem**, and a predicate accusative, as **amīcum** or **ducem.**

(2) that the predicate accusative may be an adjective, as **certiōrem** in sentence 2.

In changing such a sentence into the passive voice, as sentence 3 into 4, the direct object becomes subject and the predicate accusative becomes predicate nominative.

505. *RULE. — Verbs of calling, choosing, making, and the like may take two accusatives of the same person or thing.*

506. II. Two Accusatives: the one of the Person, the other of the Thing.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Aeduī Caesarem auxilium rogāvērunt. — *The Aedui asked aid of Caesar.* (2) Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. — *Caesar kept asking the Aedui for grain.*

Observe: —

That these verbs take two accusatives, the one of the Person, as **Caesarem** and **Aeduōs**, and the other of the Thing, as **auxilium** and **frūmentum.**

507. *RULE. — Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching take two accusatives, the one of the person, the other of the thing.*

508. VOCABULARY.

frīgus, frīgoris, n., *cold*, (plu. *cold seasons*).
pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder, forage*.
mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe, mature, early*.
cotīdiē, adv., *every day, daily*.
interim, adv., *meanwhile*.
modo, adv., *only*.
pūblicē, adv., *publicly, in the name of the state*.
quidem, adv., *certainly, at least*.
nē . . . quidem, *not even* (emphatic word between).

āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, *turn from* or *away*.
flāgitō, 1, *demand often*.
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *put, place, establish*.
subvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus, *carry up*.

509. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write synopses of **āvertō** in the 2d plural active and **pōnō** in the 2d plural passive.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **flāgitō**.

510. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Helvētiī Dīvicōnem prīncipem huius lēgātiōnis dēlēgērunt. (2) Caesar sociōs equitātum rogāvit. (3) Caesar sociōs pābulum, quod pollicitī erant, flāgitābat. (4) Aeduī nōn modo amīcī sed etiam sociī appellātī erant. (5) Interim Labiēnus equitātum flūmen Rhodanum trādūxit. (6) Interim equitātus ā Labiēnō flūmen Rhodanum trāductus est.

(Translate the following sentences, except (2), both actively and passively.)

II. (1) The scouts informed Caesar concerning the arrival of Labienus. (2) The Aedui demanded their children of the Swiss. (3) Shall we not choose Caesar as our leader? (4) Who is leading this army across the river?

511. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. Frūmentum, quod Aeduī pūblicē pollicitī essent, Caesar flāgitāre.[1] Gallia, ut ante dictum est, sub septentriōnibus posita est. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus posita est, frūmenta[2] in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. Nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat. Caesar frūmentum flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat. Eō autem frūmentō, quod Ararī subvexerat, ūtī minus poterat. Eō frūmentō ūtī minus poterat propterea quod Helvētiī iter ab Ararī āverterant. Ab Helvētiīs discēdere nōlēbat.

[1] **flāgitāre**, historical infinitive with subject nominative, used in animated description. Translate by imperfect indicative.

[2] **frūmenta**, *standing grain.*

NINTH REVIEW.

I. List in a numbered column with meanings the Latin nouns numbered 118–125, inclusive; also 21 and 46 in the Word List on pages 275–278.

II. Decline these nouns consecutively, beginning with the first and putting the positive adjective **audāx** in agreement with singular forms, and the comparative of **recēns** in agreement with plural forms.

III. List in a column and compare when possible the Latin adjectives numbered 73–91, inclusive, in the Word List on page 278.

IV. Review the Personal pronouns and Possessive adjectives in Lesson LXII.

V. List in a numbered column with meanings and principal parts the Latin verbs numbered 123–152, inclusive, in the Word List on pages 275–278.

VI. Write consecutive synopses of the first ten in the 2d singular active and the next ten in the 3d singular passive.

VII. Tabulate consecutively with meanings the infinitives and participles of the last ten.

VIII. Write short Latin sentences translated into English to illustrate the genitive and accusative constructions enumerated in the Syntactical Syllabus on pages 279–281.

IX. Review text at head of Lessons LXII–LXVI, inclusive, pointing out all examples therein of the above principles of syntax.

LESSON LXVII.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

512. *Caesar, in danger of starvation, urgently calls upon his allies for promised supplies. His food supplies afloat on the Saone prove unavailable because the Swiss have left that river.*

Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus (ut ante dictum est) posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat proptereā minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat.

513. Before studying the model sentences given below, review carefully the subjunctive in Conditional Sentences as set forth in §§ **480–482.**

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Utinam Caesar adsit. — *Oh that Caesar may be here.* (In the Future.) (2) Utinam Caesar adesset. — *Oh that Caesar were here.* (In the Present.) (3) Utinam Caesar adfuisset. — *Oh that Caesar had been here.* (In the Past.)

Observe: —

That each of these sentences expresses a wish and takes the **Optative Subjunctive**; that the present subjunctive expresses a wish as possible of accomplishment in the future; the imperfect and

pluperfect subjunctive express the wish as unaccomplished in the present and past respectively.

These tenses of the Optative Subjunctive correspond exactly to the tenses of the Less Vivid Future and of the Contrary to Fact conditions. The particle **utinam**, *oh that, would that,* is sometimes omitted with the present subjunctive, but never with the imperfect or pluperfect. In negative wishes **nē** is used as an introductory particle, as **Nē adsit Caesar**, *oh that Caesar may not be here.*

514. *RULE. Wishes are expressed by the optative subjunctive with* ***utinam*** *affirmative,* ***nē*** *negative.*

515. **VOCABULARY.**

nex, necis, f., *violent death, murder, slaughter.*
potestās, potestātis, f., *power.*
vergobretus, -ī, m., the title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.
vīta, -ae, f., *life.*
annuus, -a, -um, *yearly, annual.*
utinam, *oh that, would that.*

comportō, 1, *bring together, collect.*
convocō, 1, *call together, summon.*
creō, 1, *create, elect.*
īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, —, (*stand to* or *in*), *impend, be at hand.*
mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *measure out.*

516. **WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Write synopses of **īnstō** in the 3d plural active and **conferō** in the 3d plural passive.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the gerunds and supines of **creō** and the infinitives and participles of **convocō**.

517. **EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) Utinam Caesar auxiliō Aeduīs veniat. (2) Utinam frūmenta in agrīs mātūra fuissent. (3) Utinam Caesar frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī posset. (4) Nē Helvētiī omnēs cōpiās Genāvam convocārent. (5) Utinam Caesar Rōmae hōc annō cōnsul creārētur. (6) Nē obsidēs ab prīncipibus interficiantur. (7) Equitēs caveant nē ab hostibus repellantur. (8) Rōmānī virtūte contendant magis quam īnsidiīs nītantur.

II. (1) May the Swiss not grieve on account of their change of fortune. (2) Oh that the immortal gods may give us greater prosperity. (3) Would that we had not been impeded by the flight of our allies. (4) Would that we had followed up the enemy very boldly. (5) Oh that the day of return were at hand.

518. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Diem ex diē Aeduī dūcēbant[1] et dīcēbant frūmentum cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse. Diem ex diē dūcere[2] Aeduī et dīcere[2] cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse. Sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit. Intellēxit diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret.[3] Ubi ea omnia intellēxit, prīncipēs eōrum convocāvit. Convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, graviter eōs accūsat. In hīs prīncipibus erant Dīviciācus et Liscus, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat. Eum magistrātum vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et potestātem vītae necisque in[4] suōs habet. Convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, in hīs Dīviciācō[5] et Liscō, graviter eōs accūsat.

[1] **dūcēbant**, *kept leading him on*, i.e. *putting him off*.

[2] The infinitives **dūcere** and **dīcere** are historical; the others are in indirect discourse. As to case of **Aeduī**, see Note 1, page 201.

[3] **oportēret**, *it would be necessary*.

[4] **in**, translate *over*.

[5] **Dīviciācō et Liscō**, appositives of **prīncipibus**.

LESSON LXVIII.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. — *QUOD* CAUSAL.

519. *The Aedui put off Caesar with excuses until he loses patience with them, and calling together their leaders, bitterly upbraids them.*

Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī: cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum

mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem 'vergobretum' appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat.

520. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Aeduī frūmentum, quod dēbent, nōn cōnferunt. — *The Aedui do not collect the grain which they ought.* (2) Caesar dīcit Aeduōs frūmentum, quod dēbeant, nōn cōnferre. — *Caesar says that the Aedui do not collect the grain which they ought.* (3) Quod ab eīs nōn sublevātus est, Caesar prīncipēs convocat. — *Caesar calls together the leaders, because he has not been assisted by them.* (4) Caesar Aeduōs accūsat quod ab eīs nōn sublevātus sit. — *Caesar blames the Aedui, because (as he says) he has not been aided by them.*

Observe: —

(1) that sentence 1 is a complex sentence, whose subordinate verb **dēbent** is in the indicative mood.

(2) that when sentence 1 is thrown into indirect discourse after verb of saying, as in sentence 2, the verb of the subordinate clause **dēbent** becomes the subjunctive **dēbeant**.

521. *RULE. — A subordinate clause in indirect discourse takes the subjunctive.*

Observe: —

That in sentence 3 the subordinate clause is in direct discourse, expresses cause, and takes the indicative, while in sentence 4 the subordinate causal clause is in indirect discourse after **accūsat**, a verb of *saying*, and therefore takes the subjunctive.

522. *RULE. — Causal clauses with* **quod** *take the indicative in direct discourse, the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

523. VOCABULARY.

prex, precis, f., *prayer, entreaty.*
improbus, -a, -um, *wicked, depraved.*
propinquus, -a, -um, *near, close* (used substantively, *relative*).
sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *seditious, treasonable.*
anteā, adv., *before that, previously.*
dēmum, adv., *at last.*
praesertim, adv., *especially, particularly.*
prīvātim, adv., *privately, personally.*
tum, adv., *then.*

dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *abandon, desert.*
dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, *frighten off, prevent.*
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy.*
prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, positus, *put forward, set forth, propose.*
queror, querī, questus sum, *complain of, lament.*
sublevō, 1, *lighten up, assist, support.*
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus, *be silent.*
valeō, valēre, valuī, —, *be strong, well,* or *powerful.*

524. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **potestās** in the singular and **prex** in the plural.

(2) Write synopses of **prōpōnō** in the 1st plural active and **queror** in the same person and number.

(3) Tabulate with meanings the participles of **emō**, infinitives of **valeō**, and the supines and gerunds of **dēterreō**.

525. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(Explain the mood and tense of all subjunctives.)

I. (1) Nūntiant Aeduōs nōn cōnferre frūmentum quod dēbeant. (2) Explōrātōrēs renūntiāvērunt hostēs oppidum quod oppūgnāvissent nōn cēpisse. (3) Caesar suās cōpiās ēdūxit quod Labiēnus Helvētiōs nōn adortus erat. (4) Cum Caesar adest, mīlitēs fortissimē resistunt. (5) Labiēnus vīdit mīlitēs fortissimē resistere cum Caesar adesset. (6) Caesar Labiēnum accūsābat quod Helvētiōs nōn adortus esset. (7) Aeduī māgnopere questī sunt quod līberī in servitūtem abductī essent.

II. (1) The Aedui sent ambassadors to Caesar because their fields had been laid waste. (2) The Aedui bitterly complained because their fields had been laid waste. (3) The scouts

announced that Labienus was bravely defending the town of which he was in charge. (4) When the grain (plu.) was ripe, the Romans took it from the fields. (5) The leaders knew that the Romans took grain (plu.) from the fields when it was ripe.

526. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Cum[1] frūmentum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī potest, tam necessāriō tempore,[2] tam propinquīs hostibus,[2] ab eīs nōn sublevātur. Graviter eōs accūsat, quod[3] ab eīs nōn sublevētur. Multō etiam gravius queritur, quod[3] sit dēstitūtus, praesertim cum[4] māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit.

Liscus dīcit: nōn nūllōs prīncipēs Aeduōrum sēditiōsā et improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant[5] quod dēbeant.

[1] Cum Temporal. Why indicative? §320.
[2] Ablative Absolute, §261 (2).
[3] *Quod* Causal. Why subjunctive? §522.
[4] *Cum* Causal. Why subjunctive? §372.
[5] **nē . . . cōnferant**, Substantive Clause of Purpose. Transl. *from collecting, etc.* Literally, *that they should not collect.*

LESSON LXIX.

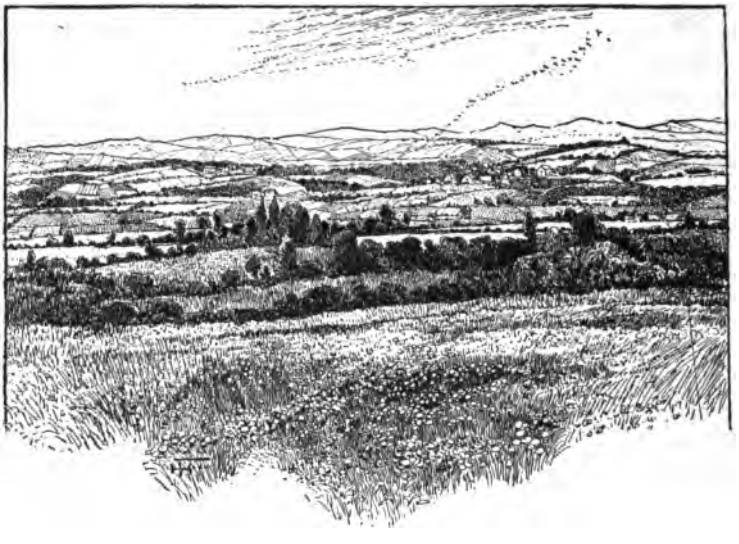
NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

527. *Caesar arraigns the allies for deserting him after inducing him to undertake the war. Liscus says that powerful men in private life hold up the supplies.*

Graviter eōs accūsat quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur. [Cap. XVI. Fīnis.]

Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud

plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant.



NEAR THIS PLACE OCCURRED THE CONFERENCE WITH THE ALLIES.

528. Learn thoroughly the cardinals as far as twenty in the App., **§ 14**, and study carefully the method of formation of all other cardinals. Review the declension of **ūnus, duo, trēs,** in the App., §. **9**, and **mīlle** in § **167**.

OBSERVATIONS.

(*a*) The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are indeclinable, as **quattuor mīlitēs**, *four soldiers*, **decem mīlitum**, *of ten soldiers*.

(*b*) The multiples of **centum**, **ducentī**, **-ae**, **-a**, etc. are declined like the plural of **lātus**.

(*c*) In compounds such as **vīgintī duo**, **trīgintā ūnus**, **centum trēs**, etc. the declinable numeral retains its declension, as **vīgintī trium hominum**, *of twenty-three men*.

529. VOCABULARY.

lībertās, -tātis, f., *freedom*.

quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj., *how great? as great.*

coërceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, *restrain, check.*

dubitō, 1, *doubt* (followed by quīn and the subj.), *hesitate* (followed by complementary inf.).

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bear through, carry through, endure to the end.*

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus, *stand before, excel;* praestat, (impersonal), *it is preferable.*

530. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **lībertās** in the singular.

(2) Write in Latin *of* 352 *men, with three thousand soldiers, for four miles* and the cardinals 545, 648.

(3) Write a synopsis of **perferō** in the 2d singular active.

(4) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **dubitō**.

531. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Quīngentōs equitēs mittāmus, quī Caesarī auxiliō sint. (2) Caesar verēbātur ut Labiēnus cum mīlle mīlitibus venīret. (3) Lēgātōs mittēmus rogātum Caesarem quadringentōs mīlitēs. (4) Liscus dēmum prōposuit quantō cum perīculō id fēcisset. (5) Nōn nūllī Aeduī timēbant nē Caesar lībertātem ēreptūrus esset. (6) Cāsū accidit ut quattuor mīlia mīlitum Genāvae essent. (7) Labiēnus rogāvit quās iniūriās Helvētiī fīnitimīs intulissent. (8) Haec omnia Aeduīs diūtissimē perferenda sunt.

II. (1) Let us march to Geneva with two thousand soldiers. (2) If Caesar had been present, our freedom would not have been snatched away. (3) Would that our allies had not joined battle on that day. (4) If the Swiss hate[1] the Romans, they will not lay down their arms. (5) I fear that Caesar is greatly alarmed by the recent calamity.

[1] Remember that Latin is very exact as to tenses, always employing the tense that will precisely express the time. What is the time of this feeling of hatred?

532. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Eī prīncipēs, quī prīvātim plūs possunt quam magistrātūs ipsī, dīcunt haec: "Praestat imperia Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum perferre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn poterimus. Neque dēbēmus dubitāre quīn Rōmānī lībertātem Aeduīs ūnā cum reliquā Galliā sint ēreptūrī, sī Helvētiōs superāverint.[1]" Eī prīncipēs dīcunt praestāre imperia[2] etc. Dīcunt neque sē dēbēre etc.[2] Liscus etiam haec dīcit: "Nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs geruntur ab eīsdem prīncipibus hostibus ēnūntiantur. Hī ā mē coërcērī nōn possunt. Quīn etiam,[3] quod necessāriō[4] coāctus rem Caesarī ēnūntiāvī, intellegō quantō cum perīculō id fēcerim.[1] Ob eam causam quam diū[5] potuī tacuī." Liscus etiam dīcit ab eīsdem ēnūntiārī nostra cōnsilia[2] etc.; hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse[2] etc.; sēsē intellegere[2] quantō cum perīculō rem Caesarī ēnūntiāverit.[1]

[1] **Why subjunctive? § 488.**

[2] **The student will observe that this clause is the indirect form of a preceding sentence. This indirect form he should complete in Latin and then translate.**

[3] **Quīn etiam**, *but even, nay more.*

[4] **necessāriō**, abl. as adv. *necessarily.*

[5] **quam diū**, *as long as.*

LESSON LXX.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *POSTQUAM*, *UBI*, *PRIUSQUAM*.* — REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVES.

533. *Liscus shows how these treacherous leaders secretly wish for the success of the Swiss. Acting as spies, they report Caesar's plans to the enemy and intimidate the magistrates so that Liscus, the absolute ruler, has feared to tell the truth.*

Praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre dēbēre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā

* **See remark regarding these clauses in the Syntactical Syllabus, page 281.**

Galliā Aeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse. [Cap. XVII. Fīnis.]

534. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Ubi sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua incendērunt. — *When they thought they were ready, they set on fire their towns.* (2) Postquam Caesar id intellēxit, castra mōvit. — *After Caesar learned this, he moved his camp.* (3) Gallī superiōra loca occupāvērunt priusquam oppidum oppūgnāvērunt. — *The Gauls seized the heights before they attacked the town.* (4) Gallī adventum Caesaris exspectābant, priusquam oppidum oppūgnārent. — *The Gauls were waiting for the arrival of Caesar before they attacked the town,* (the presumption being that they did not attack at all).

Observe: —

(1) that in sentences 1 and 2 **ubi**, *when*, and **postquam**, *after*, introduce Temporal Clauses and are followed by the perfect indicative.

(2) that in sentences 3 and 4 observe that **priusquam**, *before*, takes the indicative when the Temporal Clause states a Fact, the subjunctive when the Temporal Clause implies Purpose or Expectation.

535. *RULE.* — 1. *The conjunctions* ***postquam*** *and* ***ubi*** *introduce temporal clauses and are followed by the perfect indicative.*

2. ***Priusquam*** *takes the indicative when its clause states a fact, the subjunctive when its clause implies purpose or expectation.*

536. SUMMARY OF USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

I. In Subordinate Clauses.

1. Purpose { affirmative **ut** or **quī**, or **quō** with comparatives, / negative **nē**.

2. Result { affirmative **ut**, / negative **ut nōn**.

3. Cause and concession — **cum**.

4. Time — **cum** { Ind. with primary tenses. / Subj. with secondary tenses.

5. Substantive { verbs of fearing: **nē** affirmative, **ut** negative; / **perficit, accidit**, etc., or in apposition with a substantive } **ut**.

6. Conditions in Protases
   - I. Present and Past Time.
     - (*a*) Simple — Ind.
     - (*b*) Contrary to Fact { Pres. Time — Imp. Subj. / Past Time — Plup. Subj.
   - II. Future Time.
     - (*a*) More Vivid — Ind.
     - (*b*) Less Vivid — Subj. Pres. or Perf.

7. Indirect Questions — interrogative pronoun, adjective, adverb, or particle.

8. Indirect Discourse, including **quod** Causal.

9. **Priusquam** { Ind. to state a fact; / Subj. to imply purpose or expectation.

II. In Principal Clauses.

1. Commands and Exhortations { Subj. in 1st and 3d pers., negative **nē**; / Imperative in 2d pers., negative **nōlī** or **nōlīte** with inf.

2. Wishes { Future — Possible — Pres. Subj., / Pres. — Unfulfilled — Imp. Subj., **utinam** affirmative, / Past — Unfulfilled — Plup. Subj., **nē** negative.

3. Apodoses of Conditions } like protases in mood and tense.

537. WRITTEN WORK.

Tabulate as above the uses of the subjunctive, illustrating each variety by a short original Latin sentence.

538. EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Ubi hostēs adortus est, sē fugae mandāvērunt. (2) Postquam id Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitātum agminī praemīsit. (3) Priusquam prīncipēs convocāvit, castra mōvit. (4) Caesar adventum Labiēnī exspectābat, priusquam pācem cōnfīrmāret. (5) Cum Belgae suōs ex hībernīs ēdūxissent, Rōmānī eōs aggressī sunt. (6) Cum Labiēnus hībernīs nōn praeesset, mīlitēs verēbantur nē castra expūgnārentur.

II. (1) After Caesar arrived, the enemy withdrew. (2) When Labienus crossed the river, he waited for Caesar. (3) Labienus will wait for Caesar before he will cross the river. (4) Let us find out who is in charge of this fortification. (5) Before he should attack the enemy, Caesar sent out scouts.

TENTH REVIEW.

I. List in a column with meanings and index as formerly directed the Latin nouns numbered 126, 127, 128, and the Latin adjectives numbered 92, 93, 94, in the Word List on pages 275–278.

II. List in a column with principal parts and meanings the Latin verbs numbered 147–171, inclusive, in the Word List on pages 275–278.

III. List in a column and number the Latin verbs meaning: *arrive, bear, be willing, be unwilling, hasten, cross, prohibit, receive, persuade, drive, drive back, put in command of, remove, take by storm, have, hinder, kill, order, conquer, burn, lay aside, accuse.*

Conjugate consecutively both in the present indicative and present subjunctive active the first six of these verbs as follows: the 1st singular of the first, the 2d singular of the second, the 3d singular of the third, the 1st plural of the fourth, etc.[1]

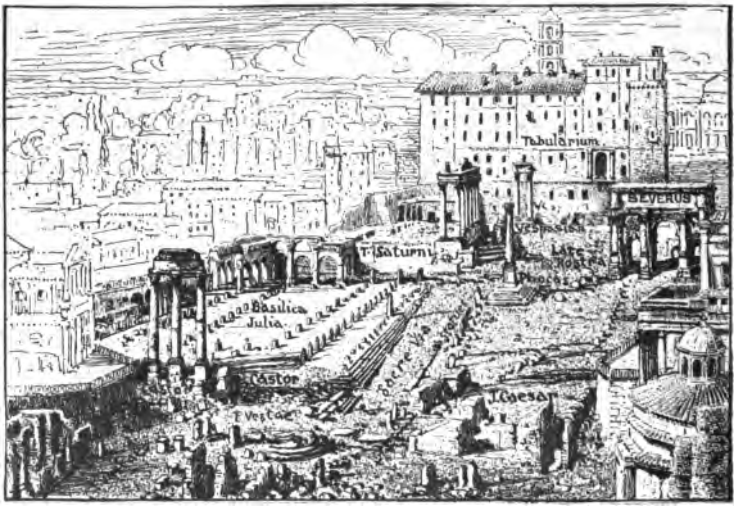
In like manner conjugate in the perfect indicative active and passive, the second six verbs, in the future indicative the third six, and in the imperfect subjunctive the last six.

[1] A model of this scheme will be found in the App. § 30.

IV. List in a column and number the verbs meaning: *set out, attempt, follow, use, attack, promise, get possession of.* Noting that all of the above verbs are deponents, tabulate consecutively with meanings the infinitives and participles.

V. Translate text at the head of Lessons LXVII–LXX, inclusive, pointing out all examples of the rules mentioned above.

VI. Arrange four columns, one each for the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative, and place each of the following constructions under its proper heading, noting that four of these constructions should appear in more than one column: Direct Object, Indirect Object, Possessor, Specification, Extent of Time and Space, Time When, Place in Which, Place to Which, Place from Which, Verbs Compounded with Prepositions, **ūtor**, etc., Special Verbs, the Whole, Means, Agency, Manner, Verbs of Asking, Demanding, etc., Degree of Difference, Cause, Subjective and Objective, Separation, Comparison, Verbs of Making, Choosing, etc., Absolute, Quality.



THE RUINS OF THE ROMAN FORUM. TO THE LEFT IS THE BASILICA, AN EDIFICE FOR COURTS AND BUSINESS OFFICES, ERECTED BY CAESAR. IN THE FOREGROUND IS THE TEMPLE OF THE DEIFIED CAESAR.

CHAPTERS XVIII–XXIX INCLUSIVE

OF

THE GALLIC WAR.

CONTINUING THE STORY OF CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN.

NOTE. — The student has now studied all forms and principles necessary to the reading of Caesar. The remainder of the story of the First Campaign must be read by reference to the general vocabulary, and with the aid of Development Exercises, which will no longer attempt to give a connected account of the story, but will be limited to a treatment of those sentences likely to present difficulty in their original form. Indirect Discourse will generally be simplified by giving in the Development Exercises the equivalent Direct Discourse, as has been done in the exercise immediately following. The English-Latin exercises occurring at the end of each chapter should be divided by the teacher into as many parts as the days required to complete a chapter. Lack of time may necessitate the omission of some of the sentences, but should not be permitted to crowd out of consideration the review of the principles involved as indicated by the references preceding each exercise. The sentences numbered in heavy type contain those constructions of most frequent occurrence, as indicated in the Syntactical Syllabus.

539. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Plūribus praesentibus, Caesar eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat. Itaque ex Dumnorīge sōlō ea quaerit. Tum Dumnorīx līberius et audācius dīcit. Caesar reperit haec esse vēra: Homō ipse erat Dumnorīx, homō summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum.

PART I.

540. *Liscus, when questioned in private, confirms Caesar's suspicion that Dumnorix is the mischief maker.*

THE SCUTUM, OR HEAVY SHIELD OF A LEGIONARIUS.

Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum.

541. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Dumnorīx complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēbat. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxerat et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāverat.

Dumnorīx māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alēbat et circum sē habēbat. Nōn sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter poterat. Huius potentiae causā mātrem hominī in Biturīgibus illīc nōbilissimō in mātrimōnium collocāverat. Dumnorīx ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēbat. Sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās in aliās cīvitātēs nūptum collocāverat.

PART II.

542. *By bullying other bidders, Dumnorix procures the contract for collecting the Aeduan taxes at a figure that enables him to accumulate a great fortune and bribe his way to popular favor. He further strengthens his hand by cleverly planned marriages with the princely houses of neighboring states.*

A ROMAN LEGIONARY STANDARD.

Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus

et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse.

543. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Propter eam affīnitātem Helvētiīs favet et cupit.[1] Suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs ōderat.[2] Sī quid accidit Rōmānīs, in summam spem rēgnī obtinendī per Helvētiōs venit. Imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā grātiā quam habet dēspērat.

In quaerendō reperiēbat proelium[3] equestre adversum, quod paucīs ante diēbus factum esset, initium eius fugae ā Dumnorīge et eius equitibus factum esse, eōrum fugā reliquum equitātum esse perterritum.

[1] **cupit**, *desires their success.*

[2] The pluperfect of the defective verb **ōdī** has the sense of the imperfect.

[3] *On inquiry he found out, in regard to the unfortunate cavalry battle, which had been fought a few days before, that the beginning of this flight had been, etc.*

PART III.

544. *Dumnorix favors the Swiss on account of his Swiss wife and hates the Romans, hoping in the event of the latters' defeat to make himself a king. Caesar also finds out that Dumnorix had treacherously brought about the repulse in the cavalry skirmish a few days before.*

Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam

in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

545. EXERCISES.*

Review Ablative and Genitive of Quality in § 303, Dative of Purpose in § 457, Indirect Discourse in §§ 284–286.

(1) Caesar thought that Diviciacus was of a friendly spirit toward[1] him. (2) We desire our clients to be of great loyalty[2] toward[1] Caesar. (3) Caesar sent nine ships as a protection to this bridge. (4) We sent away the leaders who were not of great good will[3] towards us. (5) Among the Swiss were very many retainers of distinguished loyalty. (6) This bank was fortified by a band of 500 cavalry. (7) Caesar replied that the soldiers were of remarkable good will[3] towards himself. (8) This town had been fortified by a wall of sixteen feet. (9) Caesar hoped that the senate would be (fut. inf.) of friendly disposition toward him. (10) Caesar perceived that the seventh legion had been left as an aid to him. (11) A bridge was made over (in) this river with rafts. (12) The senate replied that this was (for) a great calamity to them. (13) Very many soldiers assembled at the banks of the Rhone as an aid to Caesar. (14) Caesar ordered the soldiers to march one by one. (15) A space of fifteen feet intervened between the bank of the river and these buildings.

[1] in with acc. [2] fidēs. [3] voluntās.

* See Note, p. 215.

CHAPTER XIX.

546. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ad hās suspīciōnes certissimae rēs accēdēbant, quod[1] Dumnorīx obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset,[2] quod[1] ea omnia, Caesare et cīvitāte īnscientibus, fēcisset. Eās rēs satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum animadverteret.[3] Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum resistēbat, quod[1] Dīviciācī summum studium in[4] populum Rōmānum cōgnōverat.

[1] **quod**, conj., trans. *the fact that.*
[2] **dandōs cūrāsset**, see § **470**, note 2.
[3] **in eum animadverteret**, indirect question, transl. *punish him.*
[4] **in**, *towards.*

PART I.

547. *Having learned these facts regarding Dumnorix, and having confirmed his suspicions regarding him, Caesar thought he had good reason to punish him or order the Aeduans to do so. Regard for his brother, Diviciacus, stays Caesar's hand.*

PILA, OR HEAVY JAVELINS, THROWN AT THE BEGINNING OF A BATTLE.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat.

548. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per Cāium Valerium Troucillum cum Dīviciācō Caesar colloquitur. Hīc Troucillus fuit prīnceps Galliae prōvinciae et familiāris Caesaris, cui[1] Caesar summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat. Caesar commonefacit quae ipsō[2] praesente dicta sint. Caesar hortātur ut ipse[3] dē eō statuat.

[1] **cui**, dative after expression of trusting, transl. *in whom*.
[2] **ipsō praesente**, ablative absolute, transl. *in his presence*.
[3] **ipse** like **ipsō** above refers to Caesar.

PART II.

549. *Caesar's fear that he would wound the feelings of Diviciacus leads him to consult with his faithful ally before deciding upon the punishment of Dumnorix.*

Nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

550. EXERCISES.

Review Objective and Subjective Genitive in § 450, Genitive of the Whole, § 166, and Demonstrative Pronouns in § 66, 74, App. 16.

(1) Very many of his soldiers were driven back almost in sight of Caesar. (2) A space of nine miles intervened daily between the cavalry and the rest of the army. (3) A garrison of sixteen soldiers was left there as an aid to the cavalry. (4) The good will of that whole army was sought by Labienus. (5) The Swiss were elated by the memory of this victory. (6) The senate was greatly

alarmed by the bold plots of this leader. (7) The whole number of their soldiers returned to that camp without hope of victory. (8) On the arrival of five legions of the army, Caesar decided to join battle. (9) Without the aid of the cavalry, Caesar will not attempt to follow the enemy. (10) Many of the Swiss were greatly alarmed by their recent change of fortune.

CHAPTER XX.

551. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Dīviciācus Caesarem complexus est. Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit hīs verbīs:

"Sciō* illa[1] esse vēra. Nec quisquam ex eō plūs dolōris capit*[2] quam ego. Plūs dolōris capiō propterea quod, cum (when) ego domī atque in reliquā Galliā grātiā[3] plūrimum poteram,† Dumnorīx minimum propter adulēscentiam poterat.† Per mē grātiā crēvit.† Quibus[4] opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam meam grātiam sed paene ad meam perniciem ūtitur." †

[1] **illa**, *those charges.*
[2] **capit**, *takes*, i.e. *feels grief.*
[3] **gratiā plūrimum posse**, *to be very great in influence.*
[4] **Quibus**: translate as demonstrative. Why?

PART I.

552. *With tears and embraces, the frightened prince entreats Caesar not to decide upon anything too severe against his brother, in spite of the fact that Dumnorix is using power acquired through Diviciacus to the latter's ruin.*

Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse

* † In the Indirect Discourse in Part I, those verbs marked with an asterisk become infinitives, while those marked with a dagger become subjunctive. Why?

vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur.

553. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Diviciacus continues his plea for his brother's life.

Ego tamen commoveor et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī. Quod sī[1] quid gravius Dumnorīgī acciderit,[2] cum ego eum locum amīcitiae apud tē teneō, nēmō exīstimābit id nōn meā voluntāte factum esse. Quā ex rē erit[3] utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā mē āvertantur."

Haec cum (*when*) ā Caesare petit, Caesar rogat ut fīnem ōrandī faciat.

[1] **quod si**, *but if*.

[2] **acciderit**, future perfect becomes pluperfect subjunctive in the Indirect Discourse in Part II, being a subordinate clause after a secondary tense. Why does the present subjunctive **āvertantur** become imperfect subjunctive?

[3] **erit**, *will be*, i.e. *will come to pass*.

PART II.

554. *Love for his brother and regard for popular opinion will not permit Diviciacus to consent to the punishment of Dumnorix. Moved by the tears of Diviciacus, Caesar consoles him.*

Sēsē[1] tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat, fīnem ōrandī faciat.

[1] A verb of saying must be understood before **sēsē**.

555. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar Dīviciācō ostendit eius grātiam[1] apud sē esse tantī ut eius voluntātī[2] iniūriam condōnet. Dumnorīgī ostendit quae in eō reprehendat.[3] Quae cīvitās querātur,[3] prōpōnit. Dīcit sē Dīviciācō[2] praeterita condōnāre. Caesar scit quae agat,[3] quibuscum loquātur.[3]

[1] **grātiam . . . tantī**, *his favor is of so much weight with him.*

[2] Dative, indirect object of **condōnō**; translate, *he forgives the wrong in consideration of* etc.

[3] Indirect Question; **quae** is an interrogative pronoun.

PART III.

556. *Caesar summons Dumnorix and, in the presence of his brother, warns him of the danger in which he stands. Caesar then puts spies on the track of the ambitious Gaul to insure his good behavior.*

Tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

557. EXERCISES.

Review Dative with Special Verbs in § **354**, Ablative with **Ūtor**, etc., in § **395**, Optative Subjunctive in §§ **513** and **514**.

(1) Oh that we may persuade the Swiss not to attack those forts. (2) We think that the senate is opposing Caesar. (3) The Swiss were-anxious-for (**studeō**) the forts. (4) Oh that we had not relied on our recent victory. (5) They were using these buildings also (as) a protection. (6) On account of their desire of freedom, the hostages were anxious for a change of fortune. (7) Caesar likewise relied on the loyalty of these nine legions.

(8) Would that our leader had got-possession-of the buildings of this town. (9) Caesar did not allow his allies to use treachery. (10) For this reason, the fathers of these children opposed the customs of the Gauls. (11) Orgetorix wished to use the influence of his relatives. (12) On account of his recent victory, the Gauls were-anxious-for Caesar's good will. (13) Caesar did not use the cavalry before the fourth watch. (14) On account of his kindness, we are-anxious-for peace. (15) Oh that our friends had not resisted his kindness.

CHAPTER XXI.

558. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar certior factus est hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse. Certior factus etc., Caesar mīsit (hominēs) quī[1] cōgnōscerent quālis[2] in circuitū[3] ascēnsus esset. Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, iubet summum iugum montis ascendere. Cum eīs ducibus,[4] quī iter cōgnōverant, Labiēnum montem ascendere iubet. Cum explōrātōribus Cōnsidius praemittitur.

[1] **quī cōgnōscerent**, Relative Clause of Purpose.
[2] **quālis . . . esset**, Indirect Question.
[3] **in circuitū**, *in a roundabout way* (so as not to be seen by the enemy at the foot of the mountain).
[4] **ducibus**, an appositive of **eīs**, *with those as guides who etc.* (*i.e.* the **hominēs** sent out before).

559. *Caesar lays a cunning trap to catch the Swiss by sending Labienus up the mountain above their camp while he himself is to attack them in front. Considius, a Gaul with a high military reputation, takes part in the enterprise.*

Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum,

lēgātum prō praetōre cum duābus legiōnibus et īīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

NEAR HERE CAESAR PLANNED TO TRAP THE SWISS.

560. EXERCISES.

Review Genitive and Dative with Adjectives, §§ **278, 450, 2**; Indirect Question, § **488**; Relative Pronouns, §§ **81–83.**

(**1**) These leaders also were skilled in military affairs. (**2**) They did not desist, because they were desirous of victory. (**3**) Caesar wondered why (**quārē**) the leaders had not enrolled five legions. (**4**) Meanwhile they replied that their legions were friendly to the enemy. (*5*) The soldiers desired to know what military standards had been captured. (**6**) Caesar wished to find out what legions were desirous of battle. (7) Around the military standards were those soldiers most skilled in fighting.[1] (**8**) Caesar

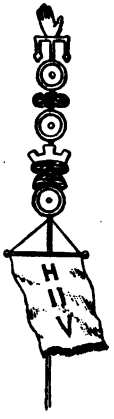
[1] For the word "fighting" use the gerund of **pūgnō**. For case see § **450** (2).

led out the soldiers who were most friendly to him. (9) The rivers which arise in the mountains are nearest the ocean. (10) Our fathers, who were very skilled in military affairs, engaged-in (**faciō**) many battles.

CHAPTER XXII.

561. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Cum (*when*) summus mōns[1] ā Labiēnō tenērētur, cum ipse[2] ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus[3] abesset, cum neque aut ipsīus[2] adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō[4] ad eum accurrit. Cōnsidius dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī, sē id ā Gallicīs īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse.



A Roman Cohort Standard.

PART I.

562. *When Caesar has his trap all ready to spring, with Labienus above the enemy and his own forces in front and neither observed, Considius rushes up with an important piece of misinformation.*

Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit.

[1] **summus mōns**, *the top of the hill.*
[2] **ipse** and **ipsius** refer to Caesar.
[3] **passibus**, Ablative of Degree of Difference.
[4] **equō admissō**, *his horse let go*, i.e. *on a gallop.*

563. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Labiēnō[1] erat praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret. Erat praeceptum nē Labiēnus proelium committeret nisi ipsīus[2] cōpiae vīsae essent. Id erat praeceptum ut[3] impetus undique ūnō tempore in hostēs fieret. Labiēnus, ut[3] eī[1] ā Caesare praeceptum erat, proeliō abstinēbat. Multō[1] diē Caesar cōgnōvit montem ā Labiēnō tenērī. Caesar item cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvisse. Cōnsidius, timōre perterritus, Caesarī renūntiāverat prō vīsō[5] id quod nōn vīderat.[6]

[1] **Indirect Object of praeceptum erat, translate as if subject, though the actual subject is the order given. See § 498.**

[2] *I.e.* **Caesar's forces.**

[3] **ut with the subjunctive means *that* or *so that*; with the indicative ut means *as*.**

[4] **multō diē, *late in the day*.**

[5] **prō vīsō, *as seen*.**

[6] **vīderat in the Indirect Discourse in Part II becomes subjunctive. Why?**

PART II.

564. *Labienus, unable to understand why Caesar did not attack the Swiss in front, waited for his commander according to orders. The Swiss, becoming aware of the danger of their situation, decamped, leaving Caesar to find out how he had been misled through the foolish imagination of Considius. Caesar then resumes his pursuit of the Swiss at the usual distance.*

Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proelioque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

565. EXERCISES.

Review Ablative of Degree of Difference, § 365; Ablative of Comparison, § 351; Ablative of Specification, § 122; Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs, §§ 104, 105, 309, 310, App., §§ 12, 13.

(1) Caesar did not follow the enemy more than twelve miles. (2) In the second watch the enemy were in all more than five miles away from our camp. (3) These territories are wider than territories which border on the ocean. (4) The rivers which arise in the mountains are more than five miles away from our camp. (5) The Swiss are much more powerful in arms than the Allobroges. (6) The Gauls began to burn their towns, twelve in number. (7) Our camp was pitched twelve miles away from this town (8) These roads are greater in width than the roads of Gaul. (9) Our army underwent far greater dangers than (did) the Gauls. (10) The Aedui obtained their request from Caesar more easily than (did) the Belgians.

CHAPTER XXIII.

566. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Bīduum omnīnō superērat, cum[1] frūmentum exercituī mētīrī oportēret. Bibracte erat oppidum Aeduōrum longē māximum et cōpiōsissimum. Quod ā Bibracte nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat, reī[2] frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit. Helvētiī exīstimāvērunt, Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs, ā sē discēdere. Helvētiī id eō[3] magis exīstimāvērunt, quod (*because*) prīdiē Rōmānī, superiōribus locīs ā Labiēnō occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent.[4] Helvētiī, seu quod id exīstimārent,[4] sīve eō,[3] quod cōnfīderent[4] Rōmānōs rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse,

[1] **cum**, *to the time when.*

[2] **reī frūmentāriae**, dative after **prō** in composition; transl. *he thought he ought to look out for provisions.*

[3] **eō**, Ablative of Cause; transl. *on this account.*

[4] **Subjunctive**, because Caesar is stating the reasoning of the Swiss. See **§ 522.**

cōnsilium commūtāvērunt. Cōnsiliō commūtātō et itinere conversō, nostrōs īnsequī coepērunt.

567. *The next day Caesar abandons his pursuit of the Swiss in order to go to Bibracte after provisions. The Swiss now turn around and follow Caesar, either because they believe him afraid of them or because they hope to cut him off from supplies. They thus give him the advantage of choosing the battle field.*

Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per

On the Hill in the Background was the Old Town of Bibracte.

fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis, quod prīdiē, superiōribus locīs occu-

pātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

568. EXERCISES.

Review Ablative of Means, § 97; Ablative of Cause, § 137; Quod Causal, § 522; Ablative Absolute, § 262.

(1) On account of his popularity, Dumnorix gained-his-request from the people. (2) Driven back by the onset of our (men), the enemy hid themselves in the woods. (3) When this thing was announced (abl. abs.), Caesar began to make an attack on the enemy. (4) Since the enemy had drawn up their line of battle, Caesar placed his legions at intervals. (5) By leading away the horses (abl. abs.), Caesar cut off all hope of flight. (6) Caesar placed the cavalry and horses around the military standards because the soldiers were thoroughly alarmed. (7) Having called his lieutenants to a council of war, Caesar showed them how great the danger was. (8) Our army hastened to cross the river by joining boats together (abl. abs.). (9) Caesar blamed his lieutenants because they had not attacked the enemy. (10) Driven back on account of the speed of the enemy's onset, our men desisted from the attack on (of) the fortification.

CHAPTER XXIV.

569. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar id[1] animum advertit. In mediō colle[2] triplicem[3] aciem legiōnum quattuor veterānārum īnstrūxit. Duās legiōnēs, quās

[1] **id**, acc. after **ad** in composition; literally, *Caesar turns his mind to this*, i.e. *notices this*.

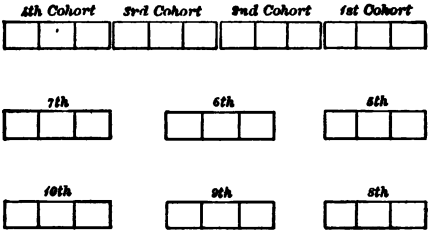
[2] **in mediō colle**, *on the middle of the hill, halfway up*. Caesar needed such a vantage ground from which to hurl the heavy javelins with force.

[3] **triplicem**, *in three ranks*, the first two of which took turns in engaging the enemy in front, while the third remained in the rear as a reserve.

proximē cōnscrīpserat, in summō iugō[1] collocārī iussit. Iussit duās legiōnēs et omnia auxilia in summō iugō collocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī. Helvētiī, cōnfertissimā[2] aciē, phalange factā, successērunt.

570. *Caesar selects a hill as a battle ground and arranges his small force with consummate skill. The Swiss, outnumbering him four to one, expose themselves to the Roman javelins in a solid mass.*

Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās[3] in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab īīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.



THE TRIPLE BATTLE LINE.

571. EXERCISES.

Review Dative with Compound Verbs, § **394**; Accusative with Compound Verbs, § **459**; Double Accusatives, §§ **505-507**.

(1) Caesar placed Labienus in charge of the line of battle which he had drawn up. (2) Caesar dismissed the assembly

[1] **in summō iugō** (compare **summus mōns**), *on the top of the ridge.* The raw recruits and the auxilia, consisting of Gallic cavalry, bowmen and slingers, could not be depended upon for serious fighting; and so are put in a safe place where they would appear formidable to the ignorant Swiss.

[2] A rude square or phalanx proved an admirable target for the Roman javelins.

[3] For **sarcinae** carried by marching soldier, see cut on page 195.

and led his forces across the river. (3) The leaders perceived that the tenth legion was not present at the battle. (4) Caesar asked why the tenth legion had not crossed the river of their own accord. (5) Meanwhile the lieutenant who was in charge of the military standards withstood the attack of the enemy. (6) Having drawn up a triple line of battle (abl. abs.), Caesar was anxious for the onset. (7) Caesar was anxious (**cupiō**) to know which legion had crossed the river first. (8) The tenth legion surpassed all the others in bravery and (**atque**) loyalty. (9) His friends elected Caesar consul at Rome. (10) Labienus was selected lieutenant on account of his distinguished bravery.

CHAPTER XXV.

572. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar, prīmum suum equum, deinde equōs omnium[1] ex cōnspectū remōvit, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret. Caesar, prīmum suō equō remōtō, deinde equīs omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs, cohortātus suōs, proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs Rōmānī prīmum pīla[2] mīsērunt ē superiōre locō. Pīlīs[3] missīs, hostium phalangem facile perfrēgērunt. Eā phalange disiectā, gladiōs dēstrinxērunt. Gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Plūra hostium scūta ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxa et conligāta sunt. Eīs scūtīs conligātīs,[4] cum (*when*)

THE ROMANS FIRST HURLED THE HEAVY JAVELINS AND THEN CHARGED WITH DRAWN SWORDS.

[1] **omnium**, *i.e.* of all the mounted officers.

[2] This was the regular method of fighting on the part of the Romans: first, to disorganize the ranks of the enemy by a series of volleys of javelins; and then, to charge the demoralized foe with swords.

[3] **pīlum**, a long heavy spear intended for throwing and not thrusting.

[4] The enemy were so crowded together that their large **scūta** overlapped and were easily pinned together.

ferrum[1] sē īnflexisset, id ēvellere nōn poterant. Neque pīla ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, ut multī, bracchiō[2] diū iactātō, praeoptārent nūdō corpore[3] pūgnāre.

[1] **ferrum**, the iron neck of the javelin was purposely made soft so as to bend and render the weapon useless to the enemy.

[2] **bracchiō diū iactātō**, *after their arms had been tossed about for a long time.*

[3] **nūdō corpore**, *with body exposed.*

PART I.

573. *The javelins hurled down upon the Swiss demoralize their crowded throng, whose bravery avails nothing against the military science of the Romans.*

Caesar, prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile

THE BATTLE GROUND FROM CAESAR'S POSITION.

hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant; multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre.

574. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Coepērunt et pedem referre[1] et eō[2] sē recipere. Bōiī et Tulingī agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant. Aggressī nostrōs ex itinere[3] ab latere apertō,[4] Bōiī et Tulingī circumvenīre coepērunt. Monte ab Helvētiīs captō[5] et nostrīs succēdentibus, Bōiī et Tulingī nostrōs circumvenīre coepērunt. Helvētiī, id cōnspicātī, rūrsus īnstāre coepērunt. Rōmānī sīgna convertērunt[6] et bipertītō intulērunt.

[1] **pedem referre**, *to withdraw*. Literally, what? [2] **eō**, adv., *thither*.

[3] **ex itinere** modifies **nostrōs**, *they attacked ours on the march*, i.e. *while marching in pursuit of the Swiss*.

[4] **ab latere apertō**, *on the exposed flank*, i.e. *on the rear and side exposed in swinging around after the retreating Swiss*.

[5] **monte captō et nostrīs succēdentibus**, ablative absolutes; translate by temporal clauses, making **capiō** mean *reach*.

[6] The third line had to turn around to resist the Boii and Tulingi behind them.

PART II.

BOWMAN. CAESAR'S AIDS CONSISTED OF GALLIC CAVALRY, BOWMEN AND SLINGERS.

575. *The Swiss give way and withdraw to a near-by hill. The Romans while pursuing them are exposed to a very dangerous attack in the rear. The third and rear line wheels about to face the new foe.*

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv

agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre; et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipertītō intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

576. EXERCISES.

Review Ablative of Accompaniment, § 89; Ablative of Manner, § 318; Subjunctive of Purpose and Result, §§ 220, 228; Substantive Clauses, §§ 442, 443.

(1) Labienus will exhort the soldiers to fight boldly. (2) Caesar feared that the Aedui would not be able to sustain the attack of the Swiss. (3) That he might not be cut off from nearer Gaul,

HILL WHERE THE BOII AND TULINGI ATTACKED.

Caesar hastened to attack the cavalry with two legions. (4) Caesar feared that the enemy would use swords and heavy javelins in this battle. (5) It happened that our soldiers had been cut off

from their baggage. (6) For sixteen days, Caesar followed up the cavalry with the light-armed (**expedītus**) soldiers. (7) Our soldiers attacked the town with such violence that they received many wounds. (8) Caesar seized the heights, that his men might harass the enemy more easily. (9) On account of their recent disgrace, Caesar did not lead this legion with him. (10) It happened that Caesar had enrolled five legions there.

CHAPTER XXVI.

PART I.

577. *After a long double-headed battle, the Swiss and their allies withdraw, stubbornly fighting among the baggage wagons till late at night.*

Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est.[1] Diūtius cum[2] sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī[3] sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō,[4] cum[5] ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit,[1] āversum[6] hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum[7] esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt.

[1] **pūgnātum est**, passive of an intransitive verb used impersonally; translate *they fought.*

[2] **cum**, causal.

[3] **alterī . . . alterī**, *the one party* (the Swiss) . . . *the other party* (the Boii and Tulingi).

[4] **proeliō**, ablative instead of accusative to express Duration of Time, especially common with a noun modified by **tōtus**.

[5] **cum**, concessive.

[6] **āversum**, *turned in flight.*

[7] **cum**, temporal. Why followed by subjunctive?

PART II.

578. *Bereft of food, shelter, and hope, a dejected multitude of one hundred and thirty thousand men, women, and children, worn with the fatigue and anxieties of battle, press forward across a strange country all night long and for three days thereafter in a vain effort to escape the Roman conqueror. Though so severely crippled himself as to feel unable to pursue them, Caesar sends messages ahead forbidding the Gallic natives to afford the wretched refugees the least aid or comfort. Three days later he sets out with all his forces to overhaul the demoralized host.*

Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō[1] pervēnērunt, cum[2] et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī[3] sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

LETTERS WERE WRITTEN ON THIN, POLISHED BOARDS COATED WITH WAX.

579. EXERCISES.

Review Time When, § 202; Duration of Time and Extent of Space, § 174; Temporal Clauses, § 320.

(1) For a space of four days Caesar will follow up the enemy. (2) At sunset the Gauls sent messengers to announce the unfavorable battle. (3) Influenced by the kindness of Caesar, the Gauls

[1] **diē quārtō**, *in three days* (counting the day of battle made **diē quārtō**, *on the fourth day*).

[2] **cum**, causal. Caesar's loss must have been heavy. Why?

[3] **quī . . . habitūrum**, Indirect Discourse **habitūrum**, future infinitive principal verb Indirect Discourse.

sought peace on the same day. (4) The Romans followed up the enemy for about sixteen miles with the light-armed (**expeditus**) cavalry. (5) Within five hours the enemy were driven back to their trenches. (6) On the previous day Caesar had engaged in battle that he might avenge this insult. (7) When Caesar had joined the ships together, he placed guards at intervals. (8) The ramparts were sixteen feet in width. (9) A few of our men fell while they were fighting fiercely around these ramparts. (10) After they had fought fiercely for three hours around the baggage, our men quickly withdrew into camp.

CHAPTER XXVII.

580. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar obsidēs, arma, servōs poposcit. Dum ea[1] conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, circiter VI mīlia hominum ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī[2] sunt. Eī hominēs sīve timōre perterritī sunt nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī sunt, quod[3] exīstimārent suam fugam in tantā multitūdine dēditicIōrum aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī posse. Sīve timōre perterritī, sīve spē salūtis inductī, prīmā nocte[4] ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī, ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

581. *The Swiss, without baggage or provisions, are forced to sue for peace. Six thousand attempt to escape across the Rhine to Germany.*

Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent,

[1] **ea**, *these*, *i.e.* **obsidēs, servōs, and arma.**
[2] **ēgressī agrees with milia in sense, not form.**
[3] **quod, causal. Why followed by subjunctive?**
[4] **prīmā nocte**, *in the evening*. **Compare prīmā luce, multō diē.**

atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

582. EXERCISES.

Review Place to Which and from Which, §§ **235**, **236**; Place in Which, §§ **243**, **244**; Ablative of Separation, § **68**; Reflexive Pronouns, §§ **182–184**.

(1) Having been driven back into camp, our (men) were cut off from their baggage. (2) In this battle, the Gauls used long swords and broad shields. (3) After receiving many wounds, their (men) retreated (**sē recipere**) into camp. (4) At sunset, the soldiers left the ramparts that they might harass the enemy. (5) Our (men) were driven back from the ramparts of the enemy by their long javelins. (6) The Romans cut to pieces the enemy, who had hidden themselves in the woods. (7) At Rome, Caesar enrolled two new legions. (8) The legions, which were wintering at Geneva, did not leave their winter quarters. (9) The enemy used their javelins and swords in order to drive back the Romans from their ramparts. (10) The legion that left Rome with Labienus was cut to pieces at Geneva.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

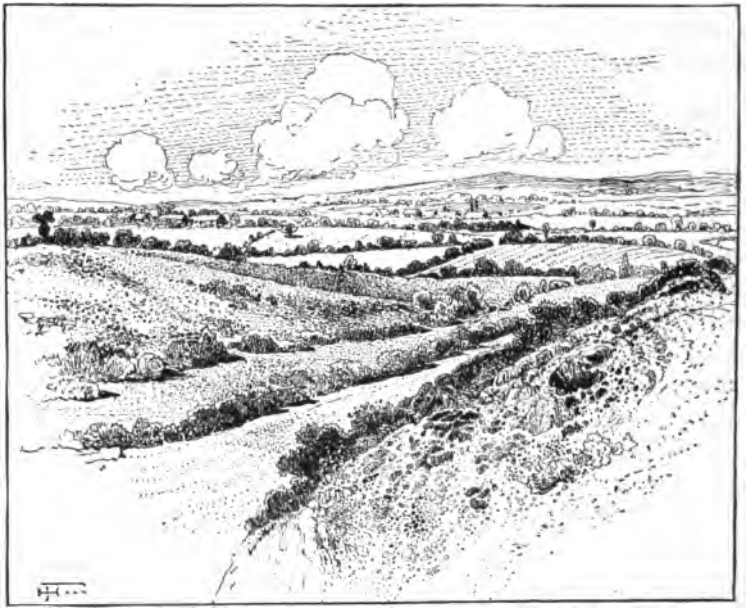
583. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Quod[1] ubi[2] Caesar resciit, hīs, quōrum per fīnēs sex mīlia ierant, imperāvit utī conquīrerent et redūcerent. Eōs reductōs

[1] **quod**, an initial relative; translate as demonstrative. [2] **ubi**, *when*.

in numerō hostium[1] habuit. Omnibus frūgibus amissīs, nihil domī erat Helvētiīs, quō famem tolerārent. Quod nihil domī erat, Caesar Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut Helvētiīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent.

[1] **in numerō hostium, a polite way of saying that Caesar butchered the whole six thousand in order to teach the Gauls the necessity of keeping faith with the new Roman governor.**



THE LAST STAND: THE SCENE OF THE FIGHT OVER THE BAGGAGE WAGONS.

PART I.

584. *Caesar recaptures and slaughters the six thousand. The others are received in surrender. The Swiss are ordered back to their desolate country, to be fed for a time on the supplies of Roman allies.*

Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit;

reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent.

585. **DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Helvētiōs ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit agrum Helvētiōrum vacāre. Nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germānī in fīnēs Helvētiōrum trānsīrent. Timēbat nē fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Germānī essent. Aeduī petiērunt ut Bōiōs in suīs fīnibus collocārent. Id petiērunt quod Bōiī ēgregiā virtūte cōgnitī erant. Aeduīs[1] petentibus ut Bōiōs in suīs fīnibus collocārent Caesar concessit. Quibus Bōiīs Aeduī agrōs dedērunt et quōs (Bōiōs) posteā in parem condiciōnem iūris et lībertātis recēpērunt.

[1] **Aeduīs, dative after concessit. This makes ut . . . collocārent the direct object of petentibus. Translate freely,** *Caesar granted the request of the Aedui that they might settle*, **etc.**

PART II.

586. *Caesar makes Switzerland a buffer state between the Germans and the Roman province. He permits his faithful allies, the Aedui, to strengthen themselves by annexing to their state the brave Boii.*

Ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōs-

que posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

587. EXERCISES.

Review Genitive and Dative of Possessor, §§ 76, 386; and Conditional Sentences, §§ 479–482. (Express possession in following sentences by the Dative of Possessor.)

(1) Caesar had many relatives who were wounded in that battle. (2) If these messengers had been wounded, we would not have been led back in safety. (3) If their fathers should be handed over, these boys would return home. (4) Our soldiers had heavy shields and long swords, with which they wounded very many of the enemy. (5) If the enemy conceal themselves in the woods, our men will be led back to their ramparts. (6) The leader wondered how many of the horses had been wounded in this battle. (7) The messengers handed over the shields which they had to our men. (8) The wounds which the cavalryman had were received in the recent battle. (9) Our soldiers had nothing left except their swords and shields. (10) If the enemy were to withstand the attack of our cavalry, they would conquer.

CHAPTER XXIX.

588. *In the captured Swiss camp Caesar finds lists containing a census of the number of emigrants, men, women, and children. Out of 368,000 only 110,000 survivors were found. The Swiss now find their territories ample for their diminished numbers.*

In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae[1] repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae[2] et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim

[1] **tabulae**, *lists;* literally, *tablets*, presumably of wood bound together by a hinge and waxed inside after the Roman fashion.

[2] **litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae**, *made out in Greek characters*. The Gauls may have become familiar with the simpler method of notation through the Greek traders from Marseilles.

ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum[1] Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

[1] **capitum**, literally, *heads*, as we say *head of cattle*. Translate, *persons*.

589. EXERCISES.

Review Ablative and Dative of Agency, §§ **193**, **425**; Periphrastic Conjugations, § **423**; Adjectives with genitive in **-ius**, §§ **144**, **145**.

(1) These children must be led back into safety by us. (2) This assembly ought to be dismissed by Caesar before the flight of the whole army. (3) After the heights have been seized (abl. abs.) by us, the Romans are going to pitch their camp there. (4) The children of our soldiers must not be sent under the yoke of the Gauls. (5) On the next day a triple line of battle was drawn up by Caesar before the town. (6) When the messengers return, the children are going to leave the camp. (7) The Gauls must not be despised by us on account of this unsuccessful battle. (8) We are going to exhort the tenth legion to come at the critical moment (*i.e.* at the necessary time). (9) Caesar knows that he must win over the minds of the Gauls by another victory. (10) Caesar is not going to allow the messengers to leave the camp before sunset.

APPENDIX

AND

VOCABULARIES.

TABLES OF DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, COMPARISONS, AND NUMERALS.

NOUNS.

1. First Declension — Stems in -a.

	fossa, f., *ditch.*		**provincia**, f., *province.*	
	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nominative	fossa	fossae	prōvincia	prōvinciae
Genitive	fossae	fossārum	prōvinciae	prōvinciārum
Dative	fossae	fossīs	prōvinciae	prōvinciīs
Accusative	fossam	fossās	prōvinciam	prōvinciās
Ablative	fossā	fossīs	prōvinciā	prōvinciīs

2. Second Declension.

	Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul.*		**oppidum**, -ī, n., *town.*	
	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nominative	Gallus	Gallī	oppidum	oppida
Genitive	Gallī	Gallōrum	oppidī	oppidōrum
Dative	Gallō	Gallīs	oppidō	oppidīs
Accusative	Gallum	Gallōs	oppidum	oppida
Ablative	Gallō	Gallīs	oppidō	oppidīs
Vocative	Galle			

	ager, -ī, m., *field.*		**puer**, -ī, m., f., *child.*	
	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nominative	ager	agrī	puer	puerī
Genitive	agrī	agrōrum	puerī	puerōrum
Dative	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs
Accusative	agrum	agrōs	puerum	puerōs
Ablative	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs

3. Third Declension.

a. CONSONANT STEMS.

	lēx, f., *law.*		**virtūs**, f., *bravery.*		**mercātor**, m., *trader.*	
	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nom.	lēx	lēgēs	virtūs	virtūtēs	mercātor	mercātōrēs
Gen.	lēgis	lēgum	virtūtis	virtūtum	mercātōris	mercātōrum
Dat.	lēgī	lēgibus	virtūtī	virtūtibus	mercātōrī	mercātōribus
Acc.	lēgem	lēgēs	virtūtem	virtūtēs	mercātōrem	mercātōrēs
Abl.	lēge	lēgibus	virtūte	virtūtibus	mercātōre	mercātōribus

	cōnsul, m., *consul.*		**nōbilitās**, f., *nobility.*		**flūmen**, n., *river.*	
	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nom.	cōnsul	cōnsulēs	nōbilitās	no plural	flūmen	flūmina
Gen.	cōnsulis	cōnsulum	nōbilitātis		flūminis	flūminum
Dat.	cōnsulī	cōnsulibus	nōbilitātī		flūminī	flūminibus
Acc.	cōnsulem	cōnsulēs	nōbilitātem		flūmen	flūmina
Abl.	cōnsule	cōnsulibus	nōbilitāte		flūmine	flūminibus

4. *b.* I-STEMS.

	pars, f., *part.*		**fīnis**, m., f., *end.*	
	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nominative	pars	partēs	fīnis	fīnēs
Genitive	partis	partium	fīnis	fīnium
Dative	partī	partibus	fīnī	fīnibus
Accusative	partem	partēs (īs)	fīnem	fīnēs (īs)
Ablative	parte	partibus	fīne (ī)	fīnibus

	hostis, m., *enemy.*		**vectīgal**, n., *tax.*	
	Sing.	Plu.	Sing	Plu.
Nominative	hostis	hostēs	vectīgal	vectīgālia
Genitive	hostis	hostium	vectīgālis	vectīgālium
Dative	hostī	hostibus	vectīgālī	vectīgālibus
Accusative	hostem	hostēs	vectīgal	vectīgālia
Ablative	hoste	hostibus	vectīgālī	vectīgālibus

5. Fourth Declension.

STEM IN U.

	passus, m., *pace.*		**cornū**, n., *horn.*		**domus**, f., *house.*	
	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nom.	passus	passūs	cornū	cornua	domus	domūs
Gen.	passūs	passuum	cornūs	cornuum	domūs	domuum, domōrum
Dat.	passuī	passibus	cornū	cornibus	domuī, domō	domibus
Acc.	passum	passūs	cornū	cornua	domum	domūs, domōs
Abl.	passū	passibus	cornū	cornibus	domū, domō	domibus
Loc.					domī	

6. Fifth Declension.

	diēs, m., f., *day.*		**rēs**, f., *thing.*	
	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
Nominative	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Genitive	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dative	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Accusative	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ablative	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES.

7. First and Second Declensions.

lātus, *wide.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	mas.	fem.	neu.	mas.	fem.	neu.
Nom.	lātus	lāta	lātum	lātī	lātae	lāta
Gen.	lātī	lātae	lātī	lātōrum	lātārum	lātōrum
Dat.	lātō	lātae	lātō	latīs	lātīs	lātīs
Acc.	lātum	lātam	lātum	lātōs	lātās	lāta
Abl.	lātō	lātā	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs

8. **liber**, *free*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

noster, *our*.

	Singular			Plural.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
Gen.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
Dat.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
Acc.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
Abl.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

9. Adjectives with Genitives in **-ius** — Declinable Numerals.

Nine adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have the genitive singular in **-īus** (in **alter** usually **-ius**) and the dative singular in **-ī** in all genders. These are **alius**, *another*, **sōlus**, *only*, **tōtus**, *whole*, **ūllus**, *any*, **nūllus**, *no*, **ūnus**, *one*, **alter**, *the other*, **uter**, *which* (of two), **neuter**, *neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in **lātus**.

	Singular.					
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterius	alterius	alterius
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs, -īs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

10. Third Declension.

One Termination.

audax, *bold.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	MAS., FEM.	NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.
Nominative	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Genitive	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
Dative	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Accusative	audācem	audāx	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
Ablative	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus

līberāns (Present Participle),* *freeing.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	MAS., FEM.	NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	līberāns	līberāns	līberantēs	līberantia
Gen.	līberantis	līberantis	līberantium	līberantium
Dat.	līberantī	līberantī	līberantibus	līberantibus
Acc.	līberantem	līberāns	līberantīs, -ēs	līberantia
Abl.	līberante, -ī	līberante, -ī	līberantibus	līberantibus

Two Terminations.

fortis, *brave.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	MAS., FEM.	NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.
Nominative	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Genitive	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dative	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Accusative	fortem	forte	fortīs, -ēs	fortia
Ablative	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

* All present participles, many of which are used as adjectives, *e.g.* **oriēns**, are declined as adjectives of one ending.

Three Terminations.

celer, *swift.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	celer	celeris	celere	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
Gen.	celeris	celeris	celeris	celerium	celerium	celerium
Dat.	celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus
Acc.	celerem	celerem	celere	celerīs, -ēs	celerīs, -ēs	celeria
Abl.	celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus

ācer, *fierce.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

11. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

	fortior, *braver.*				**plūs**, *more.*		
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		MAS., FEM., NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.
	MAS., FEM.	NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.			
Nom.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūs	plūres	plūra
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

12. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, *good*	melior	optimus
malus, *bad*	pēior	pessimus
māgnus, *large*	māior	maximus
parvus, *small*	minor	minimus
multus, *much*	plūs	plūrimus

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
facilis, *easy*	facilior	facillimus
difficilis, *difficult*	difficilior	difficillimus
similis, *like*	similior	simillimus
dissimilis, *unlike*	dissimilior	dissimillimus
humilis, *low*	humilior	humillimus
gracilis, *slender*	gracilior	gracillimus
(prae, *before*)	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*
(citrā, *this side of*)	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*
(ultrā, *beyond*)	ulterior, *farther*	ultimus, *farthest, last*
(in, intrā, *in, within*)	interior, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*
(prope, *near*)	propior, *nearer*	proximus, *nearest, next*
exterus, *outside*	exterior	extrēmus
īnferus, *below*	īnferior	īnfimus (īmus)
posterus, *behind*	posterior	postrēmus
superus, *above*	superior	suprēmus (summus)
dīves,[1] *rich*	dīvitior, dītior	dīvitissimus, dītissimus

13. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bene, *well*	melius	optimē
male, *ill*	pēius	pessimē
multum, *much*	plūs	plūrimum
parum, (*too*) *little*	minus	minimē
diū, *long*	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, *often*	saepius	saepissimē
māgnopere, *greatly*	magis	māximē

14. NUMERALS.

Cardinal.	Ordinal.	Roman.
1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*	prīmus, -a, -um, *first*	I
2. duo, duae, duo, *two*	secundus (alter), *second*	II
3. trēs, tria, *three*	tertius, *third*	III
4. quattuor	quārtus	IIII *or* IV
5. quīnque	quīntus	V
6. sex	sextus	VI

[1] The only irregularity of dīves is its showing two bases dīvit and dīt.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ROMAN.
7. septem	septimus	VII
8. octō	octāvus	VIII
9. novem	nōnus	VIIII *or* IX
10. decem	decimus	X
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12. duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13. tredecim (decem et trēs)	tertius decimus	XIII
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIIII *or* XIV
15. quīndecim	quintus decimus	XV
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18. duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)	duodēvicēnsimus	XVIII
19. ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)	ūndēvicēnsimus	XVIIII *or* XIX
20. vīgintī	vicēnsimus	XX
21. vīgintī ūnus (*or* ūnus et vīgintī)	vicēnsimus prīmus (ūnus et vicēnsimus, *etc.*)	XXI
30. trīgintā	trīcēnsimus	XXX
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus	XXXX *or* XL
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus	L
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus	LX
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus	LXX
80. octōgintā	octōgēnsimus	LXXX
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus	LXXXX *or* XC
100. centum	centēnsimus	C
101. centum (et) ūnus, *etc.*	centēnsimus prīmus, *etc.*	CI
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus	CC
300. trecentī	trecentēnsimus	CCC
400. quadringentī	quadringentēnsimus	CCCC
500. quīngentī	quingentēnsimus	IC, *or* D
600. sescentī	sexcentēnsimus	DC
700. septingentī	septingentēnsimus	DCC
800. octingentī	octingentēnsimus	DCCC
900. nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus	DCCCC
1,000. mīlle	mīllēnsimus	CIC, *or* M
5,000. quīnque mīlia	quīnquiēns mīllēnsimus	ICC
10,000. decem mīlia	deciēns mīllēnsimus	CCICC
100,000. centum mīlia	centiēns mīllēnsimus	CCCICCC

PRONOUNS.

15. Personal and Reflexive.

	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
	First Person.		Second Person.		Reflexive of the Third Person.	
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	———	———
Gen.	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī	suī	suī
Dat.	mihĭ, mī	nōbīs	tibĭ	vōbīs	sibĭ	sibĭ
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

16. Demonstrative and Intensive.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illius	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	īdem	e′adem	idem	eīdem iīdem	eaedem	e′adem
Gen.	eius′dem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrun′dem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīs′dem iīs′dem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem
Acc.	eun′dem	eandem	idem	eōs′dem	eāsdem	e′adem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

17. Relative and Interrogative.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Interrogative (forms in brackets are adjectives).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	quis (quī)	(quae)	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	(cuius)	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	(cui)	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	(quam)	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	(quā)	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

18. INDEFINITE (forms in brackets are adjectives).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

VERBS.

19. FIRST CONJUGATION.

līberō, *liberate.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātus.

Active Voice. **Indicative.** *Passive Voice.*

PRESENT.

SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
līberō	līberāmus	liberor	līberāmur
līberās	līberātis	līberāris *or* -re	līberāminī
liberat	liberant	līberātur	liberantur

IMPERFECT.

līberābam	līberābāmus	līberābar	līberābāmur
līberābās	līberābātis	līberābāris *or* -re	līberābāminī
līberābat	līberābant	līberābātur	līberābantur

FUTURE.

līberābō	līberābimus	līberābor	līberābimur
līberābis	līberābitis	līberāberis *or* -re	līberābiminī
līberābit	līberābunt	līberābitur	līberābuntur

Active Voice.		*Passive Voice.*	
		PERFECT.	
līberāvī	līberāvimus	līberātus sum	līberātī sumus
līberāvistī	līberāvistis	līberātus es	līberātī estis
līberāvit	līberāvērunt	līberātus est	līberātī sunt
		PLUPERFECT.	
līberāveram	līberāverāmus	līberātus eram	līberātī eramus
līberāverās	līberāverātis	līberātus erās	līberātī erātis
līberāverat	līberāverant	līberātus erat	līberātī erant
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
līberāverō	līberāverimus	līberātus erō	līberātī erimus
līberāveris	līberāveritis	līberātus eris	līberātī eritis
līberāverit	līberāverint	līberātus erit	līberātī erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
līberem	līberēmus	līberer	līberēmur
līberēs	līberētis	līberēris *or* -re	līberēminī
līberet	līberent	līberētur	līberentur
		IMPERFECT.	
līberārem	līberārēmus	līberārer	līberārēmur
līberārēs	līberārētis	līberārēris *or* -re	līberārēminī
līberāret	līberārent	līberārētur	līberārentur
		PERFECT.	
līberāverim	līberāverimus	līberātus sim	līberātī sīmus
līberāveris	līberāveritis	līberātus sīs	līberātī sītis
līberāverit	līberaverint	līberātus sit	līberātī sint
		PLUPERFECT.	
līberāvissem	līberāvissēmus	līberātus essem	līberātī essēmus
līberāvissēs	līberāvissētis	līberātus essēs	līberātī essētis
līberāvisset	līberāvissent	līberātus esset	līberātī essent

Active Voice. **Imperative.** *Passive Voice.*

PRESENT.

2d pers.	līberā	līberāte	*2d pers.*	līberāre	līberāminī

FUTURE.

2d pers.	līberātō	līberātōte	*2d pers.*	līberātor	———
3d pers.	līberātō	līberanto	*3d pers.*	līberātor	līberantor

Infinitive.

Pres.	līberāre	līberārī
Perf.	līberāvisse	līberātus esse
Fut.	līberātūrus (esse)	līberātum īri

Participle.

Pres.	līberāns	*Pres.*	———
Fut.	līberātūrus, -a, -um	*Fut.*	līberandus, -a, -um[1]
Perf.	———	*Perf.*	līberātus, -a, -um

Gerund.

Nominative	———
Genitive	liberandī
Dative	liberandō
Accusative	liberandum
Ablative	liberandō

Supine.

Accusative	liberātum
Ablative	liberātū

20. SECOND CONJUGATION.

moveō, *move.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moveō, mōvēre, mōvi, mōtus.

Active Voice. **Indicative.** *Passive Voice.*

PRESENT.

SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
moveō	movēmus	moveor	movēmur
movēs	movētis	movēris	movēminī
movet	movent	movētur	moventur

[1] The future passive participle is commonly known as the gerundive.

Active Voice.		*Passive Voice.*	
IMPERFECT.			
movēbam	movēbāmus	movēbar	movēbāmur
movēbās	movēbātis	movēbāris	movēbāminī
movēbat	movēbant	movēbātur	movēbantur
FUTURE.			
movēbo	movēbimus	movēbor	movēbimur
movēbis	movēbitis	movēberis	movēbiminī
movēbit	movēbunt	movēbitur	movēbuntur
PERFECT.			
mōvī	mōvimus	mōtus { sum / es / est	mōtī { sumus / estis / sunt
mōvistī	mōvistis		
mōvit	mōvērunt		
PLUPERFECT.			
mōveram	mōverāmus	mōtus { eram / erās / erat	mōtī { erāmus / erātis / erant
mōverās	mōverātis		
mōverat	mōverant		
FUTURE PERFECT.			
mōverō	mōverimus	mōtus { ero / eris / erit	mōtī { erimus / eritis / erunt
mōveris	mōveritis		
mōverit	mōverint		

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.			
moveam	moveāmus	movear	moveāmur
moveās	moveātis	moveāris	moveāminī
moveat	moveant	moveātur	moveantur
IMPERFECT.			
movērem	movērēmus	movērer	movērēmur
movērēs	movērētis	movērēris	movērēminī
moveret	movērent	movērētur	movērentur
PERFECT.			
mōverim	mōverimus	mōtus { sim / sīs / sit	mōtī { sīmus / sītis / sint
mōveris	mōveritis		
mōverit	mōverint		

Active Voice.			*Passive Voice.*	
Pluperfect.				
mōvissem	mōvissēmus	mōtus	essem	essēmus
mōvissēs	mōvissētis		essēs mōtī	essētis
mōvisset	mōvissent		esset	essent

Imperative.

Present.

2d pers.	movē	movēte	*2d pers.*	movēre	movēmini

Future.

2d pers.	movētō	movētōte	*2d pers.*	movētor	
3d pers.	movētō	moventō	*3d pers.*	movētor	moventor

Infinitive.

Pres.	movēre	*Pres.*	movērī
Perf.	mōvisse	*Perf.*	mōtus, -a, -um (esse)
Fut.	mōturus, -a, -um (esse)	*Fut.*	mōtum īrī

Participles.

Pres.	movēns	*Pres.*	———
Fut.	mōturus, -a, -um	*Fut.*	movendus, -a, -um
Perf.	———	*Perf.*	mōtus, -a, -um

Gerund.

Nominative	———
Genitive	movendī
Dative	movendō
Accusative	movendum
Ablative	movendō

Supine.

Accusative	mōtum
Ablative	mōtū

21. Third Conjugation.

dīvidō, *divide.*

Principal Parts: dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus.

Active Voice. **Indicative.** *Passive Voice.*

Present.

Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
dīvidō	dīvidimus	dīvidor	dīvidimur
dīvidis	dīviditis	dīvideris *or* -re	dīvidiminī
dīvidit	dīvidunt	dīviditur	dīviduntur

Imperfect.

dīvidēbam	dīvidēbāmus	dīvidēbar	dīvidēbamur
dīvidēbās	dīvidēbātis	dīvidēbāris *or* -re	dīvidēbāminī
dīvidēbat	dīvidēbant	dīvidēbātur	dīvidēbantur

Future.

dīvidam	dīvidēmus	dīvidar	dīvidēmur
dīvidēs	dīvidētis	dīvidēris *or* -re	dīvidēminī
dīvidet	dīvident	dīvidētur	dīvidentur

Perfect.

dīvīsī	dīvīsimus		sum		sumus
dīvīsistī	dīvīsistis	dīvīsus	es	dīvīsī	estis
dīvīsit	dīvīsērunt *or* -ēre		est		sunt

Pluperfect.

dīvīseram	dīvīserāmus		eram		erāmus
dīvīserās	dīvīserātis	dīvīsus	erās	dīvīsī	erātis
dīvīserat	dīvīserant		erat		erant

Future Perfect.

dīvīserō	dīvīserimus		erō		erimus
dīvīseris	dīvīseritis	dīvīsus	eris	dīvīsī	eritis
dīvīserit	dīvīserint		erit		erunt

Active Voice.		**Subjunctive.**	*Passive Voice.*
		PRESENT.	
dīvidam	dīvidāmus	dīvidar	dīvidāmur
dīvidās	dīvidātis	dīvidāris *or* -re	dīvidāminī
dīvidat	dīvidant	dīvidātur	dīvidantur
		IMPERFECT.	
dīviderem	dīviderēmus	dīviderer	dīviderēmur
dīviderēs	dīviderētis	dīviderēris *or* -re	dīviderēminī
divideret	dīviderent	dīviderētur	dīviderentur.
		PERFECT.	
dīvīserim	dīvīserimus	dīvīsus { sim, sīs, sit	dīvīsī { sīmus, sītis, sint
dīvīseris	dīvīseritis		
dīvīserit	dīvīserint		
		PLUPERFECT.	
dīvīssem	dīvīssēmus	dīvīsus { essem, essēs, esset	dīvīsī { essēmus, essētis, essent
dīvīssēs	dīvīssētis		
dīvīsset	dīvīssent		

Imperative.

PRESENT.

2*d pers.*	dīvide	dīvidite	2*d pers.*	dīvidere	dīvidiminī

FUTURE.

2*d pers.*	dīviditō	dīviditōte	2*d pers.*	dīviditor	———
3*d pers.*	dīviditō	dīviduntō	3*d pers.*	dīviditor	dīviduntor

Infinitive.

Pres.	dīvidere	*Pres.*	dīvidī
Perf.	dīvīsisse	*Perf.*	dīvīsus, -a, -um (esse)
Fut.	dīvīsūrus, -a, -um (esse)	*Fut.*	dīvīsum īrī

Participles.

Pres.	dīvidēns	*Pres.*	———
Fut.	dīvīsūrus, -a, -um	*Fut.*	dīvidendus, -a, -um
Perf.	———	*Perf.*	dīvīsus, -a, -um

Gerund.

Nominative	———
Genitive	dīvidendī
Dative	dīvidendō
Accusative	dīvidendum
Ablative	dīvidendō

Supine.

Accusative	dīvīsum
Ablative	dīvīsū

22. Third Conjugation in iō.

capiō, *take.*

Principal Parts: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.

Active Voice. **Indicative.** *Passive Voice.*

Present.

Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis *or* -re	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect.

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris *or* -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future.

capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris *or* -re	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

Perfect.

cēpī	cēpimus	captus	sum	captī	sumus
cēpistī	cēpistis		es		estis
cēpit	cēpērunt *or* -ēre		est		sunt

Active Voice.		*Passive Voice.*			
Pluperfect.					
cēperam	cēperāmus	captus	eram	captī	erāmus
cēperās	cēperātis		erās		erātis
cēperat	cēperant		erat		erant
Future Perfect.					
cēperō	ceperimus	captus	erō	captī	erimus
cēperis	cēperitis		eris		eritis
cēperit	cēperint		erit		erunt

Subjunctive.

Present.

Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris *or* -re	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect.

caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris *or* -re	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur

Perfect.

cēperim	cēperimus	captus	sim	captī	sīmus
cēperis	cēperitis		sīs		sītis
cēperit	cēperint		sit		sint

Pluperfect.

cēpissem	cēpissēmus	captus	essem	captī	essēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis		essēs		essētis
cēpisset	cēpissent		esset		essent

Imperative.

Present.

2*d pers.*	cape	capite	2*d pers.*	capere	capiminī

Future.

2*d pers.*	capitō	capitōte	2*d pers.*	capitor	———
3*d pers.*	capitō	capiuntō	3*d pers.*	capitor	capiuntor

Active Voice.	*Passive Voice.*
Infinitive.	
Pres. capere	*Pres.* capī
Perf. cēpisse	*Perf.* captus, -a, -um, (esse)
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um (esse)	*Fut.* captum īrī
Participle.	
Pres. capiēns	*Pres.* ———
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um	*Perf.* captus, -a, -um
Perf. ———	*Fut.* capiendus, -a, -um

Gerund.

Genitive	capiendī
Dative	capiendō
Accusative	capiendum
Ablative	capiendō

Supine.

Accusative	captum
Ablative	captū

23. Fourth Conjugation.

impediō, *impede.*

Principal Parts: impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītus.

Active Voice. *Passive Voice.*

Indicative.

Present.

Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
impediō	impedīmus	impedior	impedīmur
impedīs	impedītis	impedīris *or* -re	impedīmini
impedit	impediunt	impedītur	impediuntur

Imperfect.

impediēbam	impediēbāmus	impediēbar	impediēbāmur
impediēbās	impediēbātis	impediēbāris *or* -re	impediēbāminī
impediēbat	impediēbant	impediēbātur	impediēbantur

Future.

impediam	impediēmus	impediar	impediēmur
impediēs	impediētis	impediēris *or* -re	impediēminī
impediet	impedient	impediētur	impedientur

Active Voice.		*Passive Voice.*	
PERFECT.			
impedīvī	impedīvimus	impedītus sum	impedītī sumus
impedīvistī	impedīvistis	impedītus es	impedītī estis
impedīvit	impedīvērunt *or* -ēre	impedītus est	impedītī sunt
PLUPERFECT.			
impedīveram	impedīverāmus	impedītus eram	impedītī erāmus
impedīverās	impedīverātis	impedītus erās	impedītī erātis
impedīverat	impedīverant	impedītus erat	impedītī erant
FUTURE PERFECT.			
impedīverō	impedīverimus	impedītus erō	impedītī erimus
impedīveris	impedīveritis	impedītus eris	impedītī eritis
impedīverit	impedīverint	impedītus erit	impedītī erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.			
impediam	impediāmus	impediar	impediāmur
impediās	impediātis	impediāris *or* -re	impediāminī
impediat	impediant	impediātur	impediantur
IMPERFECT.			
impedīrem	impedīrēmus	impedīrer	impedīrēmur
impedīrēs	impedīrētis	impedīrēris *or* -re	impedīrēmini
impedīret	impedīrent	impedīrētur	impedīrentur
impedīverim	impedīverimus	impedītus sim	impedītī sīmus
impedīveris	impedīveritis	impedītus sīs	impedītī sītis
impedīverit	impedīverint	impedītus sit	impedītī sint
PLUPERFECT.			
impedīvissem	impedīvissēmus	impedītus essem	impedīti essēmus
impedīvissēs	impedīvissētis	impedītus essēs	impedīti essētis
impedīvisset	impedīvissent	impedītus esset	impedīti essent

Imperative.

PRESENT.

2d pers. impedī	impedīte	*2d pers.* impedire	impedīminī

	Active Voice.		*Passive Voice.*	
		Future.		
2d pers.	impedītō	impedītōte	impedītor	———
3d pers.	impedītō	impediuntō	impedītor	impediuntor

Infinitive.

Pres.	impedīre	*Pres.*	impedīrī
Perf.	impedīvisse	*Perf.*	impeditus, -a, -um (esse)
Fut.	impedītūrus, -a, -um (esse)	*Fut.*	impeditum īrī

Participle.

Pres.	impediēns	*Pres.*	———
Fut.	impedītūrus, -a, -um	*Fut.*	impediendus, -a, -um
Perf.	———	*Perf.*	impeditus, -a, -um

Gerund.

Nominative	———
Genitive	impediendī
Dative	impediendō
Accusative	impediendum
Ablative	impediendō

Supine.

Accusative	impedītum
Ablative	impedītū

24. DEPONENT VERBS.

Conj.	I	cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum	*attempt*
Conj.	II	vereor	verērī	veritus sum	*to fear*
Conj.	III	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum	*to follow*
Conj.	IV	potior	potīrī	potītus sum	*to get possession*

	I	II	III	IV
Pres.	cōnor	vereor	sequor	potior
	cōnāris (-re)	verēris (-re)	sequeris (-re)	potīris (-re)
	cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur

	I	II	III	IV
Impf.	cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
Fut.	cōnābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
Perf.	cōnātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
Plup.	cōnātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F.P.	cōnātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

Subjunctive.

Pres.	cōner	verear	sequar	potiar
Impf.	cōnārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
Perf.	cōnātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
Plup.	cōnātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

Imperative.

cōnāre, etc.	verēre, etc.	sequere, etc.	potīre, etc.

Infinitives.*

Pres.	cōnārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
Perf.	cōnātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
Fut.	cōnātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

Participles.*

Pres.	cōnāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
Fut.	cōnātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
Perf.	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus

Gerundive.

cōnandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

Gerund.

cōnandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.

Supine.

cōnātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	potītum, -tū

* Notice that deponent verbs have the active form of the future infinitive and the participles of both voices.

25. Irregular Verbs.

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī.

Indicative.

Present.		Imperfect.		Future.	
Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
sum	sumus	eram	erāmus	erō	erimus
es	estis	erās	erātis	eris	eritis
est	sunt	erat	erant	erit	erunt

Perfect.		Pluperfect.		Future Perfect.	
Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
fuī	fuimus	fueram	fuerāmus	fuerō	fuerimus
fuistī	fuistis	fuerās	fuerātis	fueris	fueritis
fuit	fuērunt	fuerat	fuerant	fuerit	fuerint

Subjunctive.

Present.		Imperfect.	
sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent
Perfect.		**Pluperfect.**	
fuerim	fuerimus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fueris	fueritis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

Imperative.

Present.	
es, *be* (*thou*)	este, *be* (*ye*)
Future.	
estō, *thou shalt be*	estōte, *ye shall be*
estō, *he shall be*	suntō, *they shall be*

Infinitives.		Participles.
Pres.	esse, *to be*	——
Perf.	fuisse, *to have been*	——
Fut.	futūrus esse, *to be about to be*	futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be*

26. volō, velle, voluī, —, *to be willing, will, wish.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *to be unwilling, will not.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *to be more willing, prefer.*
possum, posse, potuī, —, *to be able.*

Indicative.

Pres.	volō, *I wish.*	nōlō, *I will not.*	mālō, *I prefer.*	possum, *I am able.*
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	potes
	vult	nōn vult	māvult	potest
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	possumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	potestis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	possunt
Impf.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	poteram
Fut.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.	poterō, poteris, etc.
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī	potuī
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram	potueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō	potuerō

Subjunctive.

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim	possim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs	possīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit	possit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus	possīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis	possītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint	possint
Impf.	vellem	nōllem	māllem	possem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim	potuerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem	potuissem

Imperative.

Pres.	———	nōlī, nōlīte	———	———
Fut.	———	nōlītō, etc.	———	———

Infinitives.

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle	posse
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse	potuisse

Participle.

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns	———	potēns

27. PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itus, *to go*.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres.	eō, īs, it	eam, eās, eat
	īmus, ītis, eunt	eāmus, eātis, eant
Impf.	ībam, ībās, ībat	īrem, īrēs, īret
	ībāmus, ībātis, ībant	īrēmus, īrētis, īrent
Fut.	ibō, ībis, ībit	
	ībimus, ībitis, ībunt	
Perf.	(īvī) iī	(īverim) ierim
Plup.	(īveram) ieram	(īvissem) iissem
F. P.	(īverō) ierō	

	Imperative.		Infinitive.
Pres.	ī, īte	*Pres.*	īre
Fut.	ītō, ītō, ītōte, euntō	*Perf.*	(īvisse) iisse
		Fut.	itūrus esse

	Participles.	Gerundive.
Pres.	iēns, euntis, euntī, etc.	eundum (neuter only)
Fut.	itūrus, -a, -um	

Gerund.	Supine.
eundī, etc.	itum, itū

28. **Fīō**, *be made*, *become*, is the regular passive of **faciō**, *make*. Note the **ī** before all vowels except **e** in the combination **-er**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: fīō, fierī, factus sum.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres.	fīō, fīs, fit	fīam
	fīmus, fītis, fīunt	
Imp.	fīēbam	fierem
Fut.	fīam	
Perf.	factus sum	factus sim
Plup.	factus eram	factus essem
F. P.	factus erō	

	Imperative.
Pres.	fī, fīte

	Infinitive.
Pres.	fierī
Perf.	factus esse
Fut.	factum īrī

	Participle.
Perf.	factus

Gerundive.
faciendus

29. PRINCIPAL PARTS: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear*.

	Active.		*Passive.*	
	Indic.	**Subj.**	**Indic.**	**Subj.**
Pres.	ferō	feram	feror	ferar
	fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris (-re)
	fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
Impf.	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
Fut.	feram		ferar	
Perf.	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
Plup.	tuleram	tulissem	lātus eram	lātus essem
F. P.	tulerō	lātus erō	lātus erō	

Imperative.

Pres.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
Fut.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	———
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

Infinitive.

Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

Participles.

Pres.	ferēns	*Perf.*	lātus, -a, -um
Fut.	lāturus, -a, -um	*Ger.*	ferendus, -a -um

Gerund.

ferendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

Supine.

lātum, lātū.

30. MODELS OF ORIGINAL SCHEMES FOR FORM DRILL.

Consecutive Declension.

Vocab. Forms.		Sing.
1. pars	*Nom.*	mercātor
2. lingua	*Gen.*	animī
3. flūmen	*Dat.*	bellō
4. prōvincia	*Acc.*	causam
5. mercātor	*Abl.*	proeliō
		Plu.
6. animus	*Nom.*	fīnēs
7. bellum	*Gen.*	partium
8. causa	*Dat.*	linguīs
9. proelium	*Acc.*	flūmina
10. fīnis	*Abl.*	prōvinciīs

Consecutive Synopsis.

Vocab. Forms.		Indicative.
1. sum	*Pres.*	sunt
2. dividō	*Imperf.*	dīvidēbant
3. incolō	*Fut.*	incolent
4. appellō	*Perf.*	appellāvērunt
5. instituō	*Pluperf.*	īnstituerant
6. differō	*F. P.*	distulerint
		Subjunctive.
7. absum	*Pres.*	absint
8. pertineō	*Imperf.*	pertinērent
9. contineō	*Perf.*	continuerint
10. gerō	*Pluperf.*	gessissent

Consecutive Infinitives and Participles.

Vocabulary Forms.

11. contendō 13. obtineō 15. capiō 17. vergō 19. spectō
12. prohibeō 14. dīcō 16. attingō 18. orior 20. indūcō

	Infinitives.		Participles.	
	Active.	*Passive.*	*Active.*	*Passive.*
Pres.	contendere	dīcī	vergēns	——— [1]
Perf.	prohibuisse	captus esse	——— [1]	spectātus
Fut.	obtentūrus esse	attāctum īrī	oritūrus	inducendus

Consecutive Conjugation.

Vocabulary Forms.

21. faciō 22. persuādeō 23. exeō 24. praestō 25. potior 26. fīō

Perf. Ind. Act.		*Imp. Subj. Passive.*	
Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
fēcī	praestitimus	fierem	praestārēmur
persuāsistī	(no active) [1]	(impers. in passive) [1]	potirēminī
exiit	fēcērunt	exīrētur	fierent

[1] Note that it is quite as important to know where no form occurs as to know what is the proper form.

LIST OF FIVE HUNDRED WORDS.

Compiled from the Vocabulary of High School Latin with the permission of the author, Dr. Gonzales Lodge, of the Teachers College, Columbia University. This classified list consists of words occurring in Caesar's First Campaign and used six or more times in the first five books of the Gallic War. The progressive and intelligent teacher will have no difficulty in appreciating the value of this word list as an aid in the acquisition of a practical vocabulary and in the annotation of sight passages, which may thus be marked with scientific accuracy.

VERBS.

Chap. 1.

1. sum
2. dīvidō
3. incolō
4. appellō
5. īnstituō
6. differō
7. absum
8. pertineō
9. contineō
10. gerō
11. contendō
12. prohibeō
13. obtineō
14. dīcō
15. capiō
16. attingō
17. vergō
18. orior
19. spectō

Chap. 2.

20. indūcō
21. faciō
22. persuādeō
23. exeō
24. praestō
25. potior
26. fīō
27. īnferō
28. possum
29. bellō
30. habeō
31. pateō
32. vagor

Chap. 3.

33. addūcō
34. permoveō
35. cōnstituō
36. proficiscor
37. comparō
38. cōnfirmō
39. cōnficiō
40. dūcō
41. dēligō
42. suscipiō
43. occupō
44. accipiō
45. cōnor
46. dō
47. probō
48. perficiō
49. conciliō
50. iūrō
51. spērō

Chap. 4.

52. ēnūntiō
53. cōgō
54. sequor
55. oportet
56. condūcō
57. incitō

Chap. 5.

58. parō
59. incendō
60. portō
61. tollō
62. subeō
63. iubeō
64. ūtor
65. trānseō
66. oppūgnō
67. recipiō

Chap. 6.

68. videō
69. exīstimō
70. eō
71. patior
72. conveniō
73. pācō
74. fluō

Chap. 7.

75. nūntiō
76. mātūrō
77. perveniō
78. imperō
79. mittō
80. rogō
81. licet
82. teneō
83. occīdō
84. pellō
85. concēdō
86. putō
87. temperō
88. intercēdō
89. respondeō
90. sūmō
91. volō
92. revertor

Chap. 8.

93. perdūcō
94. dispōnō
95. veniō

96. ostendō
97. dēiciō
98. iungō
99. repellō
100. dēsistō

Chap. 9.

101. impetrō
102. studeō

Chap. 10.

103. renūntiō
104. intellegō
105. praeficiō
106. ēdūcō

Chap. 11.

107. trādūcō
108. dēfendō
109. mereor
110. vāstō
111. expūgnō
112. dēbeō
113. dēmōnstrō
114. exspectō
115. statuō
116. cōnsūmō

Chap. 12.

117. iūdicō
118. impediō
119. aggredior
120. concīdō
121. mandō
122. abdō
123. interficiō
124. ulcīscor

Chap. 13.

125. cōnsequor
126. cūrō
127. commoveō
128. adorior
129. ferō
130. dēspiciō
131. nītor
132. committō
133. cōnsistō
134. agō

Chap. 14.

135. accidō
136. caveō
137. dēcipiō
138. timeō
139. temptō
140. vexō
141. dēpōnō
142. cōnsuēscō
143. polliceor
144. discēdō
145. admīror
146. doleō

Chap. 15.

147. moveō
148. praemittō
149. īnsequor
150. cadō
151. lacessō
152. coepī

Chap. 16.

153. flāgitō
154. pōnō
155. āvertō
156. nōlō
157. cōnferō
158. cōmportō
159. īnstō
160. convocō
161. praesum
162. creō
163. accūsō
164. emō
165. queror

Chap. 17.

166. prōpōnō
167. valeō
168. dēterreō
169. perferō
170. dubitō
171. superō

Chap. 18.

172. sentiō
173. dīmittō
174. quaerō
175. cupiō
176. advertō
177. perterreō
178. reperiō

Chap. 19.

179. cōgnōscō
180. removeō
181. petō
182. hortor
183. vereor

Chap. 20.

184. sciō
185. moneō
186. loquor

Chap. 22.

187. īnstruō

Chap. 24.

188. sustineō
189. mūniō

Chap. 25.

190. cohortor
191. pūgnō
192. vincō
193. resistō

Chap. 26.

194. vulnerō

Chap. 27.

195. trādō
196. ēgredior

Chap. 28.

197. redūcō

Chap. 29.

198. redeō

NOUNS.

Chap. 1.

1. pars
2. lingua
3. flūmen
4. prōvincia
5. mercātor
6. animus
7. bellum
8. causa
9. proelium
10. fīnis
11. initium
12. Ōceanus
13. sōl
14. septentriō
15. mōns
16. occāsus

Chap. 2.

17. rēgnum
18. nōbilitās
19. cīvitās
20. cōpia
21. imperium
22. locus
23. nātūra
24. ager
25. lacus
26. rēs
27. homō
28. multitūdō
29. passus
30. lātitūdō

Chap. 3.

31. auctōritās
32. carrus
33. numerus
34. iter
35. frūmentum
36. pāx
37. amicitia
38. annus
39. lēgātiō
40. fīlius
41. pater
42. senātus
43. populus
44. frāter
45. profectiō
46. tempus
47. exercitus
48. orātiō
49. fidēs
50. iūs

Chap. 4.

51. mōs
52. ignis
53. diēs
54. cliēns
55. arma
56. magistrātus
57. mors

Chap. 5.

58. nihil
59. oppidum
60. vīcus
61. aedificium
62. domus
63. spēs
64. perīculum
65. mēnsis
66. cōnsilium
67. socius

Chap. 6.

68. vadum
69. pōns
70. vīs
71. rīpa

Chap. 7.

72. mīles
73. legiō
74. adventus
75. prīnceps
76. maleficium
77. voluntās
78. memoria
79. iugum
80. facultās
81. iniūria
82. spatium
83. lēgātus

Chap. 8.

84. mūrus
85. altitūdō
86. pēs
87. fossa
88. opus
89. praesidium
90. castellum
91. nāvis
92. ratis
93. nox
94. mūnītiō
95. concursus
96. tēlum

Chap. 9.

97. via
98. angustiae
99. sponte
100. grātia
101. beneficium
102. obses

Chap. 11.

103. auxilium
104. cōnspectus
105. līberī
106. servitūs
107. hostis
108. fuga
109. fortūna

Chap. 12.

110. explōrātor
111. vigilia
112. castrum
113. silva
114. pāgus
115. cāsus
116. calamitās

Chap. 13.

117. dux
118. insidiae
119. nōmen

Chap. 14.

120. contumēlia
121. victōria
122. commūtātiō

Chap. 15.

123. equitātus
124. agmen
125. eques

Chap. 16.

126. potestās
127. prex

Chap. 17.

128. lībertās

Chap. 18.

129. concilium

Chap. 22.

130. captīvus
131. equus
132. aciēs
133. impetus

Chap. 24.

134. impedīmentum

Chap. 25.

135. pīlum
136. gladius
137. pūgna
138. scūtum
139. sīgnum
140. vulnus

Chap. 26.

141. vallum

ADJECTIVES and PRONOUNS.

Chap. 1.

1. omnis
2. trēs
3. quī
4. ūnus
5. alius
6. tertius
7. ipse
8. noster
9. hīc
10. suī
11. fortis
12. longus
13. parvus
14. is
15. reliquus
16. cotīdiānus
17. suus
18. īnferus

Chap. 2.

19. nōbilis
20. tōtus
21. facilis
22. lātus
23. altus
24. alter
25. fīnitimus
26. cupidus
27. māgnus
28. angustus
29. mīlle
30. ducentī
31. quadrāgintā
32. octōgintā

Chap. 3.

33. multus
34. amīcus
35. īdem
36. ille
37. firmus

Chap. 5.

38. duodecim
39. quadringentī
40. quisque

Chap. 6.

41. duo
42. singulī
43. nūllus
44. bonus
45. quīntus

Chap. 7.

46. ulterior
47. prīnceps
48. ūllus
49. quis
50. certus

Chap. 8.

51. novem
52. sēdecim
53. invītus
54. complūrēs

Chap. 9.

55. novus

Chap. 10.

56. frūmentārius
57. hībernus
58. quīnque
59. superbus
60. citerior
61. septimus
62. prīmus

Chap. 11.

63. lĭber
64. necessārius
65 cōusanguineus

Chap. 12.

66. incrēdibilis
67. uter
68. quārtus
69. quattuor
70. īnsignis
71. sōlus
72. pūblicus

Chap. 13.

73. repentīnus
74. vīgintī
75. aeger
76. vetus
77. prīstinus
78. imprōvīsus

Chap. 14.

79. gravis
80. aliquus
81. recēns
82. secundus

Chap. 15.

83. posterus
84. aliēnus
85. paucī
86. quīngentī
87. tantus
88. audāx
89. quīndecim
90. amplius
91. quīnī

Chap. 16.

92. mātūrus
93. propinquus

Chap. 17.

94. quantus

Chap. 21.

95. mīlitāris

Chap. 26.

96. ācer

PREPOSITIONS.

Chap. 1.

1. in
2. inter
3. ab
4. trāns
5. cum
6. dē

Chap. 2.

7. apud
8. ante
9. ex
10. prō

Chap. 3.

11. per

Chap. 4.

12. ob

Chap. 5.

13. post

Chap. 7.

14. sine
15. sub

Chap. 10.

16. circum

Chap. 11.

17. praeter

CONJUNCTIONS.

Chap. 1.

1. et
2. quod
3. atque
4. -que
5. cum
6. aut

Chap. 2.

7. ut
8. autem

Chap. 3.

9. quīn

Chap. 4.

10. nē
11. neque

Chap. 5.

12. ubi

Chap. 6.

13. vel

Chap. 7.

14. tamen
15. sī

Chap. 12.

16. nam
17. sed

Chap. 14.

18. enim

ADVERBS.

Chap. 1.

1. saepe
2. prope
3. quoque
4. propterea
5. ferē
6. etiam

Chap. 2.

7. undique

Chap. 3.

8. quam
9. satis
10. nōn
11. item

Chap. 5.

12. iam

Chap. 6.

13. vix

Chap. 8.

14. intereā

Chap. 9.

15. itaque

Chap. 10.

16. ubi
17. inde

Chap. 11.

18. ita
19. paene

Chap. 14.

20. tam
21. diū

Chap. 15.

22. circiter

Chap. 16.

23. interim
24. cotīdiē
25. modo
26. quidem
27. praesertim

Chap. 17.

28. tum
29. dēmum

Chap. 21.

30. posteā

SYNTACTICAL SYLLABUS.

NOTE. — A knowledge of what constructions occur most frequently in Caesar enables the teacher by intelligent emphasis to increase the efficiency of his class in examinations and sight reading. Such accurate knowledge should be an indispensable qualification for one who sets an examination or test. Many constructions upon which we spend much time in teaching first and second year Latin are found so rarely as to deserve no attention. The statistics are drawn from Heynacher, one of those patient German toilers who would attempt to count and classify the sands of the sea, were scholarship to be aided thereby.

CASE CONSTRUCTIONS.

Nominative as Subject . . . . . naturally most frequently.
Predicate Nominative also frequently.

Genitive:

(1) **Possessive** . . . . . more than 1000 times.
(2) **Partitive** . . . . . 366 times.
(3) **Objective** with Nouns or Adjectives. . . . 200 times.

This construction with verbs such as remembering, forgetting, and impersonals occurs but 3 times, and in these phases may be disregarded.

(4) **Quality**: (*alias* Descriptive) . . . . . 82 times.

No other genitive occurs more than 3 times.

Dative:

(1) **Compound Verbs** . . . . . 225 times.
(2) **Purpose** . . . . . 88 times.
(3) **Adjectives** . . . . . 63 times.
(4) **Special Verbs** (*alias* Intransitives) . . . . 40 times.
(5) **Agent** (only in the 2d periphrastic) . . . 26 times.
(6) **Possessor** with **sum** . . . . . 18 times.
(7) **Interest** (*alias* Advantage) . . . . . a few times.

The next most frequent construction is the Ethical Dative, occurring but 5 times.

Accusative:

(1) **Direct Object** . . . . . naturally most frequently.
(2) **Place to Which** (Limit of Motion) . . . very frequently.
(3) **Compound Verbs** (**ad-, circum-, per-, trāns-**) . 79 times.
(4) **Extent** . . . . . 37 times.

Under this construction may be grouped 52 occurrences of Extent in Degree, often called Adverbial Accusative, *e.g.* **multum, plūs, plūrimum.**

(5) **Predicate** (Double Accusatives) . . . . . 70 times.

The cognate accusative, two accusatives with verbs of teaching and concealing do not occur at all and should not be taught in first or second year work.

Ablative:

(1) **Absolute** . . . . . 770 times.
(2) **Means** . . . . . 600 times.
(3) **Agency** . . . . . frequently.
(4) **Separation** (including Place Whence) . . . 300 times.

Statistics fail to give precise figures for other ablative constructions, but with an aggregate of 7000 occurrences of this case, none of the constructions commonly taught in the grammars will be found to occur less times than many of the genitive and dative constructions already enumerated. So none may be safely neglected. The other common ablative constructions are:

(5) **Accompaniment.**
(6) **Specification.**
(7) **Cause.**
(8) **Time When.**
(9) **Place From Which.**
(10) **Place In Which.**
(11) **Ūtor**, etc.
(12) **Quality.**
(13) **Manner.**
(14) **Comparison.**
(15) **Degree of Difference.**

Mode Constructions.

Subjunctive: (no detailed statistics — relative frequency only indicated).

(1) **Subordinate Clauses Indirect Discourse.**
(2) **Indirect Question.**
(3) **Purpose:** (*a*) Pure Final, (*b*) Substantive, (*c*) Relative.
(4) **Result.**

The following occur so much less frequently that no distinction as to types is advisable.

(5) **Quod Causal.**
(6) **Cum Causal** and **Concessive.** (Latter 18 times.)
(7) **Cum Temporal** with secondary tenses.

With one exception **Conditions**, though very common in Caesar, are involved in the intricacies of Indirect Discourse and their study may in the judgment of the authors be more profitably postponed until the reading of Cicero. Meantime in Caesar they may be intelligently treated as Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse without explaining the subtleties of the tenses. Conditions have been introduced into the Caesar's First Campaign only with reluctance and in deference to conventional practice, leaving it to the individual teacher's judgment as to whether they should be taught. The same may be said of **priusquam** clauses, only 8 of which occur outside of Indirect Discourse in the four books. **Dum** in the sense of *until* occurs only 4 times; **quoad**, *until*, once; and **donec** not at all. The Hortatory, Jussive, Potential, and Optative Subjunctives occur only in Indirect Discourse.

Infinitive:

(1) In **Indirect Discourse.**
(2) **Complementary** (including infinitive as object).
(3) As **Subject** of Impersonals.

The Historical Infinitive occurs but six times in Caesar.

Supines:

The supine in **um** occurs 10 times in the four books; that in **u** but once, I, 3, 6.

Gerunds and Gerundives:

(1) **Accusative** with **ad**	86 times.
(2) **Genitive of Gerund** modifying substantives (inclusive of **causā** and **grātiā**)	128 times.
(3) **Ablative** with **dē** or **in**	21 times.
(4) **Gerundive** with **cūrō**	17 times.
(5) The **Gerundive** in the **genitive** with **suī** . .	10 times.

Other uses of the Gerund are very rare.

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A., *abbreviation for* **Aulus, -ī,** *a Latin praenomen, or first name.*

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, away from; *with passive verbs*, by.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, put away, conceal, hide.

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead away, take away.

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, go away, depart.

abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus (abs-teneō), abstain, refrain.

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be away from, be absent, be wanting.

ac, *same as* **atque,** and.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (ad-cēdō), go to, approach, be added.

acceptus, -a, -um, acceptable, pleasing (*gov. dat.*).

accidō, -ere, -cidī (ad-cadō), fall to, happen.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (ad-capiō), take to, receive, accept.

accurrō, -ere, -currī *and* **-cucurrī, -cursūrus (ad-currō),** run to, hasten up to.

accūsō, 1, accuse, blame, find fault with.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, keen, sharp, active.

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, sharp edge, battle line, keenness (of the eyes).

ācriter, *adv.*, fiercely, sharply.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, towards, up to, near; *with numerals, an adv.*, about.

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead to, induce.

adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bring to, report.

adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (ad-faciō), affect, afflict, visit with.

adfīnitās, -tātis, *f.*, relationship (by marriage).

adgredior, -ī, -gressus sum (ad-gradior), go towards, approach, attack.

adhibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus (ad-habeō), have near, call in, apply.

admīror, -ārī, -ātus, wonder at, marvel at.

admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let go, commit, admit.

adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum, rise against, attack.

adscīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītus, take to, add, adopt.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be near, assist, be present.

adulēscentia, -ae, *f.*, youth.

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, a coming to, approach, arrival.

adversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposite, unfavorable.

advertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, turn towards *or* to; **animum advertō,** notice.

aedificium, -ī, *n.*, a building.

aedificō, 1, build, construct.

Aeduus, -a, -um, of the Aeduans; *subst.*, an Aeduan.

aegrē, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly.

Aemilius, -ī, *m.*, *one of Caesar's officers.*

aequō, 1, make equal, equalize.

afferō, *see* **adferō.**

afficiō, *see* **adficiō.**

affīnitās, *see* **adfīnitās.**

ager, agrī, *m.*, land, field.

aggredior, *see* **adgredior.**

agmen, agminis, *n.*, army on the march, column, line.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, do, discuss.

aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another, strange, unfavorable.

aliquis, aliquid (**-quod**), somebody, some one, something; some, any.

alius, -a, -ud, another, other.

Allobrogēs, -um, *acc.* **-as**, *m.*, *name of a Gallic tribe near Lake Geneva.*

alō, -ere, aluī, altus, nourish, support, sustain.

Alpēs, -ium, *f.*, the Alps.

alter, -era, -erum, the other (*of two*), the second; **alter . . . alter**, *correl.*, the one . . . the other; **alterī . . . altērī**, the one partly . . . the other partly.

altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, height, depth.

altus, -a, -um, high, deep, tall.

Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m.*, *a tribe of Gauls related to the Aeduans.*

amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.

amīcus, -ī, *m.*, friend; *as adj.*, **amicus, -a, -um**, friendly.

āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus, send away, lose, let go.

amor, -ōris, *m.*, love, affection.

amplē, *adv.*, largely, fully.

amplus, -a, -um, large; **amplius** (*neut. comp.*), more.

anceps, *gen.* **ancipitis**, twofold, double-headed, doubtful.

angustiae, -ārum, *f.*, narrows, narrow pass, straits.

angustus, -a, -um, narrow.

animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, attend to, notice, punish.

animus, -ī, *m.*, mind, spirit.

annus, -ī, *m.*, a year.

annuus, -a, -um, for a year, annual.

ante, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, before.

anteā, *adv.*, before, previously.

antīquus, -a, -um, old, ancient, former.

apertus, -a, -um, open, exposed, unprotected.

appellō, 1, call, name.

Aprīlis, -e, *adj.*, of April; *abbvr.* **Apr.**

apud, *prep. with acc.*, with, in the presence of, among, at, near.

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, *a city of Cisalpine Gaul, on the Adriatic Sea.*

Aquītānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aquitanians, *a people living in the southwest part of Gaul.*

Aquītānia, -ae, *f.*, *the country of the Aquitanians.*

Arar, -aris, *m.*, *a river flowing into the Rhone at Lyons; modern* Saône.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, judge, think.

arma, -ōrum, *n.*, implements, arms, weapons.

ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus, climb, mount, ascend.

ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, ascent, acclivity.

atque *or* **ac**, *conj.*, and also, and.

attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctus (**adtangō**), touch upon, reach, border upon.

auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*, authority, influence.

audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness, daring.

audācter, *adv.*, boldly.

audāx, *gen.* **audācis**, bold, daring.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep.*, dare.

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hear.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *trans.*, increase, enlarge.

aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.

autem, *conj.*, but, moreover, on the other hand.

auxilium, -ī, *n.*, aid, help; *pl.*, auxiliary forces.

āvertō, -ere, āvertī, āversus, turn away, estrange.

avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather.

Belgae, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgians, *a people living in the northeast part of Gaul.*

bellicōsus, -a, -um, warlike.
bellō, 1, make war, war.
bellum, -ī, *n.*, war.
bene, *adv.*, well.
beneficium, -ī, *n.*, service, kindness.
Bibracte, -tis, *n.*, *chief town of the Aeduans.*
bīduum, -ī, *n.*, a period of two days, two days.
biennium, -ī, *n.*, two years.
bipertītō (*or* **bipartītō**), *adv.*, in two divisions.
Biturīgēs, -um, *m.*, *a tribe of Gauls west of the Aeduans.*
Boiī, -ōrum, *m.*, *a Celtic tribe.*
bonitās, -tātis, *f.*, goodness, fertility (*of the soil*).
bonus, -a, -um, good.
bracchium, -ī, *n.*, arm, forearm.

C., *abbreviation for* **Cāius (Gāius)**, *a Roman first name.*
cadō, -ere, cecidī [cāsūrus], fall, happen.
Caesar, -aris, *m.*, *a Roman name.*
calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, disaster, misfortune.
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, take, seize, catch.
captīvus, -ī, *m.*, captive, prisoner.
caput, capitis, *n.*, head.
carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart, wagon.
Cassiānus, -a, -um, of Cassius, with Cassius.
Cassius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Cassius, *consul 107 B.C.*
castellum, -ī, *n.*, fort, redoubt, stronghold.
Casticus, -ī, *m.*, *a chief of the Sequani.*
castra, -ōrum, *n.* (*sing.* **castrum**), camp.
cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, accident, chance.
Catamantāloedēs, -is, *m.*, *a chief of the Sequani.*
Caturīgēs, -um, *an Alpine tribe of Gauls.*
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, case (*at law*), *abl.* **causā**, *preceded by a gen.*, for the sake of.

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, be on one's guard, guard against.
celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick.
celeriter, *adv.*, quickly.
Celtae, -ārum, *m.*, the Celts *or* Gauls.
cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, numbering, census.
centum, *indecl. num.*, one hundred.
certus, -a, -um, sure, certain; **certiōrem facere**, to inform.
Ceutronēs, -um, *m.*, *an Alpine tribe of Gauls.*
cibiārus, -a, -um, pertaining to food; **cibāria**, -ōrum, provisions.
cibus, -ī, *m.*, food.
circiter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, about.
circuitus, -ūs, *m.*, roundabout way, circuit.
circum, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, around, about.
circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, surround.
citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, nearer, hither; *used of the Gallic province nearer Rome, Cisalpine Gaul.*
citrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, this side, on this side of.
cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*, citizenship, a state.
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, shut, close, shut up.
clīēns, -entis, *m.*, a dependant, vassal.
coëmō, -ere, coēmī, coëmptus, buy up, purchase.
coepī, coepisse, coeptus (*no pres.*), began, have begun.
coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, confine, restrain, check.
cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn, ascertain, recognise; *perf.*, know.
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coactus, collect, force, compel.
cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, exhort.
colligō, *see* **conligō**.
collis, -is, *m.*, hill.
collocō, *see* **conlocō**.
colloquor, *see* **conloquor**.

combūrō, -ere, -bussī, -bustus, burn, burn up.
commemorō, 1, mention, speak of, relate.
commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, go to and fro, resort.
committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, join, trust, allow, commit.
commodē, *adv.*, advantageously, conveniently, readily.
commonefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, remind, admonish.
commoveō, 2, move, stir, disturb, alarm.
commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, fortify.
commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a change, complete reverse.
commūtō, 1, change, exchange.
comparō, 1, prepare, get ready, procure.
comperiō, -īre, comperī, compertus, learn, discover.
complector, complectī, complexus sum, clasp, embrace.
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, fill up, cover.
complūrēs, complūra, *and* **complūria,** many, several.
comportō, 1, collect, bring together.
cōnātum, -ī, *n.*, an attempt, undertaking.
cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*, an attempt.
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *intr. with dat.*, retire, withdraw from, yield to; *trans.*, concede, allow, give up.
concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, cut to pieces, kill.
conciliō, 1, win over, secure, procure.
concilium, -ī, *n.*, a meeting, council.
concursus, -ūs, *m.*, a running together, onset, charge.
condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, terms.
condōnō, 1, pardon, forgive.
condūco, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, bring together, collect, hire.
cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātus, bring together, collect.
cōnfertus, -a, -um, crowded, dense.
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, complete, accomplish, prepare, make.
cōnfīdō, -ere, cōnfīsus sum, *semi-dep.*, trust, rely on; *with dat.*, believe.
cōnfirmō, 1, strengthen, establish, declare, assure.
coniciō, -ere, çoniēcī, -iectus (coniaciō), throw, cast, hurl.
coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, join, connect, unite.
coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy.
conligō, 1, bind together, fasten together.
conlocō, 1, place, arrange, give.
conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, talk, confer.
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, attempt.
conquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus (conquaerō), search for, hunt up.
cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, kindred; *as noun*, kinsman.
cōnsciscō, -ēre, -scīvī, -scītus, resolve, take upon one's self; **mortem sibi cōnsciscere,** commit suicide.
cōnscius, -a, -um, knowing, conscious, aware of.
cōnscribō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, enroll, enlist.
cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow, overtake, secure.
Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*, *one of Caesar's officers.*
cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, settle, halt, encamp.
cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, plan, design.
cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, gain a footing, stand, halt; *with abl.*, consist.
cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, comfort, console.
cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight.
cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, catch sight of, see.
cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, place, establish, appoint, resolve, determine.
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, be-

come accustomed; *perf.*, be accustomed, be wont.

cōnsul, **-ulis**, *m.*, a consul, *the chief Roman magistrate.*

cōnsūmō, **-ere**, **-sūmpsī**, **-sūmptus**, waste, consume, destroy.

contendō, **-ere**, **-tendī**, **-tentus**, strive, hasten, contend.

continenter, *adv.*, continuously, continually.

contineō, **-ēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentus** (**contenēō**), keep together, restrain, bound.

contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, opposite, against, on the other hand.

contumēlia, **-ae**, *f.*, insult, indignity.

conveniō, **-īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventus**, come together, assemble; *trans.*, meet.

conventus, **-ūs**, *m.*, assembly, court.

convertō, **-ere**, **-vertī**, **-versus**, turn around, change.

convocō, 1, call together, summon.

cōpia, **-ae**, *f.*, a supply, plenty; *pl.*, supplies, troops, forces.

cōpiōsus, **-a**, **-um**, full of supplies, wealthy, plentiful.

corpus, **-poris**, *n.*, body.

cotīdiānus, **-a**, **-um**, daily, customary.

cotīdiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.

Crassus, **-ī**, *m.*, Marcus Crassus, *a wealthy politician and general.*

crēdō, **-ere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditus**, trust, believe (*with dat.*); suppose.

cremō, 1, burn, consume.

creō, 1, create, elect, choose, make.

crēscō, **-ere**, **crēvī**, **crētus**, grow, increase, become powerful.

cultus, **-ūs**, *m.*, cultivation, civilization.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with.

cum, *conj. with indic.*, when, whenever, at the time when; *with subjunc.*, when, while, although, since, because.

cupidē, *adv.*, eagerly.

cupiditās, **-tātis**, *f.*, eagerness, desire.

cupidus, **-a**, **-um**, eager, fond of, ambitious for.

cupiō, **-ere**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, desire, be eager for, wish well for.

cūr, *rel. and interrog. adv.*, why.

curō, 1, take care, provide for; *with gerundive*, cause.

custōs, **-tōdis**, *m. and f.*, guard, watch, spy.

damnō, 1, find guilty, condemn.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, about, concerning, of.

dēbeō, **-ēre**, **dēbuī**, **dēbitus**, owe; *with infin.*, ought, must.

decem, *indecl. num.*, ten.

decimus, **-a**, **-um**, tenth.

dēcipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus** (**dē-capiō**), deceive.

decuriō, **-ōnis**, *m.*, a decurion, *commander of a squad of ten horsemen.*

dēditīcius, **-a**, **-um**, surrendered, captive.

dēditiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, a surrender.

dēfendō, **-ere**, **dēfendī**, **dēfēnsus**, defend, ward off.

dēfetīscor, **dēfetīsci**, **dēfessus sum**, become exhausted, become weary.

dēiciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus** (**dē-iaciō**), cast down, drive off; (*with* **spē**) disappoint.

deinde, *adv.*, then, next, immediately.

dēlīberō, 1, deliberate, consider.

dēligō, **-ere**, **-lēgī**, **-lēctus** (**dē-legō**), choose, select.

dēminuō, **-ere**, **-minuī**, **-minūtus**, lessen, impair.

dēmōnstrō, 1, point out, show, make known.

dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length.

dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally.

dēpōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, lay down, lay aside.

dēpopulor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, ravage, lay waste.

dēprecātor, **-ōris**, *m.*, mediator, intercessor.

dēsīgnō, 1, indicate, mean.

dēsistō, **-ere**, **dēstitī**, cease, desist.

dēspērō, 1, cease to hope, despair.
dēspiciō, **-ere**, **-spexī**, **-spectus**, look down upon, despise.
dēstituō, **-ere**, **-stituī**, **-stitūtus**, abandon, desert.
dēstringō, **-ere**, **-strinxī**, **-strictus**, strip off, draw (*a sword*).
dēterreō, **-ēre**, **-terruī**, **-territus**, frighten off, prevent.
deus, **-ī**, *m.*, a god.
dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum**, right (*not left*); **dextra (manus)**, the right hand.
dīcō, **-ere**, **dīxī**, **dictus**, say, speak, name (*a day*); plead (*a case*).
dictiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, a speaking, pleading.
diēs, **diēī**, *m. and f.*, day, time.
differō, **-ferre**, **distulī**, **dīlātus (dis-ferō)**, bear apart, defer, differ.
difficilis, **-e**, not easy, difficult, hard.
dimittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus (dis-mittō)**, send away, let go, dismiss.
discēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessūrus**, go apart, retire, depart.
discō, **-ere**, **didicī**, learn.
disiciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus (dis-iaciō)**, hurl apart, scatter, rout.
dispōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, place here and there, arrange, station.
dissimilis, **-e**, unlike.
diū, *adv.*, for a long time.
diūtius, *comp. of* **diū**, for a longer time, longer, too long.
dīves, *gen.* **dīvitis**, rich; *superl.* **dītissimus**, richest.
Diviciācus, **-ī**, *m.*, *an Aeduan chief friendly to the Romans.*
Dīvicō, **-ōnis**, *m.*, *a Swiss leader.*
dīvidō, **-ere**, **dīvīsī**, **dīvīsus**, divide, separate.
dō, **dare**, **dedī**, **datus**, give.
doleō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, feel pain, suffer, grieve.
dolor, **-ōris**, *m.*, pain, grief, distress.
dolus, **-ī**, *m.*, deceit, stratagem.
dubitō, 1, doubt, hesitate.
dubius, **-a**, **-um**, doubtful, uncertain.
ducentī, **-ae**, **-a**, two hundred.
dūcō, **-ere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, draw, lead, conduct, consider.
dum, *conj.*, while, until, so long as.
Dumnorīx, **-rīgis**, *m.*, *an Aeduan, brother of Diviciacus, but unfriendly to the Romans.*
duo, **duae**, **duo**, two.
duodecim, *indecl.*, twelve.
duodēvīgintī, *indecl.*, eighteen.
dux, **ducis**, *m.*, leader, guide.

ē, *prep. with abl.* *See* **ex**.
ēdūcō, **-ere**, **ēdūxī**, **ēductus**, lead out, bring out, take out.
effēminō, 1, make effeminate, weaken, enfeeble.
efferō, **-ferre**, **extulī**, **ēlātus (ex-ferō)**, carry out, publish, elate.
ego, **meī**, *pers. pron.*, I.
ēgredior, **ēgredī**, **ēgressus sum (ex-gradior)**, go out, depart.
ēgregius, **-a**, **-um**, distinguished, uncommon.
ēmittō, **-ere**, **ēmīsī**, **ēmissus**, send forth, let go, hurl.
emō, **-ere**, **ēmī**, **ēmptus**, buy, purchase.
enim, *conj.*, for.
ēnūntiō, 1, make known, report.
eō, *adv.*, thither, to that place.
eō, **īre**, **iī (īvī)**, **itus**, go.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
eques, **-itis**, *m.*, horseman; *pl.*, cavalry.
equester, **-tris**, **-tre**, of the cavalry.
equitātus, **-ūs**, *m.*, cavalry.
equus, **-ī**, *m.*, horse.
ēripiō, **-ere**, **ēripuī**, **ēreptus (ex-rapiō)**, snatch away, take from, rescue.
et, *conj.*, and; both . . . and.
etiam, *conj.*, also, even.
ēvellō, **-ere**, **ēvellī** *and* **ēvulsī**, **ēvulsus**, pull out.
ex (ē), *prep. with abl.*, out of, from.
exemplum, **-ī**, *n.*, example, practice, precedent.
exeō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itus**, go out, depart.

exercitus, **-ūs**, *m.*, army.
exīstimātiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, opinion, estimate.
exīstimō, 1, judge, think, believe.
expeditus, **-a**, **-um**, unencumbered, easy, light-armed (*troops*).
explōrātor, **-ōris**, *m.*, scout.
expūgnō, 1, take by storm, capture.
exsequor, **exsequī**, **exsecūtus sum**, follow out, follow up; **iūs exsequī**, enforce.
exspectō, 1, look out for, wait, wait to see.
extrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, outside of, beyond.
extrēmus, **-a**, **-um**, farthest, last, at the end.
exūrō, **-ere**, **-ussī**, **-ustus**, *trans.*, burn up.

facile, *adv.*, easily.
facilis, **-e**, easy.
faciō, **-ere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, make, do.
facultās, **-tātis**, *f.*, power, opportunity; *pl.*, means, resources.
famēs, **-is**, *f.*, hunger, starvation.
familia, **-ae**, *f.*, body of slaves or vassals, household, retinue.
familiāris, **-e**, *adj.*, belong to a family, private, intimate; **rēs familiāris**, private property.
faveō, **-ēre**, **fāvī**, **fautus**, be favorable to, favor.
ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, generally.
ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, bear, carry, endure, report.
ferrum, **-ī**, *n.*, iron; *anything made of iron:* sword, dart.
fidēs, **-eī**, *f.*, faith, belief, faithfulness, pledge, protection.
fīlia, **-ae**, *f.*, daughter.
fīlius, **-ī**, *m.*, son.
fīnis, **-is**, *m.*, border, end; *pl.*, borders, territories.
fīnitimus, **-a**, **-um**, adjoining, neighboring; *pl. as noun*, neighbors.
fīō, **fierī**, **factus sum**, be made, be done, become, happen (*pass. of* **faciō**).
firmus, **-a**, **-um**, strong.
flāgitō, 1, demand, demand often.
fleō, **-ēre**, **-ēvī**, **-ētus**, weep, weep for.
flūmen, **-inis**, *n.*, river.
fluō, **-ere**, **flūxī**, **flūxus**, flow.
fortis, **-e**, strong, brave.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
fortitūdō, **-dinis**, *f.*, bravery.
fortūna, **-ae**, *f.*, fortune, lot, fate; *pl.*, possessions, property.
fossa, **-ae**, *f.*, ditch, trench.
frāter, **-tris**, *m.*, brother.
frāternus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, of a brother, brotherly.
frīgus, **-oris**, *n.*, cold, cold weather; *pl.*, frosts, cold season.
frūmentārius, **-a**, **-um**, productive of grain; (*with* **rēs**) grain supply.
frūmentum, **-ī**, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, standing grain.
frūx, **frūgis**, *f.*, fruit, produce; *pl.*, crops.
fuga, **-ae**, *f.*, flight, running away.
fugitīvus, **-a**, **-um**, runaway; *as subst.*, deserter.

Gabīnius, **-ī**, *m.*, *one of the consuls of 58 B.C.*
Gallia, **-ae**, *f.*, Gaul, *the ancient name for France, etc.*
Gallicus, **-a**, **-um**, of the Gauls, Gallic.
Gallus, **-ī**, *m.*, a Gaul, a native of Gaul; *adj.*, Gallic.
Garumna, **ae**, *m.*, the Garonne River.
Genāva, **-ae**, *f.*, *a city of the Allobroges, now* Geneva.
Germānus, **-a**, **-um**, German; *as noun*, a German.
gerō, **-ere**, **gessī**, **gestus**, bear, carry on, do, wage; **bellum gerere**, wage war, carry on war.
gladius, **-ī**, *m.*, sword.
glōria, **-ae**, *f.*, glory, renown.
gracilis, **-e**, slender.
Graecus, **-a**, **-um**, Greek.
Graiocelī, **-ōrum**, *m.*, *a Gallic tribe in the Alps.*

grātia, -ae, *f.*, gratitude, good-will, influence.
gravis, -e, heavy, severe, serious.
graviter, *adv.*, heavily, severely, seriously, bitterly.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, have, hold; *pass.*, be held, be considered.
Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Helvetians, *a Celtic race inhabiting Switzerland in ancient times.*
Helvētius, -a, -um, Helvetian, Swiss.
hībernus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of winter; *neut. pl.*, **hīberna, -ōrum,** winter quarters.
hīc, haec, hōc, this; he, she, it.
hiemō, 1, pass the winter, winter.
Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain.
homō, -inis, *m. and f.*, man, human being (*man or woman*).
honor, -ōris, *m.*, respect, honor, office.
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, urge.
hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy, (*usually plu.*).
hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*, refinement.
humilis, -e, humble.

iactō, 1, toss, toss about, discuss, vaunt.
iam, *adv.*, already; *with a negative*, no longer.
ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place.
ictus, -ūs, *m.*, stroke, blow.
idem, eadem, idem, the same.
Idūs, -uum, *f.*, the Ides, *13th or 15th of the month.*
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.
ignōrō, 1, fail to notice, not to know.
ille, -a, -ud, that; he, she, it.
illīc, *adv.*, there, in that place.
immortālis, -e, immortal.
impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, (heavy) baggage.
impediō, 4, entangle, hinder, impede.
impendeō, -ēre, overhang.
imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, general.
imperium, -ī, *n.*, command, control, authority, power, empire.
imperō, 1, command; *with dat.*, order.
impetrō, 1, obtain a request, secure.
impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, charge.
importō (in-portō), 1, import.
improbus, -a, -um, wicked, reckless.
improvisō, *adv.*, unexpectedly.
in, *prep. with abl.* in, on, among, within; *with acc.*, into, on, to, against.
incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, burn, set fire to, inflame, excite.
incitō, 1, set in motion, impel, arouse, incite.
incolō, -ere, -coluī, inhabit, live, dwell.
incommodum, -ī, *n.*, disadvantage, defeat, disaster, misfortune.
incrēdibilis, -e, incredible, marvellous.
inde, *adv.*, thence, from that place, from that time.
indicium, -ī, *n.*, information, evidence.
indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead on, induce, draw on, cover.
inferior, -ius, lower, lower part of, weaker.
inferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus, bring, bring in, bring against; (*with* **bellum**), wage war upon.
inflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexus, bend, bend down.
influō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus, flow into.
inimīcus, -a, -um, hostile, unfriendly; *noun*, a personal enemy.
initium, -ī, *n.*, beginning, origin.
iniūria, -ae, *f.*, injury, wrong, insult.
iniussū, *m.*, *only in abl.*, without orders, without command.
inopia, -ae, *f.*, want, lack.
inopīnāns, *gen.* **inopīnantis,** *adj.*, not suspecting, off one's guard, unaware.
insciēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.*, not knowing, unaware.
insequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow after, pursue.
insidiae, -ārum, *f.*, snare, trap, ambush, stratagem.
insigne, -is, *n.*, sign, badge, decoration.

īnsignis, -e, *adj.*, marked, distinguished, signal.
īnsolenter, *adv.*, insultingly, haughtily.
īnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, establish, appoint, teach, train, begin.
īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.*, habit, practice, custom, institution.
īnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātus, press on, be at hand, threaten.
īnstruō, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus, arrange, draw up.
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, learn, know, understand, realize.
inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among.
intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, go between, intervene, elapse.
interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus (interclaudō), shut off, cut off, hinder.
interdiū, *adv.*, by day.
interdum, *adv.*, at times, meanwhile.
interea, *adv.*, meanwhile.
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (interfaciō), kill, put to death.
interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.
intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, interrupt, stop, omit, let pass.
interneciō, -ōnis, *f.*, extermination, annihilation.
interpres, -etis, *m.*, interpreter.
intersum, -esse, -fuī, be between, take part in.
intervāllum, -ī, *n.*, interval, distance.
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling.
ipse, -a, -um, himself, he himself, in person, the very.
īre, *see* **eō,** go.
is, ea, id, this, that, he, she, it.
ita, *adv.*, so, in such a way, thus.
Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.
itaque, *adv.*, and so, accordingly.
item, *adv.*, likewise, also.
iter, itineris, *n.*, march, journey, way, path, road, route.
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, bid, order, command *with inf. and acc.*
iūdicium, -ī, *n.*, judgment, trial, court.
iūdicō, 1, judge, decide.
iugum, -ī, *n.*, yoke, ridge, crest.
iūmentum, -ī, *n.*, a beast of burden.
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, join.
Iūra, -ae, *m.*, Jura, *a chain of mountains in eastern Gaul.*
iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law.
iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*, oath.
iūstitia, -ae, *f.*, justice, uprightness.
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid.
Kalendae, -ārum, *f.*, the Calends, *first day of the Roman month.*

L., *abbreviation for* **Lūcius,** *a Roman first name.*
Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, *an officer in Caesar's army.*
lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, harass, attack, provoke.
lacrima, -ae, *f*, a tear.
lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake.
largior, -īrī, -ītus sum, give freely, bribe.
largiter, *adv.*, abundantly.
largītiō, -ōnis, *f.*, generosity, lavish giving, bribery.
lātē, *adv.*, widely.
lātitūdō, -inis, *f.*, width.
Latobrīgī, -ōrum, *m.*, *a tribe associated with the Helvetians.*
latus, -eris, *n.*, side, flank.
lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad.
lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, embassy.
lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, deputy, lieutenant-general, ambassador.
legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.
Lemannus, -ī, *m.*, *ancient name for* Lake Geneva.
lēnitās, -ātis, *f.*, gentleness, smoothness.
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.
līber, -era, -erum, free.
līberālitās, -ātis, *f.*, generosity, lavish giving.
līberē, *adv.*, freely, openly, without hindrance.

lĭberī, -ōrum, *m.*, children.
lĭberō, 1, free, set free.
lĭbertās, -ātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom.
licĕor, -ērī, -ĭtus sum, bid (*at an auction*).
licet, -ēre, licuit, *impersonal verb*, it is allowed, it is permitted.
Lingonēs, -um, *acc.* **Lingonas,** *a Gallic nation northwest of the Sequani.*
lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.
linter, -tris, *m., gen. pl.* **lintrium,** skiff, small boat.
Liscus, ī-, *m., chief magistrate of the Aeduans 58 B.C.*
littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.*, a letter, epistle.
locus, -ī, *m.*, place, spot; *neut. pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** places, locality, region.
longē, *adv.*, far, far away, by far.
longitūdō, -ĭnis, *f.*, length.
longus, -a, -um, long.
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak, talk.
Lūcius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius, *a Latin first name.*
lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light.

M., *abbreviation for* **Mārcus,** *a first name.*
magis, *comp. adv.*, more, rather.
magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistracy, magistrate.
māgnopere, *adv.*, greatly.
māgnus, -a, -um, large, great.
mājor, mājus, *comp. of* **māgnus,** larger, greater; *pl.*, elders, ancestors.
male, *adv.*, badly, ill.
maleficium, -ī, *n.*, harm, mischief.
mālō, mālle, māluī, prefer.
malus, -a, -um, bad, evil, wicked.
mandō, 1, intrust, commit, order.
manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand; band (*of soldiers*), force.
Marcus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus, *a Latin first name.*
matara, -ae, *f.*, spear, pike (*used by the Gauls*).
māter, -tris, *f.*, mother.
mātrimōnium, -ī, *n.*, marriage, matrimony.
Matrona, -ae, *m.*, the Marne, *a river of central Gaul.*
mātūrō, 1, hasten, make haste.
mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, early.
māximē, especially, very.
māximus, -a, -um, largest, greatest, very great.
medius, -a, -um, middle, in the middle; **mediō colle,** halfway up the hill.
melior, melius, *comp. adj.*, better.
melius, *comp. adv.*, better.
memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory.
mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.
mercātor, -ōris, *m.*, a trader.
mereor, -ērī, -ĭtus sum, win, earn, deserve, serve (*in the army*).
meritum, -ī, deserts, due.
Messāla, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala, *consul 61 B.C.*
mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, measure, deal, deal out, distribute.
meus, -a, -um, my.
mihi, *dat. of* **ego,** I.
miles, -ĭtis, *m.*, soldier.
mīlia, *pl. of* **mīlle.**
mīlitāris, -e, *adj.*, military.
mīlle, one thousand.
minimē, *superl. adv.*, least, by no means.
minimus, -a, -um, *superl. of* **parvus,** least, very small.
minor, minus, *comp. of* **parvus,** smaller.
minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, diminish, weaken, reduce.
minus, *adv., comp. of* **parum,** less.
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder, marvel at, admire.
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, send, throw.
modo, *adv.*, only; just now, recently.
molō, -ere, -uī, -ĭtus, grind.
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -ĭtus, warn, advise.
mōns, montis, *m.*, a mountain.
morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus sum, die; **moritūrus,** *fut. part.*

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, linger, delay, detain.
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom; *pl.*, customs, character.
moveō, 2, move, influence, break up (*camp*).
mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.
multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, multitude, crowd, throng, large number.
multō, *adv.*, much.
multus, -a, -um, much; many (*in plu.*).
mūniō, 4, fortify.
mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification.
mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall.

nam, *conj.*, for.
Nammeius, -ī, *m.*, *a Swiss envoy.*
nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, character.
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat.
-ne, *enclitic used to mark the sentence as interrogative.*
nē, *in independent sentences*, not; *introducing subordinate clause*, that not, lest.
necessārius, -a, -um, necessary, critical, pressing; *noun*, relative, kinsman, close friend.
negō, 1, say no, say not, deny.
nēmō, *dat.* **nēmini**, *acc.* **nēminem**, *m. and f.*, no man, no one, nobody.
neque *or* **nec**, *conj.*, and not, nor; *correl.*, neither . . . nor.
nervus, -ī, sinew; *pl.*, force, power.
nēve, *continuing* **ut** *or* **nē**, or not, and not, nor.
nex, necis, *f.*, death, violent death.
nihil *or* **nīl**, *n., nom. and acc. sing. only*, nothing.
nihilum, -ī, *n.*, nothing.
nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, except.
nītor, nītī, nīsus *and* **nīxus sum**, struggle, strive, exert one's self, rely upon.
nōbilis, -e, well known, noble, eminent.
nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.*, nobility, the nobles.
nōbīs, *dat. and abl. of* **nōs**.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling, wish not.
nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name.
nōminātim, *adv.*, by name, individually, expressly, in detail.
nōn, *adv.*, not.
nōnāgintā, *indecl. num.*, ninety.
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.
nōnne, *used to mark a question when the answer "yes" is expected.*
nōn nūllus, -a, -um, *not none*, some.
non nunquam, *adv., not never*, sometimes.
Nōrēia, -ae, *f., a town of the Norici.*
Nōricus, -a, -um, of the Norici, Noric.
nōs, we, us.
noster, -tra, -trum, our; *plu.*, ours.
novem, *indecl. num.*, nine.
novus, -a, -um, new, recent, last.
novae rēs, revolution.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night.
noctu, *adv.*, by night.
nūdus, -a, -um, naked, unprotected.
nūllus, -a, -um, not any, none, no.
num, *used in direct questions when the answer "no" is expected; in indirect questions*, whether.
numerus, -ī, *m.*, number.
numquam, *adv.*, never.
nunc, *adv.*, now, at the present time.
nūntiō, 1, announce, report.
nūntius, -i, *m.*, messenger, message, news.
nūper, *adv.*, lately, recently.
nūptum (*supine of* **nūbō**), to marry; **collocāre nūptum**, arrange to marry (used of women).

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for.
obaerātus, -ī, *m.*, debtor.
obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (**ob-iaciō**), throw in the way of, present, expose.
obsecrō, 1, implore, entreat.
obses, -idis, *m. and f.*, hostage.
obstringō, -ere, -inxī, -ictus, bind.
obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (**ob-teneō**), hold, occupy, secure.
occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, setting; **occāsus sōlis**, sunset, the west.

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus (ob-caedō), kill; **occīsī**, the slain.
occultō, 1, conceal, hide.
occupō, 1, seize, occupy.
Oceanus, -ī, *m.*, the ocean.
Ocelum, -ī, *n.*, *a town of the Graioceli on the western border of the province of Cisalpine Gaul.*
octō, *indecl. num.*, eight.
octōgintā, *indecl. num.*, eighty.
oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye.
ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, *perf. form with pres. meaning*, hate.
offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, strike against, hurt, offend.
offēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, offence, loss.
omninō, *adv.*, altogether, at all, in all.
omnis, -e, all, every, as a whole.
oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impersonal verb*, it is fitting, ought.
oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town, fortified town.
oppūgnō, 1, attack, lay siege to.
ops, opis, *f.*, aid, help, protection; *pl.*, resources, power, wealth, means.
optimus, -a, -um, *superl. of* **bonus**, best, very good.
opus, -eris, *n.*, work, labor, fortification.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, address.
Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, *a Swiss nobleman.*
orior, -īrī, ortus sum, arise, begin, rise; **oriēns**, rising.
ōrō, 1, speak, beg, entreat.
ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, show point out, declare.

P., *abbreviation for* **Pūblius**, *a first name.*
pābulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, foraging, procuring fodder.
pābulum, -ī, *n.*, fodder, green fodder.
pācō, 1, subdue, pacify.
paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly.
pāgus, -ī, *m.*, district, canton.
pār, *gen.* **paris**, *adj.*, equal.
parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared.
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, obey, *with dat.*
pars, partis, *f.*, part.
parum, *adv.*, too little.
parvus, -a, -um, little, small.
passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace (*five Roman feet*); **mille passūs**, a mile.
pateō, -ere, -uī, be open, extend.
pater, -tris, *m.*, father.
patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, bear, allow, permit.
paucī, -ae, -a, few, a few.
pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, strike, beat, drive out, defeat.
per, *prep. with acc.*, through, by.
perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead through, construct.
perfacilis, -e, very easy.
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bear through, endure, submit to.
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (perfaciō), accomplish, finish, make, bring about.
perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus (perfrangō), break through, violate.
perfuga, -ae, *m.*, deserter, fugitive.
perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, run away, flee.
periculum, -ī, *n.*, peril, danger.
perītus, -a, -um, experienced, skillful *with gen.*
permoveō, 2, move, influence, arouse, alarm.
perniciēs, -ēī, *f.*, ruin.
perpaucī, -ae, -a, very few.
perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, break through, force a way through.
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue, attack.
persevērō, 1, persist, continue.
persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus, pay, suffer (*a penalty*).
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, persuade, *with dat.*
perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus, frighten, terrify, alarm.
pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, tentus (perteneō), extend, pertain to, tend.

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, arrive at, reach, come to.
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot.
petō, -ere, -īvī *and* **-iī, -ītus,** seek, ask.
phalanx, -angis, *f.*, a phalanx, array of troops in close order.
pīlum, -ī, *n.*, javelin, *the distinctive weapon of the Roman legion.*
Pisō, -ōnis, *m.*, Marcus Piso, *consul in 61 B.C.*
plēbs, plēbis, *f., no pl.*, the common people, commons, plebeians.
plūrimum, *superl. adv.*, very much; **plūrimum posse,** be most powerful.
plūrimus, -a, -um, very much, very many.
plūs, plūris, *neut. noun and adv.*, more; *pl., adj.*, many, several.
poena, -ae, *f.*, penalty, punishment.
polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, promise.
pōnō, -ere, posuī, -itus, put down, set, place; **castra pōnere,** pitch a camp.
pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
populātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, ravaging.
populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, ravage, devastate.
populus, -ī, *m.*, people.
portō, 1, carry.
portōrium, -ī, *n.*, customs, duty.
poscō, -ere, poposcī, demand, claim.
possessiō, -ōnis, *f.*, possession.
possum, posse, potuī, be able, can.
post, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, afterwards, after, behind.
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards.
posterus, -a, -um, following, next, behind.
postquam, *conj.*, after.
postrīdiē, *adv.*, on the following day.
potēns, *gen.* **potentis,** *adj.*, powerful.
potentia, -ae, *f.*, power, influence.
potestās, -ātis, *f.*, power, ability.
potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, get possession of, *with abl.;* get control, *with gen.*
praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, go before; surpass, excel, *with acc.*
praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (praecapiō), anticipate, instruct.
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (praefaciō), place at the head, put in command, *with dat.*
praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send ahead.
praeoptō, 1, choose before, prefer.
praesēns, *gen.* **praesentis,** *adj. and part.*, present, being present.
praesentia, -ae, *f.*, presence, the present time.
praesertim, *adv.*, especially.
praesidium, -ī, *n.*, guard, aid, garrison.
praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus *and* **-stātus,** excel, *with dat.;* furnish, exhibit, *with acc.;* (*impersonal*), it is better.
praesum, -esse, -fuī, be at the head, be in command of, *with dat.*
praeter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, beyond, past, besides, except.
praeteritus, -a, -um (praeter-eō), past, bygone; **praeterita,** things past, the past.
praetor, -ōris, *m.*, general; a praetor, *one of the chief Roman magistrates.*
prex, precis, *f.*, prayer, entreaty. *Reg. in plu., rare in sing. except abl.*
prēndō, -ere, -ndī, -nsus, seize, take, grasp; *also* **prehendō.**
pretium, -ī, *n.*, price, value, reward.
prīdiē, *adv.*, on the day before.
prīmum, *adv.*, first, at first.
prīmus, -a, -um, first.
princeps, *gen.* **principis,** *adj.*, first, chief, foremost; *noun*, prince, chief, foremost man.
prīncipātus, -ūs, *m.*, leadership, supremacy.
prior, prius, *comp. adj.*, former, previous, prior.
pristinus, -a, -um, old, former.
priusquam, *conj.*, before, sooner than.
prīvātim, *adv.*, privately, as private persons.

prīvātus, **-a**, **-um**, personal, private; *noun*, a citizen in private life.
prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in behalf of, for, in view of, in proportion to.
probō, 1, prove, approve, show.
prōdō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, give up, betray, hand down, transmit.
proelium, **-ī**, *n.*, battle.
profectiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, departure.
proficiscor, **-ī**, **-fectus sum**, start, set out, go, march.
prohibeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itus** (**prō-habeō**), restrain, keep off, prevent, check.
prōiciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus** (**prō-iaciō**), throw forward, cast down, abandon.
prope (*comp.* **propius**; *superl.* **proximē**), *adv.*, near; *also prep. with acc.*, near.
prōpellō, **-ere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsus**, drive forward, drive off *or* back.
properō, 1, hurry, hasten.
propinquus, **-a**, **-um**, near, related; *pl.*, relatives.
prōpōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, place before, state, explain.
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
propterea, *adv.*, on this account.
propterea quod, because.
prōspiciō, **-ere**, **-spexī**, **-spectus**, look forward, provide for.
prōvincia, **-ae**, *f.*, province.
proximē, *superl. adv.*, lately, last, recently.
proximus, **-a**, **-um**, nearest, next, last.
pūblicē, *adv.*, publicly, as a state.
pūblicus, **-a**, **-um**, of the people, public; **res publica**, public interests, republic.
puer, **-erī**, *m.*, boy, child.
pūgna, **-ae**, *f.*, fight, battle.
pūgnō, 1, fight.
pūrgō, 1, make clean, free from blame.
putō, 1, reckon, think.
Pȳrēnaeus, **-a**, **-um**, Pyrenean; **Pȳrēnaeī** (**montēs**), the Pyrenees.
quā, *rel. adv.*, where, by which way.
quadrāgintā, *indecl. num.*, forty.
quadringentī, **-ae**, **-a**, four hundred.
quaerō, **-ere**, **quaesīvī**, **-itus**, seek, ask, inquire.
quālis, **-e**, *rel. and interrog. adj.*, of what sort.
quam, *adv. and conj.*, how, than; *with superl.*, as much as possible; **quam diū**, as long as.
quantus, **-a**, **-um**, *rel. and interrog. adj.*, how great, how much, as great as, as.
quārē, *also* **quā rē**, on account of which thing, wherefore, why.
quārtus, **-a**, **-um**, fourth.
quattuor, *indecl. num.*, four.
quattuordecim, *indecl. num.*, fourteen.
-que, *enclit. conj.*, and.
queror, **-ī**, **questus sum**, complain, lament.
quī, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that, etc.
quīdam, **quaedam**, **quiddam**, a certain one, a certain thing.
quidem, *adv.*, certainly, indeed, at least; **nē . . . quidem**, not even; *emphatic word between.*
quīn, *conj.*, that, but that; **quin etiam**, nay even.
quīndecim, *indecl. num.*, fifteen.
quīngentī, **-ae**, **-a**, five hundred.
quīnī, **-ae**, **-a**, five each, five apiece.
quīnque, *indecl. num.*, five.
quīntus, **-a**, **-um**, fifth.
quis (**quae**), **quid**, (1) *interrog.*, who? what? (2) *indef. pron.*, any one, anything, some one, something.
quisquam, **quicquam**, *indef. pron.*, any one, anything.
quisque, **quidque**, *indef. pron.*, each one, each thing, each.
quō, *with subj.*, in order that; *used when clause contains a comparative.*
quod, *conj.*, because, that, the fact that; **quod sī**, but if.

quōminus *or* **quō minus**, *conj.*, that not, in order that not, from.
quōmodo *or* **quō modo**, in what manner, how, as.
quoque, *adv.*, also, too.
quot, *indecl. rel. and interrog. adj.*, as many, as many as, how many.

raeda, - **ae**, *f.*, wagon (*with four wheels*).
rapīna, **-ae**, *f.*, plundering.
ratiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, reckoning, reason.
ratis, **-is**, *f.*, raft.
Rauracī, **-ōrum**, *m.*, *a tribe on the Rhine.*
recēns, *gen.* **-entis**, *adj.*, recent.
recipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus** (**re-capiō**), take back, recover, receive; **sē recipere**, betake one's self, withdraw, retreat (*in good order*).
reddō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, give back, return, deliver.
redeō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itus**, go back, turn back, return.
redimō, **-ere**, **-ēmī**, **-ēmptus** (**red-emō**), buy back, purchase, buy up.
redintegrō, 1, renew.
reditiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, a return, returning.
redūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, lead back, bring back.
referō, **-ferre**, **rettulī**, **relātus**, carry back, report; **pedem referre**, step backwards, *i.e.* retreat slowly.
rēgnō, 1, rule, be king, reign.
rēgnum, **-ī**, *n.*, kingdom, rule, royal power.
reiciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus** (**re-iaciō**), throw back, hurl back, drive back.
relinquō, **-ere**, **-liquī**, **-lictus**, leave, abandon.
reliquus, **-a**, **-um**, remaining, the rest, future; **nihil reliqui**, nothing left.
removeō, **-ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**, move back, remove, dismiss.
renūntiō, 1, bring back word, report.
repellō, **-ere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsus**, drive back, repulse, repel.
repentīnus, **-a**, **-um**, sudden, hasty.
reperiō, **-īre**, **repperī**, **repertus**, find, find out, learn.
reprehendō, **-ere**, **-hendī**, **-hēnsus**, restrain, blame.
repūgnō, 1, resist, oppose.
rēs, **reī**, *f.*, thing, affair, circumstance, property; **res publica**, *see* **publicus**.
rescindō, **-ere**, **-scidī**, **-scissus**, cut down, destroy.
resciscō, **-ere**, **-scīvī** *and* **-sciī**, **-scītus**, discover, learn.
resistō, **-ere**, **-stitī**, stand still, stop; *with dat.*, resist.
respondeō, **-ēre**, **-spondī**, **-spōnsus**, answer, reply.
respōnsum, **-ī**, *n.*, answer, reply.
rēspūblica, **reīpūblicae**, *f.*, state, republic, commonwealth, public interests.
restituō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtus**, set up again, restore.
retineō, **-ēre**, **-tinuī**, - **tentus** (**re-teneō**), hold back, detain, retain.
revertō, **-ere**, **-vertī**, **-versus**, turn back, return (*usually deponent except in perf., plup., and fut. perf.*).
Rhēnus, **-ī**, *m.*, the Rhine.
Rhodanus, **-ī**, *m.*, the Rhone.
rīpa, **-ae**, *f.*, bank (*of a stream*).
rogō, 1, ask, *with two accusatives.*
Rōma, **-ae**, *f.*, Rome.
Rōmānus, **-a**, **-um**, of Rome, Roman; *subst.*, a Roman.
rūrsus, *adv.*, again, back again.
rūs, **rūris**, *n.*, the country (*as opposed to the city*).

saepe, *adv.*, often.
salūs, **-ūtis**, *f.*, safety.
Santonēs, **-um**, *acc.* **Santonōs**, *m.*, *a tribe of western Gaul, north of the Garumna.*
sarcinae, **-ārum**, *f.*, soldiers' packs, luggage (*borne on a staff*).
satis, *indecl. adj. and adv.*, enough, sufficiently.

satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, satisfy, make amends, apologize.
scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness.
sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, know.
scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield.
sēcrētō, *adv.*, privately, separately.
secundus, -a, -um, following, second, favorable.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sēdecim, *indecl. num.*, sixteen.
sēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, secession, mutiny, insurrection.
sēditiōsus, -a, -um, seditious, treasonable.
Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m.*, *a tribe of Gaul, to the south of the Aedui.*
sēmentis, -is, *f.*, a sowing, planting.
semper, *adv.*, always.
senātus, -ūs, *m.*, the senate.
senex, senis, *m.*, an old man.
sēnī, -ae, -a, six each, six apiece.
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, perceive, know, think.
sēparātim, *adv.*, separately, privately.
septem, *indecl. num.*, seven.
Septentriō, -ōnis, *m.*, *generally plu.*, **Septentriōnēs, -um.** *lit. the seven plough oxen — the constellation of the Great Bear, hence* North.
septimus, -a, -um, seventh.
septuāgintā, *indecl. num.*, seventy.
sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial.
Sēquana, -ae, *m.*, the Seine, *a river of Gaul.*
Sēquanī, -ōrum, *m.*, *a people of eastern Gaul.*
sequor, secūtus sum, follow.
servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*, slavery, servitude.
servus, -ī, *m.*, slave, servant.
seu, *same as* **sīve**, or; **seu . . . seu,** *correl.*, either . . . or.
sex, *indecl. num.*, six.
sexāgintā, *indecl. num.*, sixty.
sextus, -a, -um, sixth.
sī, *conj.*, if.
sīc, *adv.*, so, thus.
signum, -ī, *n.*, signal, military standard.
silva, -ae, *f.*, forest.
similis, -e, like.
simul, *adv.*, at the same time; **simul atque,** *conj.*, as soon as.
sin, *conj.*, but if.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
singulī, -ae, -a, one at a time, one by one.
sinister, -tra, -trum, left (*not right*); **sinistra,** *f.*, left hand.
sīve, *conj.*, or if; **sīve . . . sīve,** *correl.*, either . . . or.
socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law.
socius, -ī, *m.*, ally, associate.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun. *No gen. plu.*
solum, -ī, *n.*, soil, ground, bottom.
sōlum, *adv.*, alone, only.
sōlus, -a, -um, alone.
soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister.
spatium, -ī, *n.*, space, distance, space of time.
spectō, 1, look at, look toward, face.
spērō, 1, hope, expect.
spēs, spei, *f.*, hope.
spontis, *gen. of defective noun; abl.* **sponte,** *f.*, of one's own accord, voluntarily, by one's own influence.
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, set up, think, decide, pass judgment.
studeō, -ēre, -uī, be eager for, be devoted to (*with dat.*).
studium, -ī, *n.*, zeal, eagerness, study.
sub, *prep. with acc.*, under, towards; *with abl.*, under, at the foot of.
subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, draw up, withdraw.
subeō, -īre, -īvī *and* **-iī, -itus,** undergo, endure.
subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw under, throw from under.
sublātus, *see* **tollō.**
sublevō, 1, lighten, raise up, assist.
submoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, push back, dislodge, repulse.

subsistō, **-ere**, **-stitī**, make a stand, halt.
subvehō, **-ere**, **-vexī**, **-vectus**, bring up, carry up.
succēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, come up, approach closely, take the place of.
suī, **sibi**, **sē**, **sē**, *refl. pron. of the 3d pers.*, herself, himself, *etc.*
Sulla (Lucius Cornelius), *consul and dictator, 88 B.C.*
sum, **esse**, **fuī**, be.
summa, **-ae**, *f.*, total, sum, whole.
summus, **-a**, **-um**, highest, supreme, highest part of, top of.
sūmō, **-ere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus**, take.
sūmptus, **-ūs**, *m.*, expense.
superior, **-ius**, *comp. adj.*, higher, earlier, stronger.
superō, 1, overcome, surpass.
supersum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, be left over, remain, survive.
suppetō, **-ere**, **-īī**, **-itus** (**sub-petō**), be on hand, hold out.
suppliciter, *adv.*, as a suppliant, as suppliants, humbly.
supplicium, **-ī**, *n.*, punishment.
suscipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus** (**subs-capiō**), take up, undertake.
suspīciō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, suspicion.
sustineō, **-ēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentus** (**subs-teneō**), withstand, sustain, stop.
suus, **-a**, **-um**, *refl. possessive adj.*, his, her, its, their own.

T., *abbr. for* **Titus**, *a Roman first name.*
tabula, **-ae**, *f.*, board, writing tablet, list, record.
taceō, **-ēre**, **tacuī**, be silent.
tam, *adv.*, so, so much.
tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, yet.
tandem, *adv.*, at length, finally.
tantus, **-a**, **-um**, so great, such.
tēlum, **-ī**, *n.*, a weapon, dart, missile.
temperantia, **-ae**, *f.*, self-control, discreetness.
temperō, 1, control, refrain.
temptō, 1, try, attempt.
tempus, **-oris**, *n.*, time.
teneō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, hold, have, keep.
tertius, **-a**, **-um**, third.
testis, **-is**, *m. and f.*, witness.
Tigurīnus, **-a**, **-um**, of the Tigurini, *one of the four cantons of the Helvetians.*
timeō, **-ēre**, **timuī**, fear.
timor, **-ōris**, *m.*, fear, alarm.
tolerō, 1, bear, endure.
tollō, **-ere**, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, lift up, elate, take, take away, destroy.
Tolōsātēs, **-um**, *m.*, *the inhabitants of Tolosa.*
tōtus, **-a**, **-um**, all, the whole, total.
trādō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, hand over, surrender.
trādūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus** (**trāns-dūcō**), lead across, transfer. *Often with double acc.*
trāgula, **-ae**, *f.*, a Gallic javelin.
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, on the other side of.
trānseō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itus**, go across, cross, go over.
trānsfīgō, **-ere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxus**, pierce through.
trecentī, **-ae**, **-a**, three hundred.
trēs, **tria**, three.
trīduum, **-ī**, *n.*, a period of three days, three days.
trīgintā, *indecl. num.*, thirty.
triplex, *gen.* **triplicis**, *adj.*, threefold.
Troucillus, **-ī**, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Troucillus, *a Gaul.*
tū, **tuī**, **tibi**, **tē**, **tē**, *pers. pron.*, thou, you.
Tulingī, **-ōrum**, *m.*, *a German tribe.*
tum, *adv.*, then.
tuus, **tua**, **tuum**, thy, thine, your, yours.

ubi, *rel. and interrog. adv.*, where, when.
ulcīscor, **-ī**, **ultus sum**, punish, avenge.
ūllus, **-a**, **-um**, any; *as noun*, any one.

ulterior, **-ius**, *comp. adj.*, farther; **Gallia ulterior**, further Gaul (*north of the Alps*).
ultimus, **-a**, **-um**, farthest, most remote, last (*superl. of* **ulterior**).
ūnā, *adv.*, together with, along with.
unde, *rel. and interrog. adv.*, whence, from which.
undique, *adv.*, from every side, on all sides, everywhere.
ūnus, **-a**, **-um**, one, alone.
urbs, **urbis**, *f.*, city (*Rome in Caesar*).
ut, **utī**, *with indic.*, when, as; *with subjunc.*, that, in order that, so that, how.
uter, **utra**, **utrum**, *interrog. adj.*, which (*of two*)?
uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, each (*of two*), both.
utī, see **ut**.
ūtor, **-ī**, **ūsus sum**, use, employ, adopt *with abl. transl. as direct obj.*
utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides, on each side.
utrum, *conj.*, whether; *sometimes to be omitted in translation.*
uxor, **-ōris**, *f.*, wife.

vacō, 1, be unoccupied, lie waste.
vadum, **-ī**, *n.*, ford, shallow place, shoal.
vagor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, roam about, wander.
valeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, be strong, prevail, be well.
Valerius, **-ī**, *m.*, *a Roman name.*
vāllum, **-ī**, *n.*, palisade, rampart, wall.
vāstō, 1, ravage, devastate, lay waste.
vectīgal, **-ālis**, *n.*, tax, tribute, revenue; **vectīgālēs**, taxpayers, tributaries.
vel, *conj. and adv.*, or, or even, even; **vel . . . vel**, *correl.*, either . . . or.
veniō, **-īre**, **vēnī**, **ventus**, come.
Verbigenus, **-ī**, *m.*, *a canton of the Swiss.*
verbum, **-ī**, *n.*, word.
vereor, **-ērī**, **-itus sum**, fear, dread.
vergō, **-ere**, slope, lie, be situated.
vergobretus, **-ī**, *m.*, vergobret, *chief magistrate of the Aeduans.*
Verucloetius, **-ī**, *m.*, *an Helvetian.*
vērus, **-a**, **-um**, true.
vesper, **-eris** *or* **-erī**, *m.*, evening.
vester, **-tra**, **-trum**, your.
veterānus, **-a**, **-um**, veteran.
vetus, *gen.* **veteris**, *adj.*, old, former; *comp.* **vetustior**; *sup.* veterrimus.
vexō, 1, harass, annoy, ravage.
via, **-ae**, *f.*, way, road, route.
victōria, **-ae**, *f.*, victory.
vīcus, **-ī**, *m.*, village.
videō, **-ēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsus**, see; *pass.*, be seen, seem.
vigilia, **-ae**, *f.*, a watch. *The Roman divided the night into four watches from sunset to sunrise.*
vīgintī, *indecl. num.*, twenty.
vincō, **-ere**, **vīcī**, **victus**, conquer; **victī**, *perf. pass. part. as noun*, the conquered.
vinculum, **-ī**, *n.*, chain, bond.
virtūs, **-ūtis**, *f.*, manliness, bravery, valor, virtue.
vīs, **vīs**, *f.*, strength, force, violence.
vīta, **-ae**, *f.*, life.
vītō, 1, shun, avoid.
vix, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely, with difficulty.
vōbīs, *dat. and abl. of* **vōs**.
vocō, 1, call.
Vocontiī, **-ōrum**, *m.*, *a Gallic tribe south of the Allobroges.*
volō, **velle**, **voluī**, will, wish, be willing.
voluntās, **-ātis**, *f.*, will, good will, consent.
vōs, *pers. pron.*, you, yourselves.
vulgus (*or* **volgus**), **-ī**, *n.*, crowd, mass, common people.
vulnerō, 1, wound.
vulnus, **-eris**, *n.*, wound.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY.

(able), be able, possum.
about, *prep.*, circum, dē; *adv.*, circiter, ad.
acceptable, acceptus, -a, -um.
accomplish, perficiō, conficiō.
accord, of one's own, sponte.
(account), on account of, propter, ob; *expressed also by the ablative of cause.*
accuse, accūsō.
across, trāns; **lead across**, trādūcō; **go across**, trānseō.
Aedui, Aeduī.
affair, rēs.
affect, afficiō.
afflict, afficiō.
after, *prep. and adv.*, post; *subordinate conjunction*, postquam; **day after**, postrīdiē.
aid, *noun*, auxilium; *verb*, adsum.
alarm, commoveō, permoveō.
all, omnis; **in all**, omnīnō.
Allobroges, Allobrogēs.
allow, patior; **it is allowed**, licet.
ally, socius.
almost, ferē, paene.
also, quoque.
altogether, omnīnō.
ambassador, lēgātus.
among, inter, apud.
and, et, atque, -que.
announce, nūntiō.
another, alius.
anxious, cupidus; **be anxious**, cupiō.
appoint, cōnstituō, dēligō.
Aquitanians, Aquītānī.
arise, orior.
arm, armō.
arms, arma.
army, exercitus.
around, circum.
arouse, commoveō.
arrange, collocō.
arrival, adventus.
arrive, perveniō.
ask, rogō, quaerō, petō.
assemble, conveniō.
assembly, conventus, concilium.
at first, prīmō.
at once, statim.
attack, *verb*, aggredior, oppūgnō; *noun*, impetus; **make an attack**, impetum faciō.
attempt, *verb*, cōnor; *noun*, cōnātum, cōnātus.
avenge, ulcīscor.
await, exspectō.
(away), away from, ā (ab); **be away**, absum; **carry away**, tollō; **keep away**, prohibeō.

(back), drive back, repellō, reiciō; **go back**, redeō.
bad, malus.
baggage (heavy baggage), impedīmenta (*plu.*); **luggage**, sarcinae.
band, manus.
bank, rīpa.
battle, proelium.
be, sum; **be away**, absum; **be able**, possum; **be on hand**, suppetō; **be in command of**, praesum.
bear, ferō; **bear away**, efferō; **bear back**, referō.
beast (*of burden*), iūmentum.

because, quod.
become, fīō.
before, *prep. and adv.*, ante; *adv.*, anteā; *conj.*, antequam, priusquam.
began, coepī.
Belgian, Belga.
between, inter.
bitterly, graviter
blame, accūsō.
boat, nāvis.
bold, audāx.
boldly, audācter.
border on, attingō.
boy, puer.
brave, fortis.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, fortitūdō.
bridge, pōns.
bring, ferō; **bring back**, referō; **bring together**, condūcō.
broad, lātus.
building, aedificium.
burn, combūrō; **burn up**, exūrō.
buy, coëmō, emō.
by, ab; *or ablative without prep.*

Caesar, Caesar.
calamity, calamitās.
call, appellō, vocō; **call together**, convocō.
camp, castra (*plu.*).
can, possum.
capture, capiō.
carry, portō; **carry away**, tollō; **carry in**, importō; **carry on**, gerō; **carry out**, efferō.
cart, carrus.
case, causa.
Casticus, Casticus.
cavalry, equitātus, *in sing.*; **horsemen**, equitēs, *in plu.*
cavalryman, eques.
Celts, Celtae.
change, commūtātiō.
(charge), **be in charge of**, praesum; **put in charge of**, praeficiō.
children, līberī.
choose, dēligō.
city, urbs.
client, cliēns.
collect, condūcō, cōgō, cōnferō.
come, veniō.
(command), **be in command**, praesum; **place in command**, praeficiō.
common people, vulgus, plēbs.
compel, cōgō.
complain, queror.
complete, cōnficiō.
conceal, abdō.
concerning, dē.
conquer, vincō, superō.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō.
consul, cōnsul.
contend, contendō, pūgnō.
control, imperium.
council, cōncilium.
country, rūs (*as opposed to city*); fīnēs.
critical, necessārius.
cross, trānseō.
custom, mōs, Institūtum.
cut, caedo; **cut off**, prōhibeō, intercludō; **cut to pieces**, concīdō

daily, *adj.*, cotīdiānus; *adv.*, cotīdiē.
danger, perīculum.
daughter, fīlia.
day, diēs.
death, mors; **violent death**, nex.
decide, cōnstituō, statuō.
deep, altus.
defeat, superō, vincō, pellō.
defend, dēfendō.
demand, poscō, petō.
depart, proficīscor, abeō.
departure, profectiō.
desire, *verb*, studeō (*with dat.*); cupiō; *noun*, cupiditās.
desirous cupidus.
desist, dēsistō.
despise, despiciō.
destroy, vāstō.
devastate, vāstō, populor.

die, morior.
(different), be different, differō.
difficult, difficilis.
difficulty, difficultās.
direction, pars.
disgrace, contumēlia.
dismiss, dīmittō.
disposition, animus.
distinguished, īnsīgnis.
distress, dolor.
Diviciacus, Dīviciācus.
divide, dīvidō.
do, faciō, agō.
down from, dē.
draw up, īnstruō.
drive, agō; **drive back**, repellō; rēiciō.
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx.

eagerly, cupidē.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis.
elate, tollō.
elect, creō, dēligō.
enemy, hostis (*public*), inimīcus (*private*).
enforce, exsequor.
engage (in), committō, faciō.
enroll, cōnscrībō.
envoy, lēgātus.
establish, cōnfīrmō, cōnstituō.
except, praeter.
exhort, hortor, cohortor.
experienced, perītus.
extend, pertineō, pateō.

face, spectō.
fall, cadō.
far, longē.
farther, *adj.*, ulterior; *adv.*, longius.
father, pater.
fear, timeō, vereor.
fertile, frūmentārius.
few, paucī; **very few**, perpaucī.
field, ager.
fiercely, acriter.
fifteen, quīndecim.
fight, pūgnō.
find out, reperiō.
first, prīmus; **at first**, prīmō.
five, quīnque.
five hundred, quīngentī.
flight, fuga.
follow, sequor.
follow up, persequor, īnsequor.
fond, cupidus.
foot, pēs.
for, *conj.*, enim (*postpositive*); nam.
force, vīs; **forces**, copiae.
ford, vadum.
form, faciō; **form a plan**, cōnsilium capiō.
former, vetus, prīstinus.
fort, castellum.
fortification, mūnītiō, opus.
fortify, mūniō.
fortune, fortūna.
four, quattuor.
fourth, quārtus.
free, *adj.*, līber; *verb* līberō.
freedom, lībertās.
friend, amīcus.
friendly, amīcus.
friendship, amīcitia.
from, ab, dē, ex.

gain one's request, impetrō.
garrison, praesidium.
Gaul, Gallia.
Geneva, Genāva.
Germans, Germānī.
get back, recipiō; **get possession of**, potior (*with abl.*).
give, dō.
go, eō; **go often**, commeō.
god, deus.
good, bonus.
good will, voluntās.
grain, frūmentum.
great, māgnus; **great number**, multitūdō.
grief, dolor.

grieve, doleō.
guard, praesidium.

hand, manus; **be on hand**, suppetō; **be at hand**, īnstō.
hand over, trādō.
happen, accidō, fīō.
harass, lacessō, vexō.
hasten, contendō; **matūrō**.
hate, ōdī.
have, habeō.
he, is, hīc, ille.
hear, audiō.
heavy, gravis.
height, altitūdō.
help, *noun*, auxilium; *verb*, adsum.
Helvetian, Helvētius.
hem in, contineō.
hide, abdō.
high, altus.
himself *reflexive*, sē; *intensive*, ipse.
his, suus; *when not reflexive*, eius.
hither, citerior.
hold, teneō, obtineō.
home, domus.
hope, *noun*, spēs; *verb*, spērō.
horse, equus.
hostage, obses.
hour, hora.
how, quomodō; **how great**, quantus.
hundred, centum.
hurl, iaciō.

I, ego.
if, sī; **if not**, nisi.
immortal, immortālis.
impede, impediō.
import, importō.
in, in (*with abl.*); **in all**, omnīnō; **in view of**, prō.
influence, *noun*, auctōritās; *verb*, addūcō, indūcō.
inform, certiōrem faciō, commonefaciō.
inhabit, incolō.
insult, contumēlia.
intend, esse in animō.
interval, intervāllum, spatium.
intervene, intercēdō.
into, in (*with the acc.*).

javelin, tēlum, pīlum.
join, iungō; **join battle**, committō.
journey, iter.

keep away, prohibeō.
kill, interficiō, occīdō.
kindness, beneficium.
know, intellegō, sciō; cōgnōscō (*in the perf.*).

Labienus, Labiēnus.
lake, lacus.
language, lingua.
large, māgnus; **large number**, multitūdō.
law, lēx.
lay down, dēpōnō.
lay waste, vāstō.
lead, dūcō.
leader, dūx.
least, *adj.*, minimus; *adv.*, minimē.
leave, relinquō.
legion, legiō.
length, longitūdo.
less, *adj.*, minor; *adv.*, minus.
let, licet; patior; *or optative subjunctive.*
liberate, līberō.
lieutenant, lēgātus.
light-armed, expedītus.
like, similis.
likewise, item.
line of battle, aciēs; **line of march**, agmen, iter.
long, longus (*in distance*); diū (*in time*).
lower, inferior.
loyalty, fides.

magistrate, magistrātus.
make, faciō; **be made**, fīō.
man, homō, vir.
many, multī, plūrēs.

march, iter; **make a march**, iter faciō; **line of march**, agmen.
Marcus Messala, Marcus Messāla.
meanwhile, interim, intereā.
memory, memoria.
merchant, mercātor.
messenger, nūntius.
mile, *sing.*, mīlle passūs; *plu.* mīlia passuum.
military, mīlitāris.
mind, animus.
missile, tēlum.
month, mēnsis.
more, plūs.
most, *adj.*, plūrimus; *adv.*, māximē.
mountain, mōns.
move, moveō.
much, *adj.*, multus; *abl. as adv.*, multō; *adv.*, multum.

name, *noun*, nōmen; *verb*, appellō.
narrow, angustus.
narrowly, angustē.
near, *prep. and adv.*, prope; **nearer**, citerior, propior; **nearest**, proximus.
necessary, necessārius.
neighbor, fīnitimus.
new, novus.
next, proximus.
nine, novem.
nobility, nōbilitās.
noble, nōbilis.
Noreia, Nōrēia.
not, nōn.
nothing, nihil.
now, nunc, iam.
number, numerus; **great number**, multitūdō.

obtain, obtineō; **obtain one's request**, impetrō.
ocean, Ōceanus.
offer, offerō.
often, saepe; **go often**, commeō.
oh that, utinam.
on, in (*with the abl.*).
once (at once), statim.
one, ūnus.
onset, impetus.
opportunity, facultās.
oppose, resistō, repūgnō.
or, aut; **either . . . or**, aut . . . aut.
order, iubeō *with acc. and infin.*; imperō, *with dat. and* ut *with subjunctive.*
Orgetorix, Orgetorīx.
other, alius (*of more than two*); alter (*of two*); **the others**, reliquī.
ought, oportet, dēbeō.
our, noster.
out of, ex.
over, super; **be over**, praesum.
overcome, superō, vincō.
overhang, impendeō.
own, his own, their own, suus.

pace, passus.
part, pars.
peace, pāx.
people, populus; **common people**, vulgus, plēbs; **multitude**, multitūdō.
perceive, videō, intellegō, perspiciō.
permit, patior; **is permitted**, licet.
persuade, persuādeō.
pieces (*cut to pieces*), concīdō.
pitch, pōnō.
place, *noun*, locus; *verb*, collōcō, pōnō; **place in command**, praeficiō.
plan, cōnsilium, ratiō.
plead, dīcō.
plot, coniūrātiō, cōnsilium.
popularity, grātia.
possession, possessiō, fortūna.
possible, *with superlatives*, quam.
power, potestās; **royal power**, rēgnum.
powerful, potēns.
prefer (wish more), mālō; **choose in preference**, praeoptō.
prepare, comparō, parō.
prepared, parātus.
present, *noun*, praesentia; *verb*, dō.

prevent, prohibeō, impediō.
previous, superior, posterus.
promise, polliceor.
prosperity, secundae rēs.
protection, praesidium.
province, prōvincia.
punishment, poena.
purchase, coëmō.

quantity, cōpia.
quarters (winter quarters), hīberna.
quickly, celeriter.

raft, ratis.
rampart, vāllum.
ravage, vāstō, populor.
reach, perveniō (*with* ad *and acc.*); attingō, capiō.
ready, parātus.
reason, causa.
receive, accipiō.
recent, recēns.
refinement, hūmānitās.
relative, necessārius, propinquus.
rely, nītor.
remarkable, īnsīgnis, egregius.
remember, memoriā teneō (*with acc.*).
remove, removeō, tollō.
reply, respondeō.
request (obtain one's request), impetrō.
rescue, ēripiō, servō.
resist, resistō, repūgnō.
resort, commeō.
rest of the, reliquus.
retainer, cliēns.
retreat, sē recipere, pedem referre.
return, revertor, redeō; **give back**, reddō.
revolution, novae rēs.
Rhine, Rhēnus.
Rhone, Rhodanus.
rich, dīves.
right, iūs.
ripe, mātūrus.
river, flūmen.
road, iter, via.
Roman, Rōmānus.
Rome, Rōma.
royal power, rēgnum.

safety, salūs.
same, īdem.
Santones, Santonēs.
say, dīcō.
scout, explōrātor.
second, alter.
see, videō.
seek, petō, quaerō.
Seine, Sēquana.
seize, occupō.
select, dēligō.
senate, senātus.
send, mittō; **send ahead**, praemittō.
separate, dīvidō.
Sequanian, Sēquanus.
(set), **set fire to**, incendō.
set out, proficīscor.
seventh, septimus.
several, plūrēs.
she, ea, haec, illa.
shield, scūtum.
ship, nāvis.
show, ostendō, dēmōnstrō.
side, latus, pars.
sight, cōnspectus.
since, cum.
sixteen, sēdecim.
skilled, perītus.
skillful, perītus.
snatch, ēripiō.
so, ita, tam; **so great**, tantus.
soldier, mīles.
space, spatium.
Spain, Hispānia.
spear, tēlum.
speed, celeritās.
spirit, animus.
standard, sīgnum.
state, cīvitās, rēs pūblica.
sudden, subitus.
suddenly, subitō, dē improvīsō.
sunset, occāsus sōlis.

supply, cōpia.
surpass, praecēdō (*acc.*); praestō (*dat.*).
sustain, sustineō.
swift, celer.
swiftly, celeriter.
Swiss, Helvētius.
sword, gladius.

take, capiō; **take away**, tollō.
ten, decem.
tenth, decimus.
territories, fīnēs.
than, quam.
that, *pron.* is; ille; *conj.* (**in order that**), (**so that**), ut.
their, *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um; *not reflexive*, eōrum, eārum.
them, eōs, eās, ea; **themselves**, *reflexive*, sē; *intensive*, ipsī.
there (**to that place**), eō; (**in that place**), ibi.
they, eī, eae, ea; hī, hae, haec; illī, illae, illa.
thing, rēs.
think, arbitror, exīstimō, putō.
third, tertius.
this, hīc, is.
those, eī, illī.
(**thoroughly**), **thoroughly frightened**, perterreō.
though, quamquam, etsī, cum.
thousand, mīlle.
three, trēs.
through, per.
throw, iaciō, coniciō.
throw down, dēiciō.
time, tempus.
to, ad.
together, ūnā; **bring together**, condūcō, cōnferō.
too little, parum.
touch upon, attingō.
toward, ad.
town, oppidum.
trader, mercātor.
treachery, perfidia, Insidiae.
trench, fossa.
triple, triplex.
troops, cōpiae.
try, cōnor.
twelve, duodecim.
two, duo.
two hundred, ducentī.

under, sub.
undergo, subeō.
unfavorable, adversus.
unlike, dissimilis.
unsuccessful, adversus.
unwilling, invītus; **to be unwilling**, nōlō.
upon, in.
us, *see* I.
use, ūtor (*abl.*).

very, *ordinarily expressed by the superlative of an adjective or adverb*; **very easy**, perfacilis; **very few**, perpaucī.
victory, victōria.
village, vīcus.
violence, vīs.

wage, gerō.
wait, exspectō.
wall, mūrus.
wander, vagor.
war, bellum.
(**waste**), **lay waste**, vāstō.
(**watch**), **night watch**, vigilia.
we, *see* I.
weaken, effēminō.
weapon, tēlum; **weapons**, arma.
when, *relative*, cum, ubī; *interrogative*, quandō.
which, *relative*, qui; (**of two**), uter.
while, dum, cum.
who, *relative*, quī; *interrogative*, quis.
whole, tōtus.
why, cūr, quārē.
wide, lātus.

width, lātitūdō.
(will), be willing, volō.
win, conciliō.
wing, cornū.
winter quarters, hīberna; *verb*, **winter**; (**pass the winter**), hiemō.
wish, volō.
with, cum.
withdraw, discēdō.
within, in; *usually abl. without prep.*
without, sine.
withstand, resistō, sustineō.
wonder, admīror.
woods, silva.
worst, *see* **bad.**
wound, *noun*, vulnus; *verb*, vulnerō.

year, annus; **yearly**, annuus.
yoke, iugum.
you, *sing.*, tū; *plu.*, vōs.

zeal, studium.
zealous, be —, studeō.

INDEX.

(The references are to sections.)

Ablative case, 1.
  absolute, 260–262.
  of accompaniment, 89.
  of agent, 193.
  of cause, 137.
  of comparison, 351.
  of degree of difference, 364.
  of description or quality, 303.
  of manner, 318.
  of means or instrument, 97.
  of measure or difference, 364.
  of place from which, 235, 236.
  of place in which, 243, 244.
  of separation, 68.
  of specification, 122.
  of time, 202.
  with deponents, 295.
  with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc., 295.
Accent, general laws of, Introduction, 10.
  in contracted genitive and vocative of nouns in *-ius*, 87 (2).
Accusative case, 1.
  direct object, 18.
  double object, 504–507.
  extent of time and space, 174.
  place to which, 235, 236.
  subject of infinitive, 285.
  with compounds, 459.
Acies, declension of, see *dies*, 181.
  explanation of, 570.
Adjectives, first and second declension, 43, 56, 106, App. 7.
  third declension, 66, 222, 309, App. 10.
    one termination, App. 10.
    two terminations, 61, App. 10.
    three terminations, App. 10.
  irregular (genitive in *-ius*), 144–145.
  possessive, 473.
  predicate, 24 (3), 45.
  compared. *See* Comparison.
Adverbs, comparison, 336, App. 13.
  formation, 336.
Agreement, of adjectives, 45.
  appositives, 25, 38.
  participles, 45.
  predicate noun, 25.
  relative pronoun, 83.
  verbs, 11 (2).
Apposition, 25, 38.

Base, 2.
  distinguished from stem, 49, note.

Causā. *See* Vocabulary.
Causal clauses with *cum*, 372.
  with *quod*, 520–522.
Commands and exhortations, 466.
Comparative, declined, 105, 329.
  special meaning, 328.
Comparison of adjectives, regular, 104, irregular, 309, 310, 326, 327, 335.
  of adverbs, regular, 336, irregular, App. 13.
Complementary infinitive, 269–270.
Compounds, of *faciō*, 417.
  of *ferō*, 379.
Conditional sentences, 479–482.
Conjugation, I, *līberō*, App. 19.
  II, *mŏvĕō*, App. 20.
  III, *dīvidō*, App. 21.
  in *iō*, *capiō*, 95, 172, App. 22.
  IV, *impediō*, App. 23.
  deponent verbs, 292, 293.
  irregular verbs. *See Ferō*, *Fīō*, etc.
Consecutive declensions, synopses, conjugations, participles, etc., App. 30.
Consonant stems, 49, 50.
Contraction in genitive of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 87.

Cum, enclitic, with pronouns, 82, note 1, 184, obs. 3, 474, obs. 4.
Cum, with indicative, 320.
with subjunctive, 320, 372.

Dative case, 1.
of agent, 425.
of indirect object, 33.
of possessor, 386.
of purpose, 457.
retained in passive, 498.
with adjectives, 278.
with compounds, 394.
with special verbs, 254.
Declension, definition, 2.
I declension, 4, App. 1.
II declension, 30, 42, 87, App. 2.
III declension, 49, 50, 60, App. 3, 4.
IV declension, 152, App. 5.
V declension, 181.
of adjectives, 43, 56, 61, 106, 222, 309.
of comparatives, 105, 329.
of pronouns, demonstrative, 66, 74, 199, 211.
indefinite, 435.
intensive, 183.
interrogative, 433, 435.
personal, 472.
reflexive, 182.
relative, 81.
Defective verbs, 497.
Deponent verbs, 292, 293.
Dividō. *See* Conjugation.
Domus, declined, 234.
domi, 243, obs.
Duo, declined, App. 9.

Enclitic, 77, note.
Eō, 311.
Esse omitted, 323, note 2, 289, note 1.

Fearing, verbs of, 443.
Ferō, 378.
compounds of, 379.
Fīō, 416, 417.
Future indicative active, formation of, 158, 164.
Future perfect indicative active, formation of, 127–128.
passive, 190–191.

Gender, general rules, Introduction, 10.
in first declension, 3.
in second declension, 29.
in third declension, Third Review, VII, p. 75.
in fourth declension, 151.
in fifth declension, 180.
Genitive case, descriptive, 303.
general meaning, 1.
limiting, 2, 25.
of the whole, 166.
possessive, 76.
subjective and objective, 450.
with adjectives, 450.
Gerund, 400, 401.
Gerundive, as attributive adjective, 400, 401.
as predicate with *sum*, 423.
with *ad*, 401.

Hīc, declension and use, 67–68.

Id, undeclined, 74.
Ille, declension, App. 16.
distinguished from *hic*, 211.
Imperative mood, 465.
Impersonal verbs, 498.
Indefinite pronouns, *quis*, *aliquis*, etc., 434, 435.
Index of nouns, adjectives, and verbs, First Review, pp. 27–28.
Indirect discourse, infinitive in, 284, 285.
subjunctive in, 520.
Indirect questions, 487, 488.
Infinitive, formation, 268.
historical, 511, note.
tenses, 284–286.
uses, 269, 270, 285, 343.
Interrogative pronouns and particles, 433–436.
Ipse, declension, App. 16.
use of, 184.
Is, declension, 66.
I-stems, 60, 61.

Liberō. *See* Conjugation, App. 19.
Locative case, 233 and note; form, 243.
in what words used, 243, 244.

Mālō, 342.
Mille, as adjective, 167.
plural as noun, 167.
Mōveō. *See* Conjugation, App. 17.

Nē, with subjunctive, 220, 443, 466.
-ne in questions, 436.
Nōlō, conjugation, 342.
nōlī, with infinitive, 466.
Nominative case, 1.
as predicate, 24, 25.
as subject, 11.
Nōnne, in questions, 436.
Noster, declension, 56, App. 8.
Numerals, 528, App. 14.

Participles, declension, 252.
formation, 251, obs.
in deponent verbs, 293, obs.
tenses, 251.
uses, 250.
Passive voice, 22.
Perfect indicative active, formation of, 113–114.
passive, 190–191.
Periphrastic conjugations, 423.
Place to which, from which, in which, 236, 244.
Pluperfect indicative active, formation of, 127–128.
passive, 190–191.
Plūs, declined, 329.
Possessive adjectives, 473.
Possum, 276.
Postquam clauses, 534–535.
Predicate adjectives, 10, 45.
nouns, 24, 25.
Principal parts of verbs, 112.
Priusquam clauses, 534–535.
Pronouns, demonstrative, *is*, *īdem*, etc., 66, 74, 199, 211.
indefinite, *quis*, *aliquis*, etc., 435.
interrogative, 433, 434.
personal, 472.
reflexive, 182.
relative, 81.
Pronunciation, Introduction, 4.
Purpose, expressed by gerundive with *ad*, 401.
relative clauses of, 358.
by subjunctive, 220, 442, 443.
by supine, 409.
various ways of expressing, 410.

Quantity, Introduction, 8.
-que, enclitic, 17.
position, footnote, 77.
Questions, direct, 436.
indirect, 487, 488.
Quī, declension, 81.

Relative clauses of purpose, 358.
Relative pronoun, 81.
Result, expressed by subjunctive, 227–228.
Rūs, 235, 236.
rūrī, 243, 244.

Sē. *See Suī*.
Sequence of tenses, 219, obs. 3, 489, 490, 491.
Spērō, construction, 221.
Stem, defined, 49, note 1.
in conjugation, 16, obs. 3, 37, obs. 2, 112.
in declension III, 49, note 1, 60.
perfect, 113.
Subjunctive, formation of imperfect, 217–218.
formation of present, 209, 210.
formation of perfect and pluperfect, 226.
general use, 208.
hortatory subjunctive, 466.
in conditions, 479–482.
indirect discourse, 520–522.
indirect questions, 487, 488.
of purpose, 220, 442, 443.
of result, 228.
optative, 513, 514.
various uses, 536.
with *antequam* and *priusquam*, 534, 535.
with *cum*, 320, 372.
with verbs of fearing, 466.
Substantive clauses, 442–443.
Suī, declined, 182.
distinguished from *is* or *ille*, 184, obs. 5.
from *ipse*, 184, obs. 2.
Sum, App. 25.
imperfect and future indicative, 120.
perfect indicative, 103.
present indicative, 8.
Supine, 407–409.
Suus, distinguished from *eius* or *illius*, 184, obs., and Summary, 472, 473.
formation and meaning, 473.
Syllables, Introduction, 7.

Synopses, 200.
consecutive, App. 30.
syntactical syllabus, pp. 279–281.

Temporal clauses with indicative, 320, 535.
with subjunctive, 320, 535.
Tenses, of infinitive, 284–286.
of participles, 251.
of subjunctive, 219, obs. 3, 489, 490, 491.
Tense-signs, future, 158, obs. 164, obs.
imperfect, 135, obs.

Tōtus, declension, 144.
Trēs, declension, 63 (2), App. 9.

Ūnus, declension, 144, App. 9.
Utinam, with optative subjunctive, 513–514.

Verb, rule for agreement, 11–12.
Vīs, declension, 301.
Vocative case, 1, 30, obs. 2.
Volō, 342.
Vowels, Introduction, 3, 8.

Wishes, 513, 514.
Word list, pp. 275–278.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

THE CLASSICAL SERIES.

A Latin Grammar for Schools.

By ANDREW FLEMING WEST, Ph. D., LL. D., Professor of Latin and Dean of the Graduate School, Princeton University. 12mo. Cloth, 90 cents.

This book has been prepared for *schools* and for beginners in Latin. It is limited to the things most essential for the young pupil to know—the things he can grasp and use in reading his school authors.

The aim has been to state only the essentials, to define them as simply as the facts warrant, and to give as much explanation as will fasten them firmly in the mind. This involves the rejection of all unnecessary technical terms, unimportant exceptions, formal and pedantic modes of expression, and all refinements of doctrine that properly enter only after the school stage. As far as possible, everything has been put in a concrete way, that the pupil may see in his grammar the satisfying explanation of living usage, rather than the dissection of a lifeless material.

This grammar has kept strictly in view the developments in the teaching of Latin in our schools during the last ten years. It is planned to carry out fully the spirit of the resolutions on the subject adopted by the National Educational Association on recommendation of the American Philological Association. The author has taught Latin in both the Western high school and the Eastern academy, as well as in the college. During his whole career, his relations with secondary school work, particularly with the formulation of the program of Latin studies recently adopted by the National Educational Association, have been most intimate and constructive.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

Caesar's Commentaries.

By JOHN H. WESTCOTT, Ph.D., Professor of Latin and Tutor in Roman Law, Princeton University. Edition of seven books, $1.25. Edition of four books, $1.10.

In the introduction to this volume the editor presents the character of Cæsar to the student not merely as the conqueror of Gaul and the author of the Commentaries, but as a real human being—one of the most powerful factors in the history of the world. Two editions have been issued: one containing the whole of the seven books; the other the first four books only, omitting text and notes of Books V, VI, and VII, leaving the introduction and vocabulary the same. The vocabulary is brief and compact, without such scientific and philological matter as would be beyond the grasp of the average high-school pupil. The text is fully and appropriately illustrated, notably in regard to the account of Cæsar's army, its organization, tactics, military engineering, etc. The notes to Books I and II are unusually full and comprehensive, containing many grammar references; the notes to the last books are briefer, directed mainly to following the narrative and allowing more rapid reading of the text. A bibliography is given, suggesting the best books for the teacher's collateral reading or study.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

NEW YORK. BOSTON. CHICAGO. LONDON.

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH DAY AND TO $1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY OVERDUE.

SEP 26 1934

JA 25 1935

SEP 9 1938

10Jul51PY

Jul31'51LU

FEB 7 1955

JAN 11 1955 LU

LIBRARY USE

AUG 21 1962

REC'D LD

AUG 21 1962

19Apr65 GR

REC'D LD

MAY 4 '65-11 AM

LD 21-100m-7,'33

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES
C045893146